



**PREVOST®**

# **OPERATOR'S MANUAL**

X3-45 COACH



# PREVOST®

## COACH MANUFACTURER

OPERATOR'S MANUAL  
X3-45 COACH Model Year 2018



# PA1627

September 2017

PA1627 Adaptation for GLI contract

X3-45 COACH

Model Year: 2018

Applicable to:           From J-6245 up to J-6279  
                                  From J-7448 up to J-7478

Featuring:

- Cooling system with electric fans
- New electrical architecture
- GHG 2017 emission control

First edition: Sept 2017

| REV | EFFECTIVE | DESCRIPTION   | DATE      |
|-----|-----------|---------------|-----------|
| -   |           | First Release | Sept 2017 |



## FOREWORD

This *Operator's Manual* for the PREVOST X3-45 coach has been prepared to thoroughly acquaint you, the driver, with the equipment and features of the coach in order for you to fully appreciate and safely enjoy this vehicle. Prevost is committed to the continuous improvement of coach quality, reliability, durability and safety. With innovative features, the X3 series coach was designed with passenger and driver safety and comfort in mind.

This manual contains information available at the time of publication. Because standard and optional equipment is covered in this manual, some of the optional equipment described may not apply to your coach. If in doubt, refer to the technical documentation package provided with the coach.

Driver's controls and instruments incorporate advanced technology for enhanced driving ease and security. This manual describes the main features, instruments and controls, and servicing requirements for both standard and optional equipment. Read this manual carefully to take advantage of the coach's advanced features and to ensure optimum safety and passenger comfort.

Keep this manual in the coach at all times. Make sure this manual is kept with the coach when ownership is transferred. Please use the appropriate card at the end of this manual to promptly notify Prevost of any change of address or transfer of ownership. This will ensure we provide fast and reliable coach service to all coach operators.

**Note:** Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle; however, key components addressed in the manual are represented as accurately as possible.

**DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION** and *NOTE* are used throughout this manual to emphasize important points when necessary:



### **DANGER**

Directs the operator's attention to unsafe practices which could result in serious personal injury or death.



### **WARNING**

Directs the operator's attention to unsafe practices which could result in serious personal injury or severe damage to the vehicle.



### **CAUTION**

Directs the operator's attention to unsafe practices where personal injury is not likely but damage to vehicle components could occur.

### *NOTE*

*Indicates supplementary information essential to the proper operation of the vehicle.*

The service life of the coach depends on the kind of attention it receives. Pay close attention to the **DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION** and *NOTE*. Read the various notices and instructions posted throughout the coach and attached to equipment.

Since continuous improvement is a primary focus at Prevost, we reserve the right to make changes anytime, without notice, and without incurring any obligation.

Before reproducing or copying this manual, in whole or in part, written consent must be obtained from Prevost.

## ii Foreword

---

### CRITICAL EMISSION-RELATED MAINTENANCE

#### **Source of parts and repair:**

A repair shop or person of the owner's choosing must maintain, replace, or repair emission control devices and systems per manufacturer's recommendations.

#### **Replacement of tires that are GHG certified:**

The original equipment tires installed on this vehicle at the factory were certified to the U.S. EPA Greenhouse Gas (GHG) and **National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA)** Fuel Efficiency regulations. Replacement of these tires should be with a tire of equal or lower rolling resistance levels (TRRL or Crr). Please consult your tire supplier(s) for appropriate replacement tires.

#### **Maintaining a GHG certified tire:**

In order to maintain the certified rolling resistance of the tires which optimize fuel economy, the maintenance procedures provide by the tire manufacturer must be followed.

### EVENT DATA RECORDING DEVICES

This PREVOST vehicle is equipped with a device generally referred to as an "event data recorder" or "EDR." Please note that while the term "event data recorder" is typically used throughout the motor vehicle industry, not every EDR is the same; i.e., they do not all record the same data elements.

The EDR on this PREVOST vehicle records vehicle speed, engine RPM, time and date, plus a variety of pedal and switch positions, both before and after an "event." Sudden vehicle deceleration or the occurrence of certain other vehicle operational characteristics will define (trigger) an "event."

For any questions about this vehicle EDR device, contact a PREVOST Service Center or a regional service manager.

**SAFETY PRECAUTIONS..... 1-1**

**COACH EXTERIOR..... 2-1**

**COACH INTERIOR..... 3-1**

**CONTROLS AND INSTRUMENTS ..... 4-1**

**OTHER FEATURES ..... 5-1**

**STARTING AND STOPPING PROCEDURE..... 6-1**

**SAFETY FEATURES AND EQUIPMENT..... 7-1**

**CARE AND MAINTENANCE..... 8-1**

**TECHNICAL INFORMATION ..... 9-1**

**ABBREVIATIONS**

**APPENDIX A – SERVICE LITERATURE**

**APPENDIX B – TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE FOR MULTIPLEX VEHICLES**

**APPENDIX C – ALLISON DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLESHOOTING CODES**

**APPENDIX D – SPHEROS PREHEATER FLASH CODES**

**APPENDIX E – TPMS TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE**

## Safety Precautions 1-1

---

|   |          |
|---|----------|
| <b>SAFE OPERATING PRACTICES .....</b>   | <b>2</b> |
| <b>DEFENSIVE DRIVING PRACTICES.....</b> | <b>2</b> |
| <b>OTHER PRECAUTIONS .....</b>          | <b>3</b> |

### SAFE OPERATING PRACTICES

To ensure safe and reliable operation, heed the following safety precautions.

- Operation and maintenance of the vehicle must be performed only by qualified personnel.
- Before driving, conduct a walk around inspection and check that all baggage compartment doors and equipment access doors are securely shut.
- Make sure good visibility is maintained at all times. Keep windshields clean and free of obstructions.
- Adjust the driver's seat so that all controls can be reached easily.
- Always wear your safety belt when driving.
- Check the instrument panel frequently. Do not operate the vehicle when dials or indicators do not indicate normal operating conditions.
- Always pay attention to pedestrians passing in front and behind the vehicle. Always yield to pedestrians at pedestrian walkways.
- Do not drive over obstacles on the road. Empty boxes, piles of leaves, and snowdrifts could conceal hidden dangers that could damage the vehicle suspension and underbody.
- When turning or changing lanes, signal your intention well in advance.
- When approaching to make a right turn, reduce the space between the vehicle and the curb to make sure another vehicle cannot pass on the right. Since the vehicle makes wide turns, allow enough space to make safe turns.
- Switch from high beams to low beams when meeting or following other vehicles within 500 feet (150 meters).
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running or with the key in the ignition. Turn off the engine, remove keys and apply the parking brake before leaving the vehicle.
- Shut-off the engine before refueling, adding oil, performing maintenance or servicing tasks, unless stated otherwise.
- Fuel is highly flammable and explosive. Do not smoke when refueling. Keep away from open flames or sparks.

- Do not run the engine or HVAC system with access doors left open. Close compartment doors before operating any equipment.
- Do not remove the surge tank filler cap or the cooling system pressure cap when the engine is hot. Let the engine cool down before removing filler caps.
- Do not attempt to push or pull-start the vehicle.
- The service life of the vehicle depends on the kind of maintenance it receives. Always record any problems and report them immediately to maintenance personnel.

### DEFENSIVE DRIVING PRACTICES

- For city driving, allow a four to six second travel interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. Increase this travel interval to six to eight seconds for highway driving. Increase time interval for driving at night or in foul weather.
- Be prepared to stop when approaching an intersection. The stopping distance of the vehicle increases with the weight and speed.
- Establish eye-to-eye contact with other drivers and with pedestrians. Use, high beam and low beam headlights, turn signals and horn as needed.
- On highway, don't stare at the road ahead. Keep your eyes moving. Check mirrors and dashboard instruments frequently.
- To keep the vehicle from drifting across lanes during highway driving, always look over the horizon on the road ahead.
- Adjust your speed to road conditions, traffic and visibility. Never exceed the posted speed limits.
- If another vehicle is following close behind, reduce your speed to let the vehicle pass.
- For additional information about safe operation and defensive driving practices, contact the local department of motor vehicles authority.

### OTHER PRECAUTIONS



#### WARNING

This vehicle is not designed to carry standing passengers.



#### WARNING

##### CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65:

Diesel engine exhaust and some of its constituents are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects and other reproductive harm.

Battery posts, terminals and other related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemical known to the State of California to cause cancer and other reproductive harm.

Batteries also contain other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer.

**Wash hands after handling.**



#### DANGER

Make sure that electrical current or air pressure is removed before performing any work. A part may be energized even if the ignition switch is OFF. A part may be under pressure even if all tanks are empty. Before performing any work on the vehicle, refer to wiring diagrams and/or air schematics to thoroughly understand the system.

#### NOTE

*When the ignition switch is set to the OFF position, the electrical components are not energized except for the MCM (Master Chassis Module), the battery equalizer, the preheater system and some electronic modules; which are energized during 15 minutes after the ignition has been set to the OFF position. Prior to working on one of these electrical components, set the battery master switch in the main power compartment to the OFF position. If the vehicle will not be operated for a long period (more than 2 weeks), it is recommended, in order to prevent the batteries from discharging, to trip the main circuit breakers located in the main power compartment to stop the small current drawn by the radio preset station memory, the MCM memory and the instrument cluster clock. Note that the radio station presets will be erased, same thing for the diagnostic codes history and the instrument cluster clock will have to be reset.*



#### CAUTION

PRECAUTIONS ARE TO BE OBSERVED BEFORE WELDING TO MINIMIZE THE RISK OF MAJOR AND COSTLY DAMAGES CAUSED TO THE VEHICLE ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS!

1. Set the battery master switch to "OFF" position.
2. Trip circuit breaker CB2 and CB6.
3. Disconnect electronic ground terminal from the ground junction block located in the battery compartment.
4. Make sure to clamp the welding ground return as close as possible to the welding point and make a good electric contact to the chassis.

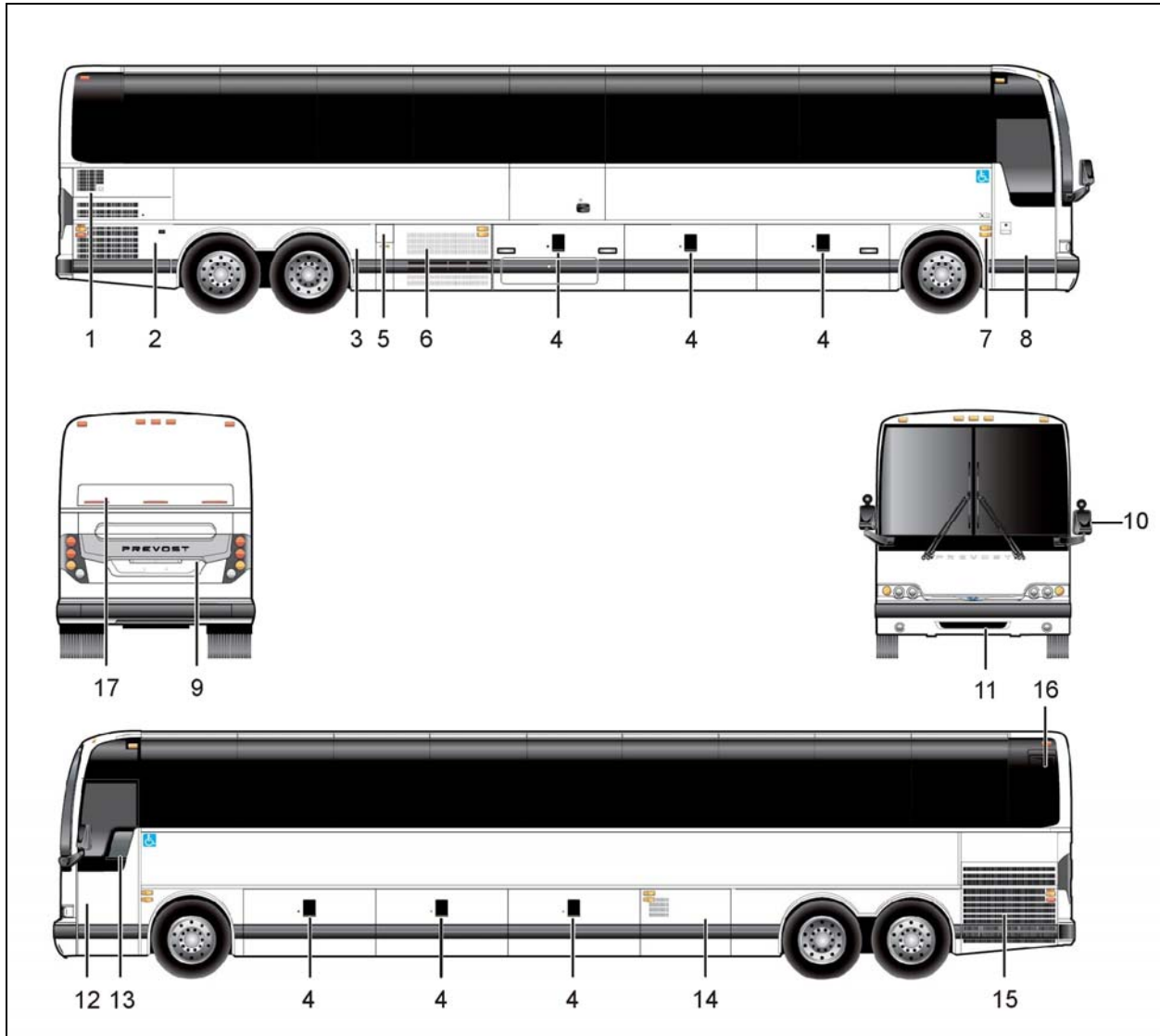
Detailed instructions are provided in section 00-GENERAL of your vehicle maintenance manual.



|   |    |
|---|----|
| ENGINE COMPARTMENT COMPONENTS.....                    | 3  |
| ENGINE COMPARTMENT CURB-SIDE DOOR .....               | 4  |
| ENGINE COMPARTMENT REAR DOOR.....                     | 4  |
| EXHAUST AFTERTREATMENT SYSTEM ACCESS DOOR .....       | 5  |
| ENGINE RADIATOR DOOR.....                             | 6  |
| SCR CONVERTER ACCESS DOOR.....                        | 6  |
| CONDENSER COMPARTMENT (A/C).....                      | 7  |
| EVAPORATOR COMPARTMENT .....                          | 8  |
| COOLANT HEATER.....                                   | 8  |
| REAR FENDERS.....                                     | 9  |
| FRONT ELECTRICAL AND SERVICE COMPARTMENT .....        | 9  |
| BAGGAGE COMPARTMENTS.....                             | 10 |
| SPARE WHEEL COMPARTMENT .....                         | 10 |
| FUEL AND DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) FILLER DOOR ..... | 11 |
| ENTRANCE DOOR.....                                    | 11 |
| DOOR OPERATION LOGIC.....                             | 12 |
| EMERGENCY ENTRANCE DOOR OPENING.....                  | 12 |
| WHEELCHAIR LIFT ACCESS DOORS .....                    | 12 |
| REAR VIEW MIRRORS.....                                | 13 |
| 120 VOLT CONNECTORS .....                             | 13 |
| HUBODOMETER .....                                     | 14 |
| TRAILER HITCH LIMITATIONS.....                        | 14 |



## 2-2 Coach Exterior

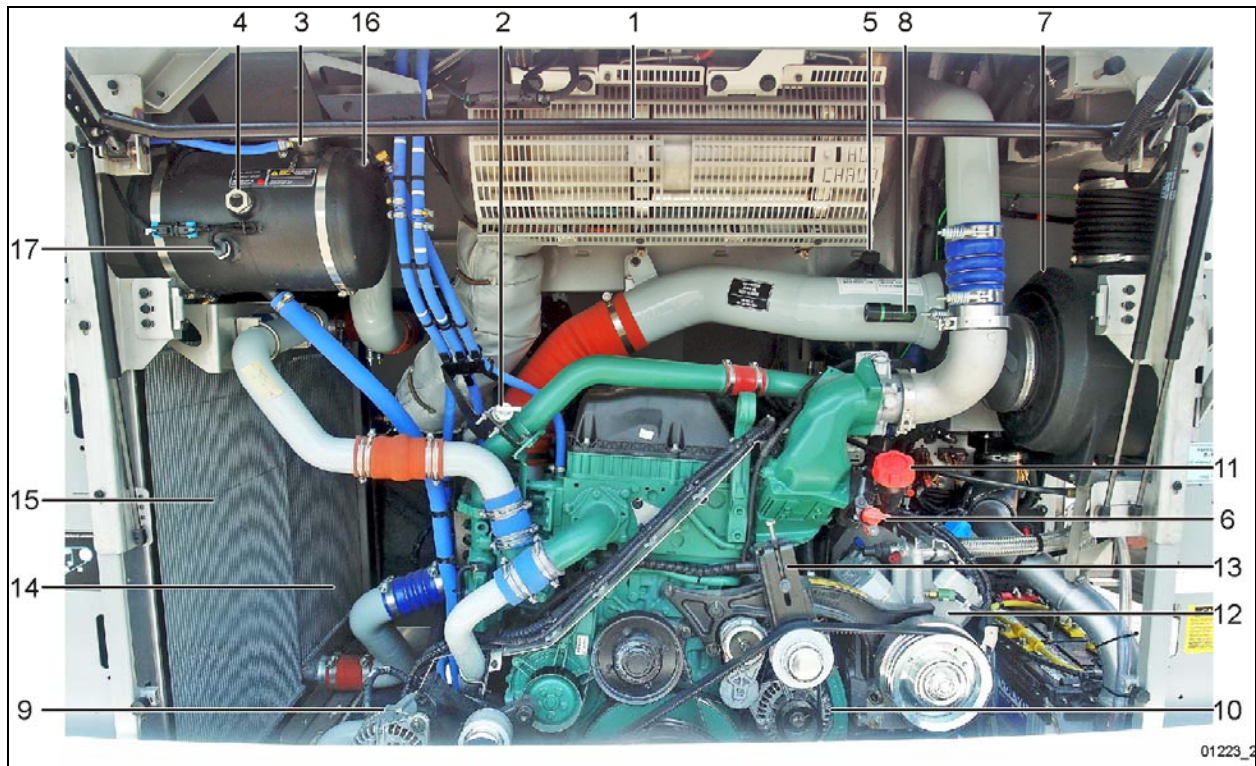


X3-45 EXTERIOR VIEW (TYPICAL)

18707\_2

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Engine air filter intake grill    | 10. Rear view mirror, manually adjustable                 |
| 2. Engine compartment curb-side door | 11. Spare wheel compartment                               |
| 3. Hinged rear fender                | 12. Front electrical and service compartment              |
| 4. Baggage compartment               | 13. Driver's power window                                 |
| 5. Fuel & DEF filler door            | 14. Evaporator compartment and coolant heater compartment |
| 6. Condenser compartment             | 15. Radiator door   |
| 7. Entrance door control switch      | 16. Catalytic converter access door                       |
| 8. Entrance door                     | 17. Exhaust aftertreatment system access door             |
| 9. Engine compartment rear door      |   |

## ENGINE COMPARTMENT COMPONENTS



ENGINE COMPARTMENT FEATURING VOLVO D13 ENGINE

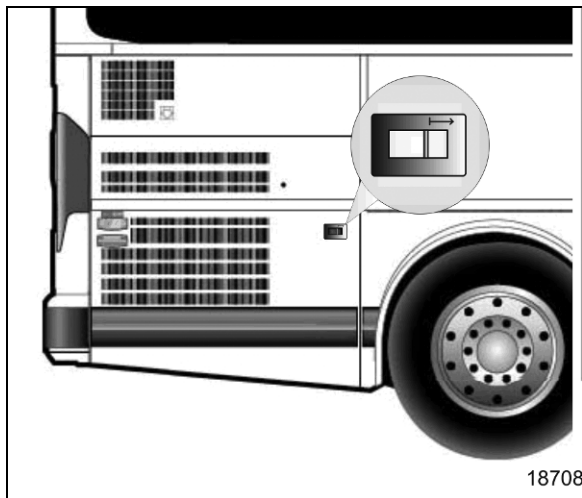
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Diesel Oxidation Catalyst (DOC) & Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) Assembly; | 10. Alternator #1 & #2, Curb side;                                     |
| 2. Transmission fluid dipstick (if equipped with Allison transmission);        | 11. Engine oil filler tube;  |
| 3. Coolant fluid surge tank filler cap;  | 12. Central A/C compressor;  |
| 4. Coolant fluid surge tank sight glass;                                       | 13. A/C compressor belt tensioner;                                     |
| 5. Power steering fluid reservoir;   | 14. Charge air cooler (CAC);   |
| 6. Engine oil dipstick;  | 15. Radiator;  |
| 7. Air filter;   | 16. Cooling system regulated air pressure application, Schrader valve; |
| 8. Engine air restriction indicator;   | 17. Coolant surge tank, critically low level sensor.                   |
| 9. Alternator #3, Road side  |  |

## 2-4 Coach Exterior

### ENGINE COMPARTMENT CURB-SIDE DOOR

The engine compartment curb-side door provides access to the following (if equipped):

- Engine compartment rear door release handle;
- Booster terminals;
- Rear electrical panel;
- Rear junction panel;
- Battery compartment;
- Fuel filter/water separator (Optional);
- Air circuit fill valve and drain cock;
- Sump tank access cap;
- 110 - 120 volt connector;
- Lavatory maintenance valve and connectors;
- Fresh water reservoir fill connector;



ENGINE COMPARTMENT CURB-SIDE DOOR

This door can be locked or unlocked using the exterior compartment key or, if so equipped, by the central door locking system. To open, pull towards the front on the rod located in the recess to the right of the door.

#### NOTE

*This compartment can be locked/unlocked using the central locking system by pressing the switch located on the L.H. side dashboard panel.*



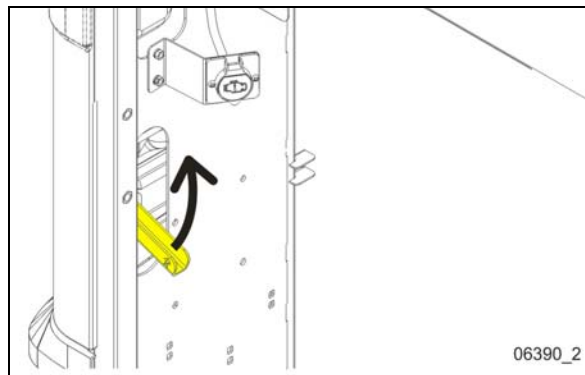
ENGINE COMPARTMENT R.H. SIDE

18607\_1

A telltale light illuminates when one or more compartments are unlocked.

### ENGINE COMPARTMENT REAR DOOR

To open the engine compartment rear door, open the engine compartment curb-side door and pull the door catch yellow handle located on the left, grab the side of the door in the middle, pull and lift the door.



OPENING ENGINE COMPARTMENT REAR DOOR



#### WARNING

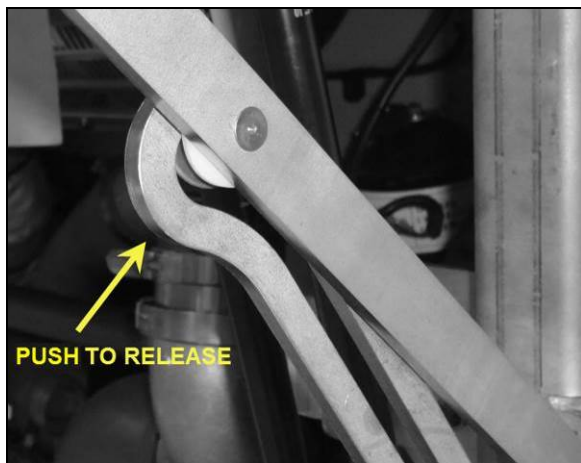
Unless otherwise stated, do not run the engine when the engine compartment is open.

The door swings out to provide access to the following:

- Engine;
- Alternator(s);
- Compressor(s);
- Belt tension control valve (refer to chapter, Care and Maintenance);
- Engine starting selector (refer to chapter, Starting and Stopping Procedures);
- Coolant line shutoff valves;
- Certification plates;
- Engine coolant surge tank and filler cap;
- Air filter restriction indicator;
- Engine oil dipstick;
- Power steering fluid reserve tank;
- Allison automatic transmission fluid dipstick;

**NOTE**  
*The engine compartment lights will turn on automatically when the engine door is opened.*

A catch engages to maintain the door in the full open position. To close the door, slightly lift up the door and release the catch before firmly shutting down the door.

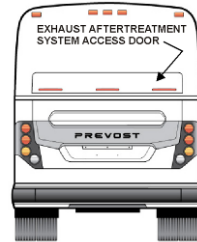


REAR DOOR SAFETY CATCH

**⚠ WARNING**

Unless otherwise specified, do not run engine when the engine compartment rear door is open. Close the engine compartment rear door before starting the engine.

**EXHAUST AFTERTREATMENT SYSTEM ACCESS DOOR**



The engine door must be open before opening the exhaust aftertreatment system access door. To open the access door, lower the latch release lever, using a flat tip screwdriver.



AFTERTREATMENT ACCESS DOOR LATCH

To close the door, lower the door and push against the release lever spring to latch the door shut.



### ENGINE RADIATOR DOOR

The engine radiator door gives access to the radiator electrical fans and power distribution box.



RADIATOR DOOR

Open the engine compartment rear door to access the engine radiator door release handle. Pull handle towards you to release radiator door.



RADIATOR DOOR RELEASE HANDLE



RADIATOR DOOR OPENED



### WARNING

#### WHEN THE ENGINE IS RUNNING...

Cooling fans may activate at any moment.

Keep hands away from cooling fans or keep the radiator door closed.



### WARNING

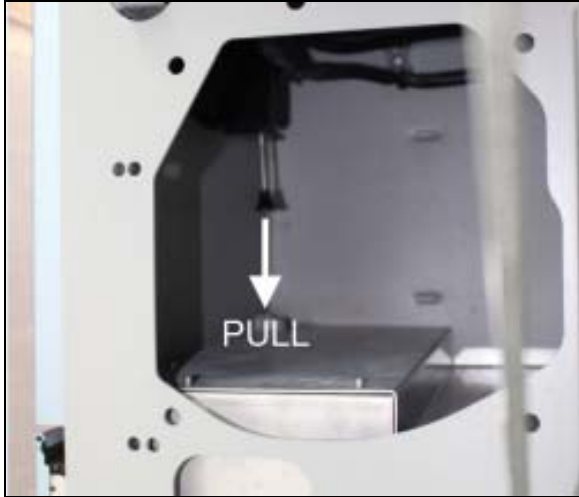
Cooling fans may be running when the engine is shut down in the following conditions:

- If a High Exhaust Temperature condition exists (e.g. following regeneration). The CAC fans will keep running for a maximum of 15 minutes.
- During the electric **Motor Test Sequence**, the cooling fans will start running briefly.

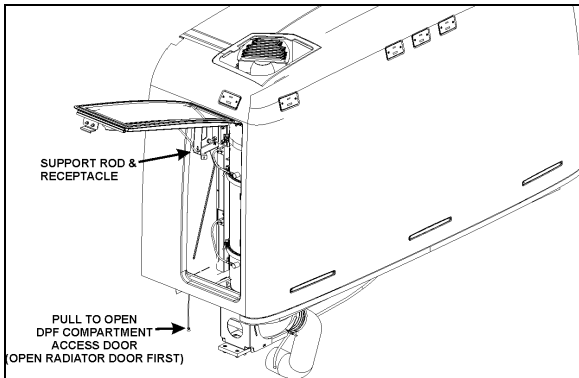
### SCR CONVERTER ACCESS DOOR

To gain access to the SCR converter, open the engine compartment door first. Over the cooling assemble, pull the catch connecting rod to unlock the catalytic converter access door and lift the door open.

Hold the door open by inserting the support rod free end into the receptacle located on the left side of the DPF.



UNLOCKING SCR CONVERTER ACCESS DOOR



ACCESS TO THE SCR

04023



**WARNING**

After inserting the support rod into the receptacle, make sure the rod supports the door securely from falling down on to your head or body.

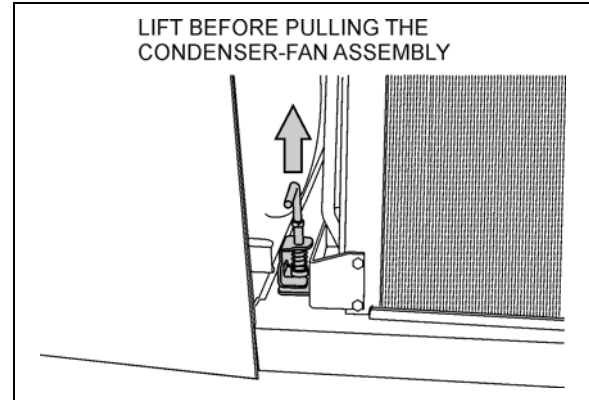


**WARNING**

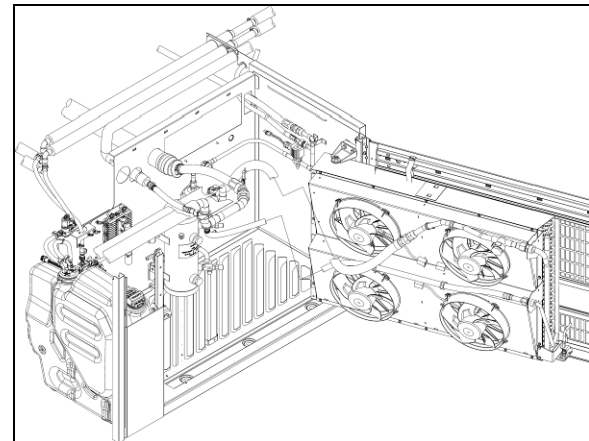
External and internal temperatures remain hot long after engine has been shut down. Allow the Exhaust Aftertreatment System to cool before handling. Wear protective clothing and glove while servicing.

The condenser compartment provides access to the following:

- Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Tank
- Condenser;
- Condenser fans and motors;
- Filter dryer and moisture indicator;
- Receiver tank;



PULLING THE CONDENSER-FAN ASSEMBLY



CONDENSER COMPARTMENT (A/C)

22299



**CAUTION**

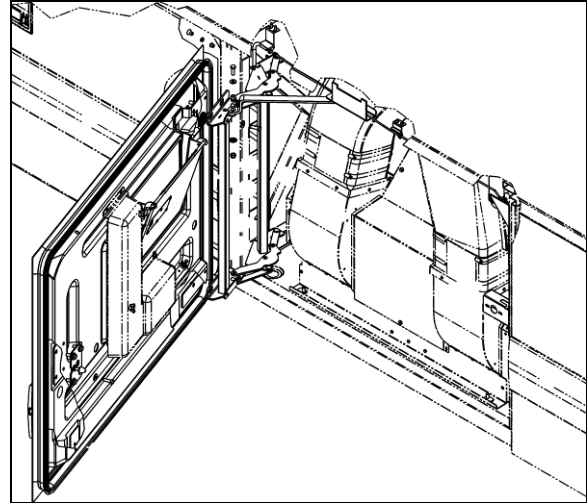
Only the strap should be used to pull the condenser-fan assembly open. Damage to condenser could result if pulling by other means.

**CONDENSER COMPARTMENT (A/C)**

Pull the release latch located inside the adjacent baggage compartment to open the condenser door.



CONDENSER COMPARTMENT STRAP



EVAPORATOR COMPARTMENT

## EVAPORATOR COMPARTMENT

The HVAC (Heating, Ventilating and Air-Conditioning) evaporator and heater coils are located in this compartment along with the blowers.

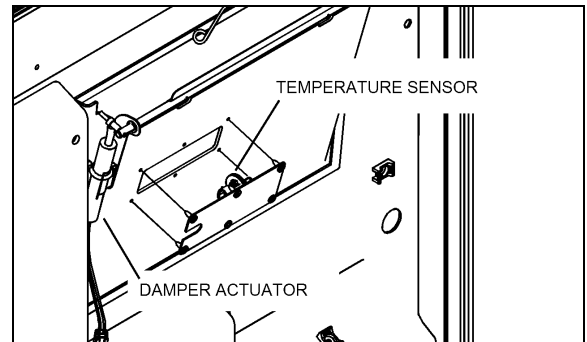
The evaporator compartment door release latch is located on the right wall of the baggage compartment, left of the door. Pull the release latch then slide your hand in the opening to depress the secondary lock and swing open.



SECONDARY LOCK LEVER



OPENING THE EVAPORATOR COMPARTMENT DOOR

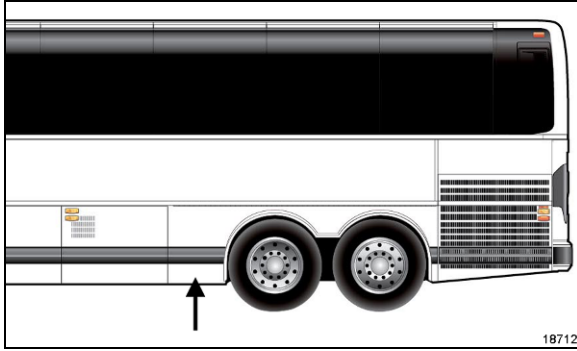


FRESH AIR DAMPER

22302\_A

## COOLANT HEATER

This vehicle is equipped with a Thermo 300, 104 000 BTU preheater located aft of the evaporator compartment, and accessible under left rear fender.

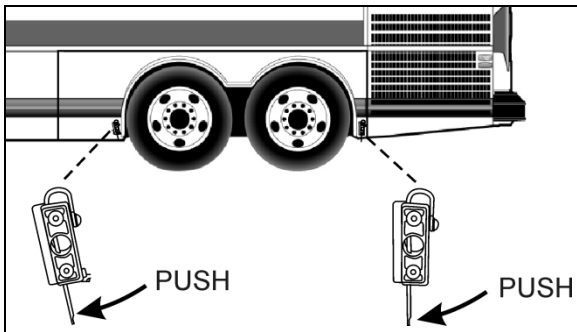


LOCATION OF PREHEATER

The water recirculating pump is also located in this location.

## REAR FENDERS

Rear fenders are hinged for maintenance on brakes and suspension. Each rear fender panel has two mechanical spring loaded holding devices fixing it to the vehicle's structure. Push the rod sideways to disengage the lock.



LIFTING REAR FENDERS

## FRONT ELECTRICAL AND SERVICE COMPARTMENT

To open the front electrical and service compartment door, pull the rod inside the vehicle, next to the driver's power window or use the key to open from outside the coach.

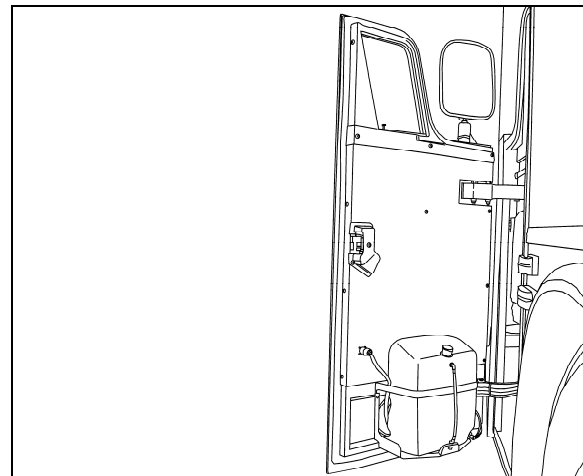
The electrical section of the front compartment provides access to the following:

- Vehicle Electrical Center Front (VECF)
- Relays and diodes;
- MCM;
- Front terminal block;
- IOE-B Multiplex Modules;

- VECU ;
- ABS Electronic Control Unit (ECU);
- IOE-A Multiplex Modules;

The lower section of the front service compartment provides access to the following:

- Emergency door opening unlatch valve;
- Windshield washer reservoir & headlights washer reservoir (optional);
- Accessory system fill valve;
- Accessory air tank drain valve;
- Jack and tools.



FRONT SERVICE COMPARTMENT DOOR

This compartment door can be locked/unlocked using the exterior compartment key.

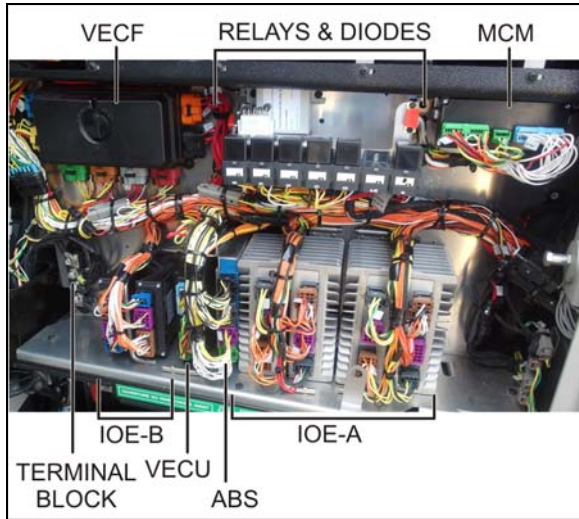
The light in the front electrical and service compartment turns *ON* automatically when the door is opened.

### **NOTE**

*Jack and tools are located inside the front electrical and service compartment.*

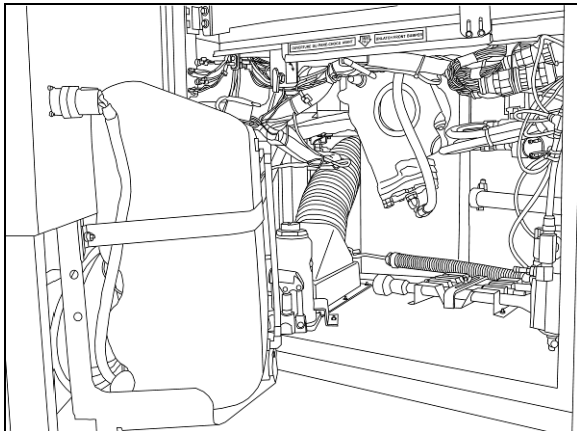


## 2-10 Coach Exterior



FRONT ELECTRICAL COMPARTMENT

06779



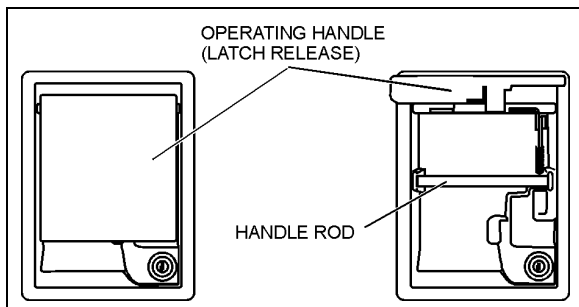
FRONT SERVICE COMPARTMENT

18611

### BAGGAGE COMPARTMENTS

The compartments can be locked or unlocked by using the provided "Ford" key.

Lift up operating handle to release the latch, and then pull the door open by the handle rod. Pressurized cylinders assist the opening and closing of the baggage compartment doors and hold the doors open.



BAGGAGE COMPARTMENT DOORS HANDLE

18693



### CAUTION

Do not slam shut the baggage compartment doors. Damage to door weather-stripping or locking mechanism could result.

Lights in the baggage compartments turn on automatically when the baggage compartment door is opened.

Electrical power remains available for the baggage compartment lights 10 minutes after the ignition switch has been set to the OFF position.



BAGGAGE DOOR CATCH

18612

### NOTE

*For added safety, open the door until the catch assist in holding the door in the open position. Lift lever to release door*



### WARNING

To avoid injury, keep hands clear of baggage compartment door edge and door frame when closing.

### NOTE

*To prevent theft and vandalism, always lock the baggage compartment doors before leaving the vehicle unattended.*

### SPARE WHEEL COMPARTMENT

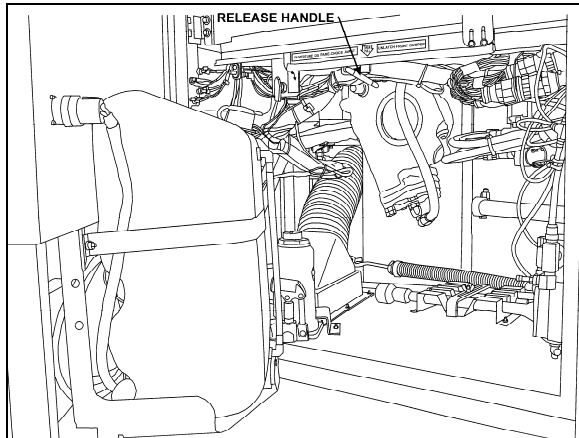
The front bumper can be tilted downward to give access to a spare wheel.



**WARNING**

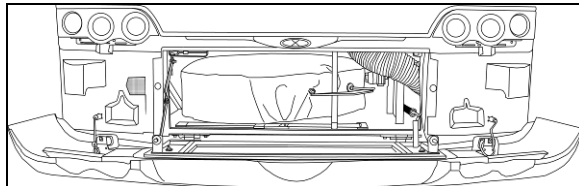
The compartment behind the bumper is not designed for miscellaneous storage. Never store loose objects in this compartment since they can interfere with the steering linkage mechanism.

Pull the release handle located inside front service compartment to tilt down the entire bumper assembly.



RELEASE HANDLE

18613



SPARE WHEEL IN FRONT BUMPER COMPARTMENT 18614



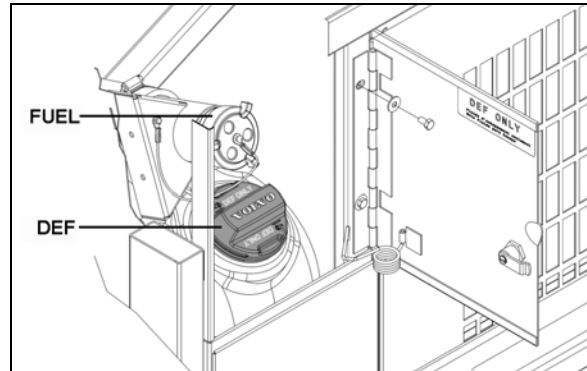
**WARNING**

Although a powerful spring assists in reclining the bumper, it remains heavy and rests low when open. Caution should be used when reclining.

Check that bumper is securely closed shut before driving.

**FUEL AND DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) FILLER DOOR**

The fuel and Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) filler door is located on the R.H. side of the coach providing easy filling. A spring keeps the door either open or shut. A key is provided for unlocking the door if the option was chosen.



FUEL & DEF FILLER DOOR

03046

**NOTE**

Provided the vehicle is parked on level ground, an automatic nozzle will automatically shut off when fuel tank is approximately 95% full.

**NOTE**

The fuel & DEF filler door must be in the unlocked position before closing



**CAUTION**

Diesel exhaust fluid DEF will begin to crystallize and freeze at 12°F (-11°C) and expand by 7% when frozen. To allow expansion without damaging the DEF tank, do not fill the tank with more than 15.9 gallons (60 liters).



**CAUTION**

Do not fill to more than 95% of the fuel tank capacity. Do not "top off" the tank, doing so may result in fuel spillage when the fuel expands.

**ENTRANCE DOOR**

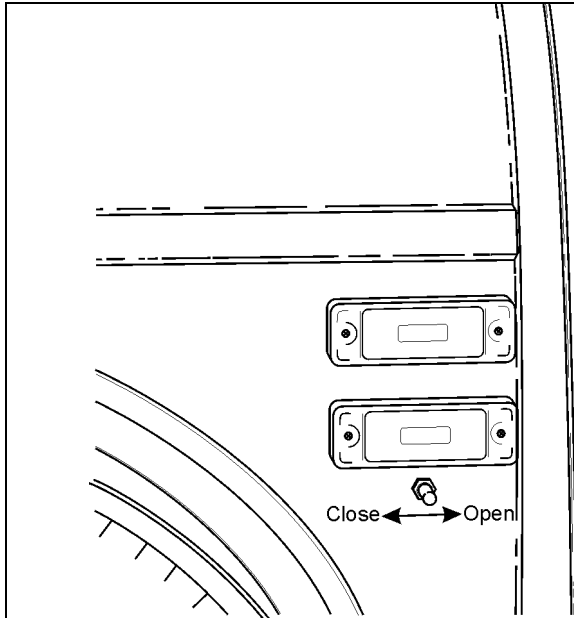
Lock or unlock the entrance door from outside the vehicle by turning the key in the door lock (counterclockwise to lock, clockwise to unlock).

From outside, open the door by pushing the switch forward, close by pushing the switch rearward.

The only way to unlock the entrance door from the inside is by sliding its lock lever to the left. If

## 2-12 Coach Exterior

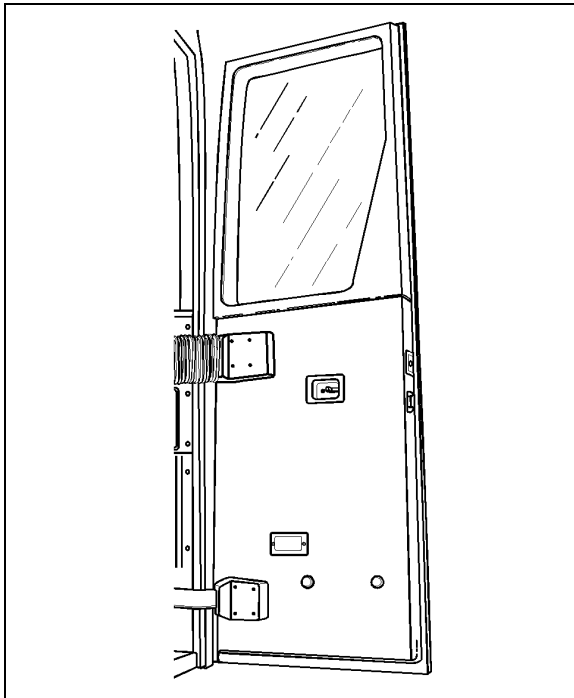
the orange tab on the door-lock lever is visible, the door is unlocked.



ENTRANCE DOOR EXTERIOR SWITCH

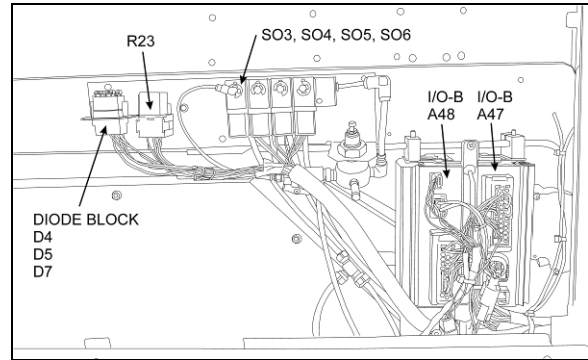
18599

From the inside, open the door by pressing the door opening switch (L.H. button) on the R.H. dashboard panel. Close by pressing the door closing switch (R.H. button) on the dashboard. Refer to "Controls and Instruments" chapter for more information.



ENTRANCE DOOR

18001



ENTRANCE DOOR & WIPER CONTROL PANEL

06614

### DOOR OPERATION LOGIC

If the switch is held in position until the door is fully open or closed, the system holds pressure in the door cylinder, locking the door in that position. The door can be opened to any position by releasing the switch (or button, if inside) when the desired position is attained. However, the door is not locked in any position other than fully open or fully closed. The door can then be opened or closed further by pushing or pulling on the door.

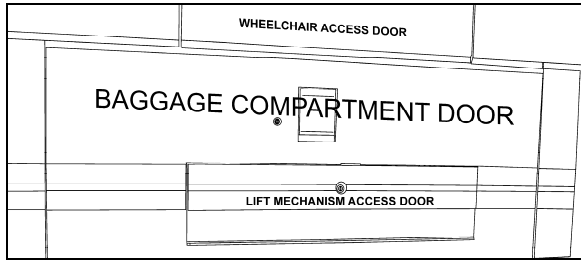
A proximity sensor will finish the closing of the door when it senses the door is almost shut. This works even when the door is shut manually.

### EMERGENCY ENTRANCE DOOR OPENING

Refer to "Safety Features and Equipment" chapter.

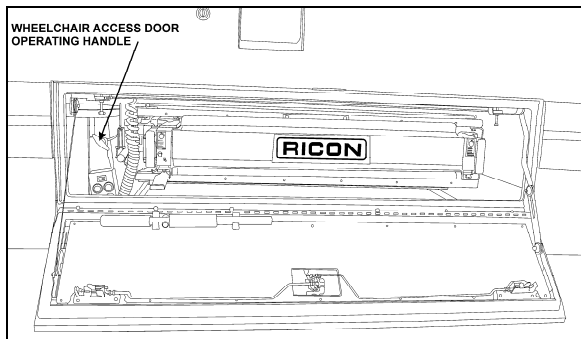
### WHEELCHAIR LIFT ACCESS DOORS

To open the optional wheelchair lift access doors, the coach must be parked on a flat and level surface with the parking brake on. Using the exterior compartment doors key, unlock and carefully lower the lift mechanism access door which is part of the baggage compartment door. The lift mechanism access door is located directly below the wheelchair access door. A handle at the left of the lift mechanism unlocks and enables opening of the wheelchair access door. If the parking brake is not activated, a switch in the door will activate the parking brake when it detects the door is open.



**WHEELCHAIR LIFT ACCESS DOORS** 18615

Open the wheelchair access door completely until it locks in the open position. To close the door, pull on the tab located on the inside of the door and slam the door shut. Refer to “Other Features” for more information on operating the optional wheelchair lift.



**WHEELCHAIR ACCESS DOOR OPERATING HANDLE** 18616

## REAR VIEW MIRRORS

The vehicle is equipped with flat-type and 6-in circular convex-type rear view mirror, manually adjustable. Convex mirrors give a wide angle view. Objects viewed in convex-type rear view mirror, manually adjustable appear smaller and are actually closer than they appear.



**REAR VIEW MIRRORS** 18668

To provide good visibility in cold weather, the mirrors are equipped with heating elements. The elements are activated automatically.

Thermostats are used to prevent continuous operation of the heating elements.

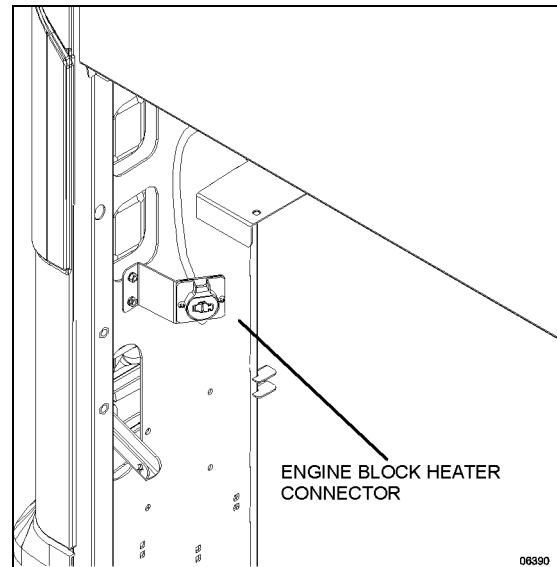


## CAUTION

Do not attach stick-on type convex mirror accessories to the heated mirror glass. This could impede uniform heat distribution on the mirror surface and could break the mirror glass.

## 120 VOLT CONNECTORS

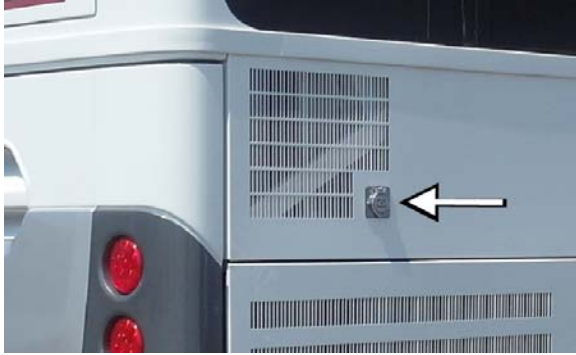
One connector is provided for the electric block heater to connect to a 120 VAC power source. It is located near the engine compartment rear door catch lever (refer to chapter “Starting and Stopping Procedures”).



**BLOCK HEATER 120 VOLT CONNECTOR**

Another connector is used to connect the battery charger to a 120 VAC power source. It is located above the engine compartment curbside door next to the air filter intake grill.

## 2-14 Coach Exterior



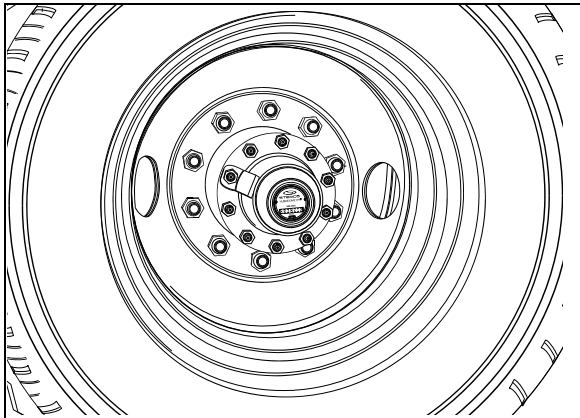
**BATTERY CHARGER 120 VOLT CONNECTOR**

### HUBODOMETER

An odometer is installed on the curb-side drive axle wheel hub. The odometer calculates the total distance in miles or kilometers (depending on model installed) traveled by the coach since manufacture, including factory road testing.

#### **NOTE**

*It is normal for the hubodometer, the engine ECM and the vehicle odometer to disagree on the total mileage.*



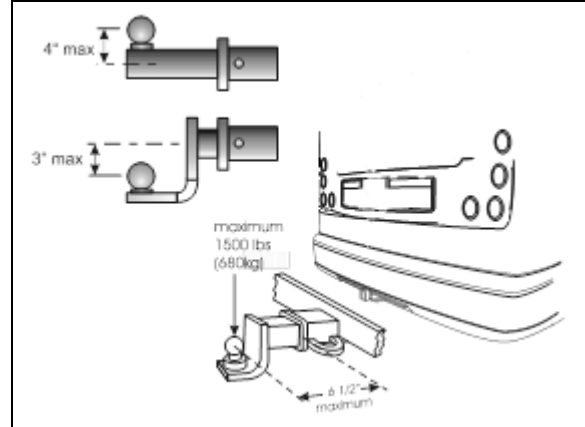
**HUBODOMETER**

13012

### TRAILER HITCH LIMITATIONS

#### **20 000 lbs. max. Gross trailer weight capacity (optional)**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a factory installed trailer hitch which has been designed to meet the following rating:



**TRAILER HITCH**

23337\_2

- Maximum gross trailer weight: 20,000 lbs. (9072 kg)
- Maximum tongue weight at 6 1/2 inches (165 mm) or less from coupling receiver: 1,500 lbs. (680 kg)



#### **DANGER**

The draw bar and the ball used for towing the trailer should be rated for 20,000 lbs. capacity or more.



#### **WARNING**

Pulling a trailer weighing more than the recommended maximum gross weight may cause engine and transmission overheating, and also possible hitch failure.

#### **NOTE**

*Pulling a trailer over long distances is considered as a "severe operating condition" for the vehicle and therefore, power plant requires more frequent servicing.*

**NOTE**

The minimum requirement for a trailer weighing up to 20,000 lbs. when coupled to a 20,000 lbs. PrevoSt Trailer Hitch is as per the following:

1. Trailer must comply with **Federal Motor Carrier Safety Regulations 393.52** regarding trailer breaking capability.
2. The trailer coupling attachments meet the following minimum static test load requirements :
  - Longitudinal tension and compression: (1.5 x GVWR of trailer)
  - Transverse thrust: (0.5 x GVWR of trailer)
  - Vertical tension and compression: (0.5 x GVWR of trailer)

Loads indicated must be applied without incurring loss of attachments or distortion or failure which could affect the safe towing of trailer.

3. The ball and trailer coupling should meet the following minimum test load requirements without incurring failure:
  - Longitudinal tension and compression: (Gross Trailer Weight of trailer x 3)
  - Transverse thrust: (Gross Trailer Weight of trailer x 1)
  - Vertical tension and compression: (Gross Trailer Weight of trailer x 1.3)

In this case, failure is identified as the point at which the coupling or ball will accept no additional test load without separation of the ball from the coupling ball socket, or the occurrence of a metal fracture of either coupling ball or coupling assembly, which results in separation of the ball from the coupling ball socket.

4. Two lengths of safety chain shall be used. The strength rating (minimum breaking force) of each individual chain and its connecting means shall be equal to, or exceed the trailer GVWR.
5. Towing vehicle must be equipped with engine or transmission retarder. The engine or the transmission retarder on the vehicle must be functional at all time (to be inspected frequently).



**UTILITY COMPARTMENTS .....2**

**MICROPHONE JACKS .....2**

**STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT.....2**

**AISLE MIRROR.....2**

**ADJUSTABLE HVAC REGISTERS .....2**

**USCC DRIVER’S SEAT .....3**

    ADJUSTMENT..... 3

**SAFETY BELTS ..... 5**

**PASSENGER SEATS .....5**

    PASSENGER SEAT BELT ..... 6

*ELR/ALR Retractor Lock Mode* ..... 6

**SEAT RECONFIGURATION FOR MOBILITY DEVICES ..... 6**

***SEATED to STOWED position* ..... 7**

***STOWED to SEATED position* ..... 8**

**4-POINT SECUREMENT WITH ANCHORAGE TO PASSENGERS SEAT PEDESTALS ..... 9**

***Wheelchair Occupant Restraint*..... 9**

**OVERHEAD CONSOLE .....9**

    ADJUSTABLE AIR REGISTERS..... 10

    SERVICE BELL..... 10

    READING LIGHTS..... 10

    PANORAMIC WINDOWS ..... 10

*Fixed Windows* ..... 10

*Emergency Windows*..... 10

*Window Sun Shades*..... 11

    DRIVER’S POWER WINDOW ..... 11

    DRIVER’S SUNSHADES ..... 11

**VENTILATION / EMERGENCY EGRESS HATCH .....11**

**OVERHEAD COMPARTMENTS .....12**

**WASTE CONTAINER.....12**

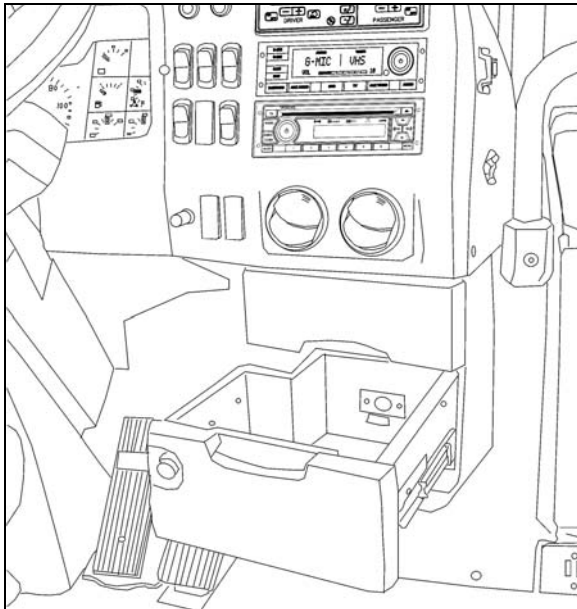
**LAVATORY.....12**



## 3-2 Coach Interior

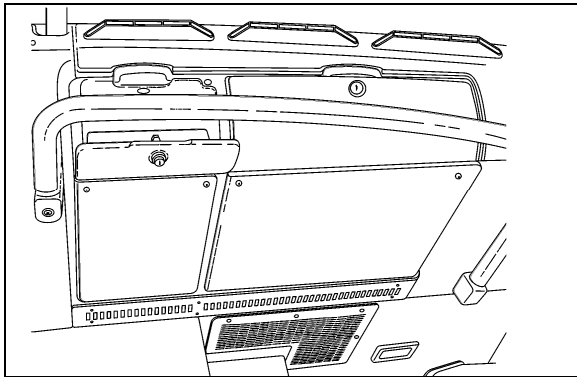
### UTILITY compartments

Two lockable utility compartments are located at the base of the windshield. Another utility compartment is located on the console, and includes a 12 volt appliance socket.



UTILITY COMPARTMENT IN CONSOLE

18669



UTILITY COMPARTMENTS

18602

### MICROPHONE JACKS

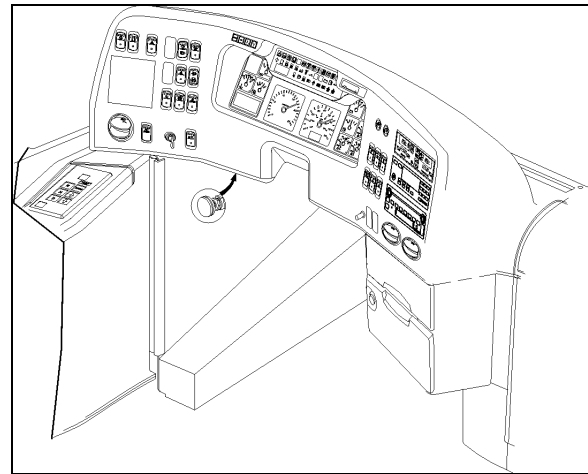
Up to six microphone jacks for the PA system can be located in the following locations:

- On the side wall of the driver's control panel;
- On the right hand side of the dashboard;
- One optional outlet for the tour guide on each of the modesty panels;
- One optional outlet on the lavatory wall, behind the last row of seats;

- One optional outlet under the overhead storage compartment, at the rear of the coach.

### STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENT

Push on the valve button located in the foot-operated control housing to unlock the steering wheel for tilt and telescopic adjustment (refer to "Controls and Instruments" chapter).



TILT AND TELESCOPIC ADJUSTMENT

18670



### DANGER

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving. Loss of control could result. Park the vehicle safely and apply parking brakes before adjusting the steering wheel.

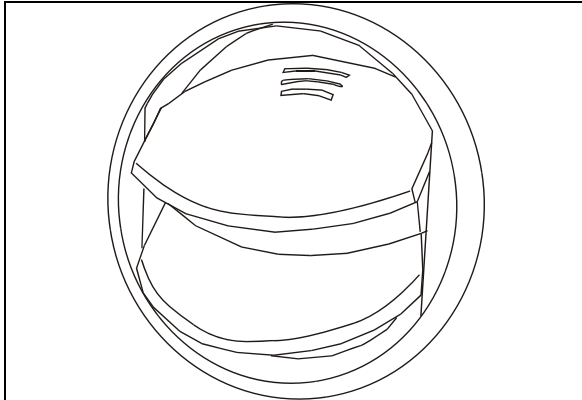
### AISLE MIRROR

A central mirror allows the driver to see in the aisle. Adjust mirror manually.

### ADJUSTABLE HVAC REGISTERS

The HVAC system has adjustable registers to control air flow around the driver's area. Three are located on the dashboard; two on the R.H. side and one on the L.H. (refer to Controls & Instruments chapter). Another one is located close to the door, below the modesty panel wall for step de-icing. The direction and volume of air flow are adjustable manually.

Use the HVAC control panel to set air temperature.



AIR REGISTER

22249

### USCC DRIVER'S SEAT

The coach is equipped with a USCC 9100ALX air suspension seat.



#### **DANGER**

The driver's seat must be adjusted to allow the driver easy access to the coach controls. Never adjust seat while driving vehicle as this could result in loss of vehicle control.



#### **DANGER**

Make sure that seat is adjusted and that safety belt is buckled up before driving vehicle.

### ADJUSTMENT

Seat can be adjusted to the desired driving position by following the instructions listed below.

**USSC MODEL 9100ALX  
OPERATOR INSTRUCTIONS**

**(1) BACKREST LUMBAR, BOLSTER & AIR SLIDE RELEASE**  
TOP LUMBAR  
MIDDLE LUMBAR  
BOTTOM LUMBAR  
AIR SLIDE RELEASE (FRONT/BACK)

**(2) HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT**  
← PUSH IN TO REINFLATE  
→ PULL OUT TO LOWER

**(3) HEADREST**  
TILT HEADREST FORWARD  
UP  
HEIGHT  
DOWN

**(4) BACK RECLINE**

**(5) SEAT TILT**

**(6) MANUAL FORE/AFT**  
↑ PULL UP TO MOVE

**DRIVER'S SEAT ADJUSTMENT (USSC)**

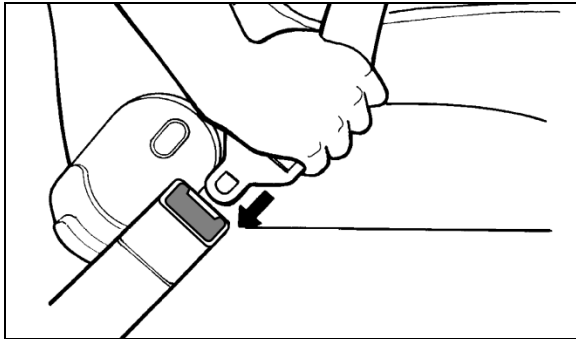
- 1) **BACKREST LUMBAR SUPPORT:** Air lumbar switches are located on the switch box on the side of the seat. Pushing the switches increases or decreases the amount of lumbar support.  
  
**SLIDE (AIR SLIDE):** Air slide release button is located on the switchbox that controls the seat lumbar. Press the red button to release the slides, move the seat to the desired location and release the button. Slides will automatically lock in place.
- 2) **SEAT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT:** The seat has five (5) inches of vertical height adjustment. Seat height adjustment knob is located on the front left edge of the seat cushion. Pulling the knob out releases air pressure, this decreases height. Pushing the knob in increases the seat height.
- 4) **HEADREST:** Pull the headrest up to raise. Push the headrest down while pushing the lock release button to lower.
- 4) **SEAT BACK RECLINE KNOB:** Rotate knob to adjust back angle.
- 5) **SEAT TILT:** This seat cushion angle can be adjusted eight (8) degrees by turning the seat tilt knobs located in the center of the seat cushion. Seat tilt is independent of seat height adjustment. This allows full tilt range at all seat heights.
- 6) **SLIDE (MANUAL FORE/AFT):** The entire seat can be adjusted 6.25-11.8 inches front to back. Raising the slide handle located at the seat front below the rubber bellow releases the lock and lets the seat move front/back.

## SAFETY BELTS

The driver's seat is equipped with a 3-point retractable safety belt.

To fasten, pull seat belt out of the retractor and insert the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

No special adjustment is required since the reel device is self-adjusting. If seat belt operation becomes defective, report to maintenance personnel immediately.



FASTENING SEATBELT

18028

### NOTE

*The safety belt must be pulled out slowly and continuously, otherwise it will lock the reel before the latch plate reaches the buckle. If this happens, allow the belt to retract completely and repeat the procedure correctly.*



## WARNING

A snug fit with the lap belt positioned low on the hips is necessary to maximize driver safety. The belt should not be worn twisted. Avoid pinching belt and/or belt hardware in seat mechanism. Do not wear belt over rigid or breakable objects, such as eyeglasses, pens or keys as these may cause injuries.

To unfasten belt, press the release button in center of buckle and allow belt to retract. If the belt does not fully retract, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Make sure that it remains untwisted as it retracts.

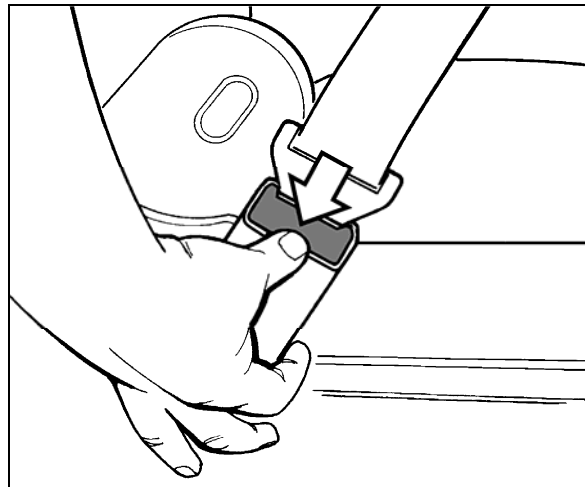


## WARNING

Most State and Provincial laws require that safety belts be worn when they are supplied with the seat.

### NOTE

*The vehicle is equipped with a belt detection system; a warning alarm will be heard if the vehicle is moving above 3 mph (5 km/h) with the safety belt unfastened.*



UNFASTENING SEATBELT

18029



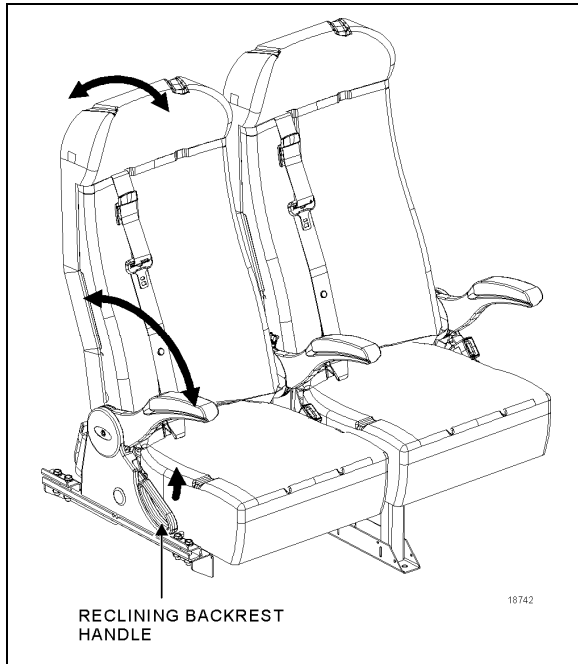
## CAUTION

Never bleach or dry clean safety belt.

## PASSENGER SEATS

The seat layout accommodates 50 seated passengers. Passenger seats may be equipped with cup holders, 110-V electrical outlets and footrests.

## 3-6 Coach Interior



### PASSENGER SEAT EQUIPMENT

Passenger seat backrests can be reclined by lifting the reclining backrest handle. Lift and hold the handle, then adjust backrest to the desired angle. Release the handle to lock backrest in position.

A folding armrest is installed on the aisle side of the passenger. Another folding armrest is located between the two seats and can be raised for passenger convenience.

### PASSENGER SEAT BELT

Passengers are strongly advised to wear seat belts at all times. Children can use a passenger seat belt as long as they are large enough to properly wear the seat belt. The shoulder belt must be correctly positioned over the child's shoulder and it must not touch the neck or lie below the shoulder.

To fasten, pull seat belt out of the retractor and insert the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks. No special adjustment is required since the retractor device is self-adjusting. If the seat belt operation becomes defective, report to maintenance personnel immediately.

### ELR/ALR Retractor Lock Mode

Passenger seat belts are equipped with switchable ELR/ALR retractor lock mode:

- **Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) mode:** Allows the seat belt to extend and retract to allow passengers some freedom of movement in the seat. Locks only when the vehicle or occupant slows quickly/abruptly or stops suddenly. **Will not secure a child safety seat.**
- **Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) mode:** Locks and maintains a fixed seat belt (lap belt) length during use. The belt cannot be extended further. **For use with a child safety seat.**



### CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

**Occupants under 40" height must use Child Seat / Booster**

The seat belts are equipped with switchable ELR/ALR retractor lock mode.

Activate the ALR retractor lock mode to hold a child restraint system by pulling the shoulder belt all the way out. Allow it to retract to desired length. Check that the belt straps are fully tightened and the retractor / webbing is locked.

*Note: Unbuckling the belt and allowing it to retract fully deactivates the ALR retractor*

Failure to use the ALR lock mode will result in the child safety seat not being properly secured.

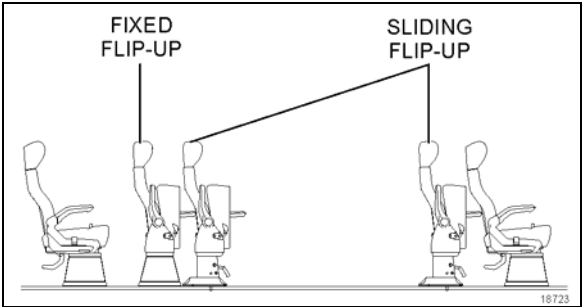
When using a **booster seat**, do not pull the shoulder belt all the way out. Doing so would engage the ALR lock mode which is not recommended with booster seat.

Install the child seat/booster according to the manufacturer's instructions.

### SEAT RECONFIGURATION FOR MOBILITY DEVICES

The layout features four (4) sliding, flip-up, and two (2) fixed flip-up, two-passenger seats.

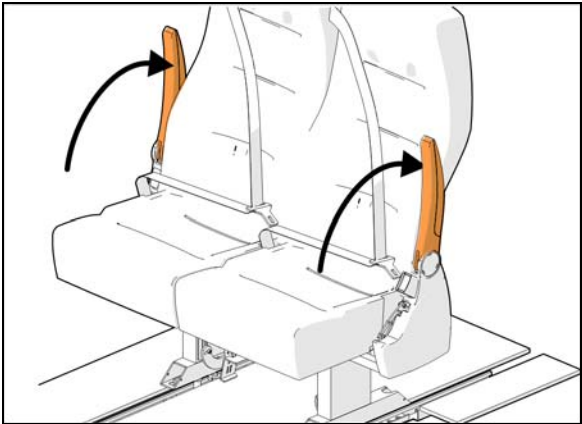
They are placed in the center section for easy reconfiguration to accommodate mobility devices.



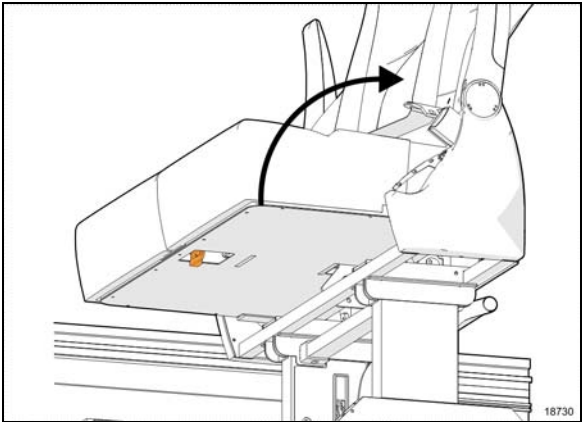
SEAT RECONFIGURATION

**SEATED to STOWED position**

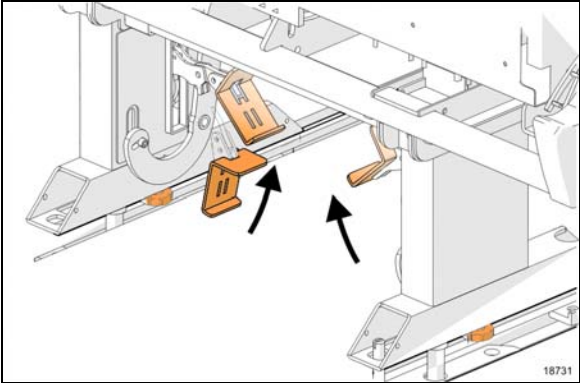
- Fold up the armrests.



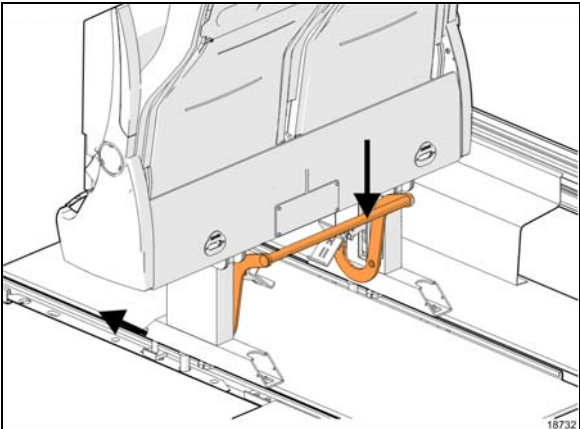
- A cushion latch lever is located underneath the cushion. To flip the seat cushions up, pull lever and rotate the cushion up.



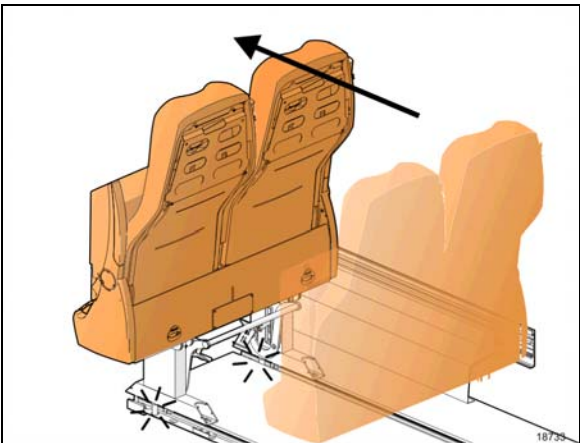
- With your foot, lift both levers located under the seat.



- Proceed to the back of the seat.
- With your foot, depress and hold the release bar. Move the seat a few inches away on the rails then release bar. This action lifts the stowing plunger from the receptacle in the rail and places it in the flat section of the rail.

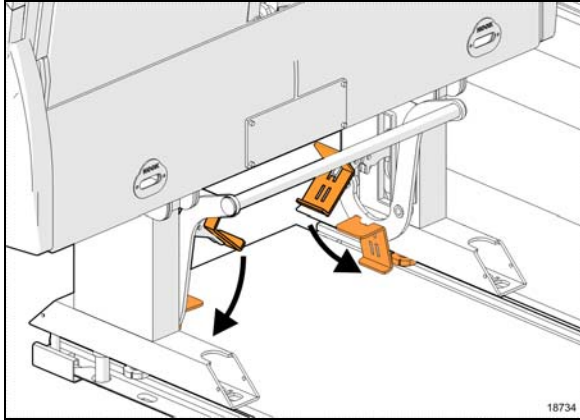


- Move the seat straight along the rails to the stowed position using handle if pulling or lower portion of backrest if pushing. When seat reaches stowed position, plungers will click down and you will feel the seat stop.



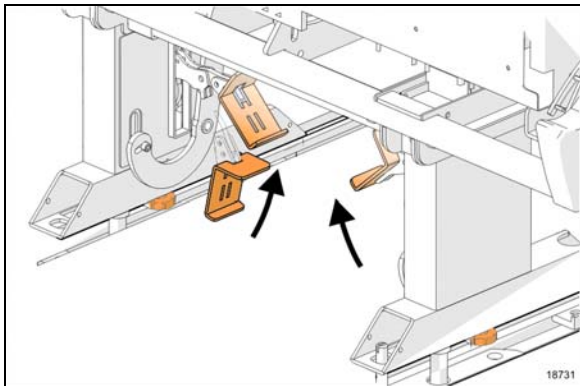
- With your feet, depress both levers located under the seat.

### 3-8 Coach Interior

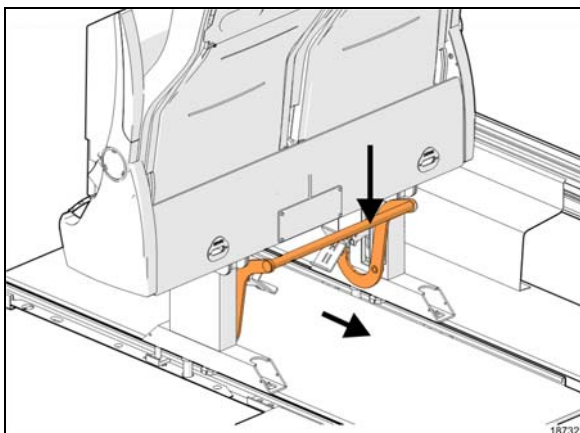


#### STOWED to SEATED position

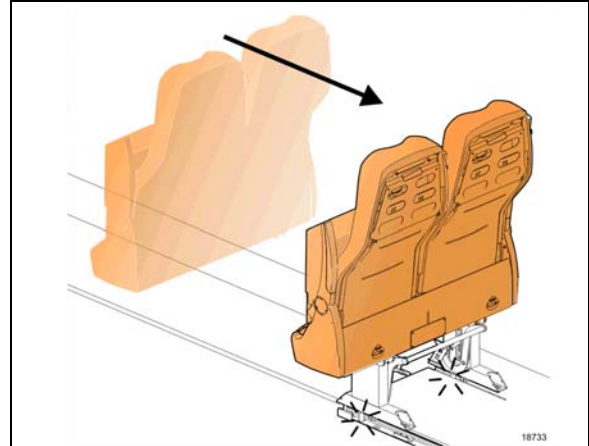
- With your feet, lift both levers located under the seat.



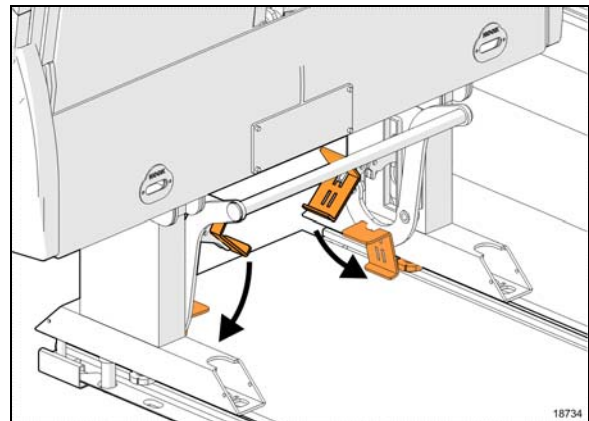
- With your foot, depress and hold the release bar. Move the seat a few inches away on the rails then release bar.



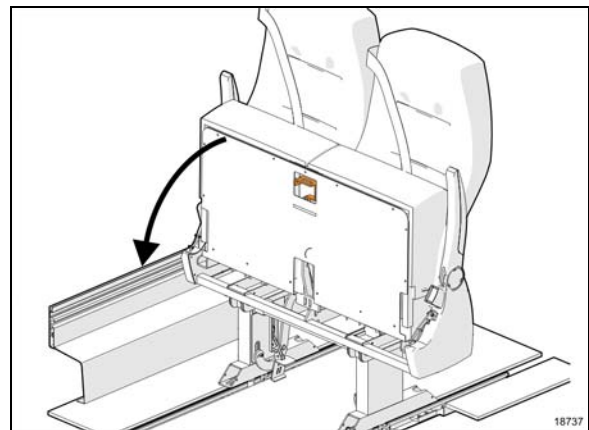
- Move the seat straight along the rails to the stowed position using handle if pulling or lower portion of backrest if pushing. When seat reaches stowed position, plungers will click down and you will feel the seat stop.



- With your feet, depress both levers located under the seat.



- Lower the seat cushions by pulling lever and rotating the cushion down.

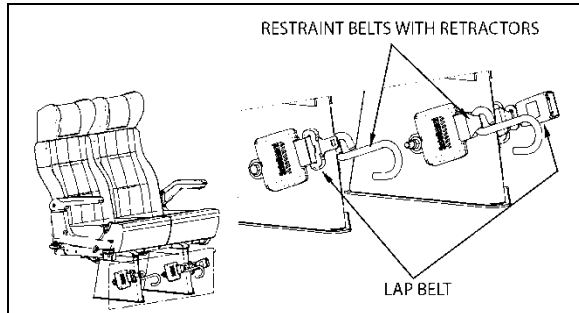


Passengers boarding with mobility devices will need scooter belts for proper securement. Four (4) belts are included in the bus for this purpose.

#### 4-POINT SECUREMENT WITH ANCHORAGE TO PASSENGERS SEAT PEDESTALS

This securement system includes:

- 4 wheelchair restraint belts and retractors with anchorage to passengers seat pedestals.
- Occupant securements: lap and shoulder belt.



WHEELCHAIR AND OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEM

To secure the wheelchair, four restraint belts must be used (at all four corners). Hook one wheelchair restraint belt to each corner of the wheelchair frame (**not the wheels**) and allow the retractors to tension the belts.

To remove the restraint belts, push down on the tension release lever found on the retractor. Unhook the wheelchair and allow the belts to retract. Guide the belts in, making sure they remain untwisted as they retract.

#### Wheelchair Occupant Restraint

Secure the wheelchair occupant in the following manner:

Fasten and adjust the lap belts so it sits snug across the hips. Make sure that you place the lap belt buckle on the center aisle side. Fasten the shoulder belt by inserting the lap belt tab into the shoulder belt buckle. A retractor adjusts shoulder belt length automatically.



#### WARNING

A snug fit with the lap belt positioned low on the hips is necessary to maximize safety. The belt should not be worn or twisted. Avoid pinching the belt and/or hardware. Do not wear over rigid or breakable objects such as eyeglasses, pens or keys as these may cause injuries.

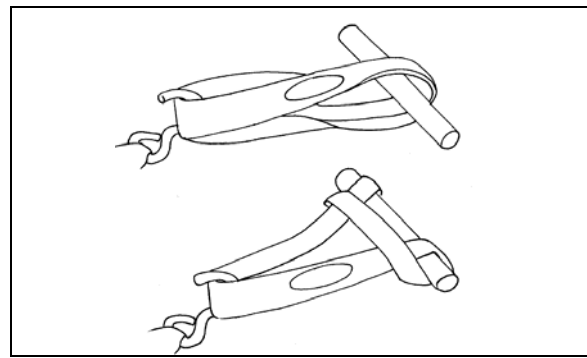


#### CAUTION

The safety belt buckle provided with the red release button must always be located on the center aisle side.

To unfasten the belts, press the red release button on the shoulder belt buckle first and then unfasten the lap belt by pressing the red release button on the lap belt buckle.

Use the blue webbing loops whenever the wheelchair restraint belt hook cannot reach a stiff member of the wheelchair chassis.



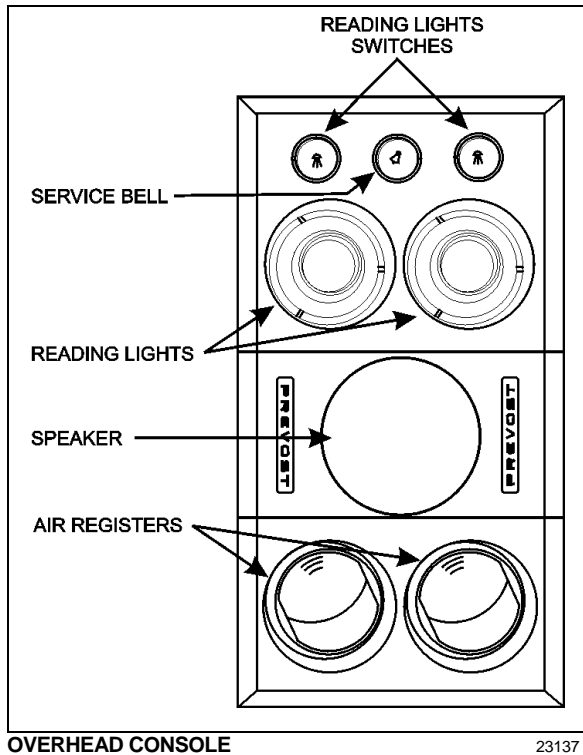
TYPICAL USE OF THE BLUE WEBBING LOOPS

#### OVERHEAD CONSOLE

One airplane type overhead console is installed above each row of twin seats to provide a total of 107 ft<sup>3</sup> (3.0 m<sup>3</sup>) of storage capacity. Such amenities as reading lights, air vents and an optional service bell are controlled from this panel.



## 3-10 Coach Interior



### ADJUSTABLE AIR REGISTERS

Manually adjustable registers located on the overhead console provide air flow to the passengers. Air flow can be directed, passengers can orient individual registers by rotating the nozzle. To adjust air flow, passengers must open or close the flaps. Activation of the fans is done by depressing a rocker switch on the dashboard. Refer to Controls & Instruments chapter.

### SERVICE BELL

Pressing the service button on the overhead console will illuminate the button providing a visual cue for service personnel and, if activated, will sound a chime in the driver's area. The chime system is activated by a rocker switch located on the dashboard. Refer to Controls & Instruments chapter. Passengers may also use the chime system to request a stop for disembarking. Press the service button a second time to cancel the service request. To adjust the chime volume level, refer to "CONTROLS & INSTRUMENTS" chapter under Audiovisual Controller.

### READING LIGHTS

Reading lights are mounted underneath the overhead storage compartments. Depressing a rocker switch located on the dashboard (refer to Controls & Instruments chapter) will activate the reading light circuit and allow passenger control of reading lights. Turning the key or ignition lever to the accessory position "ACC" when the reading lights are on will activate the lights to full intensity, providing a clear view over the entire cabin area.

### WINDOWS

The coach is equipped with frameless flush-mounted "Galaxsee" windows all around and a split-window windshield for maximum visibility.

### PANORAMIC WINDOWS

Some double pane (thermopane) side windows are of the fixed type; they are bonded to the structure and cannot be opened. Others side windows can be easily opened to serve as emergency exits.

#### Fixed Windows

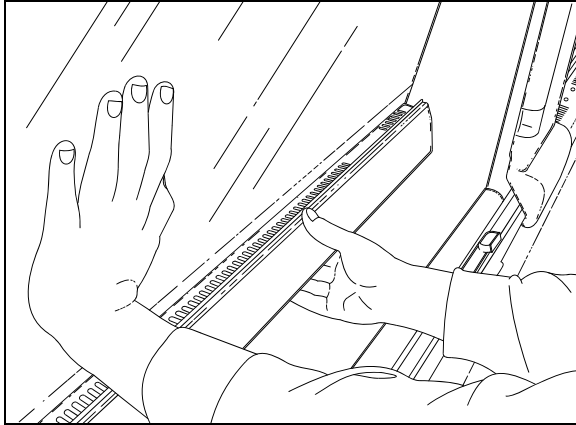
These windows are bonded to the structure and form an integral part of the body of the vehicle, helping reduce vibration and noise. Fixed windows cannot be opened.

#### Emergency Windows

These windows can be opened from inside the vehicle as emergency exits. A decal on window sills indicates the location of the emergency windows. To open an emergency window, lift the window release bar (sill) and push the window open from the bottom.

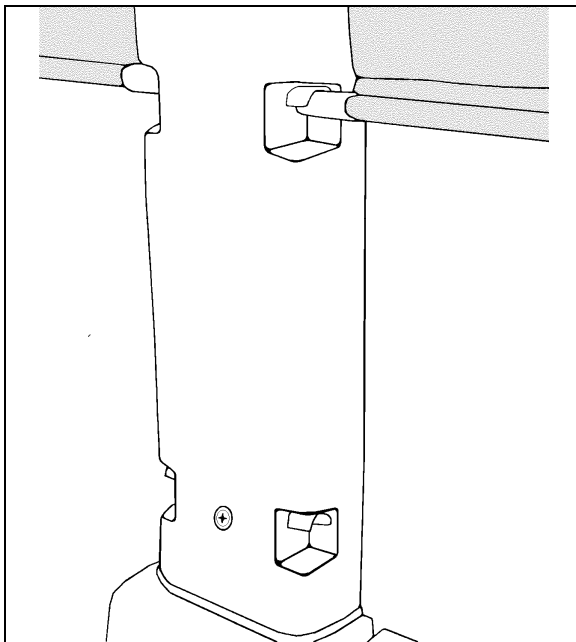
To close, lift the release bar and pull the window into position. Push down on release bar to lock the window shut.

For more information on emergency features, refer to "Safety Features and Equipment" chapter.



EMERGENCY WINDOW OPENING 18391

**Window Sun Shades**



PULL DOWN SUN SHADES 18374

Passenger windows may be equipped with pull-down sun shades. To operate, pull down the shade and insert the hem into the first or second catch. To retract pull out from the slots and guide the shade back up.

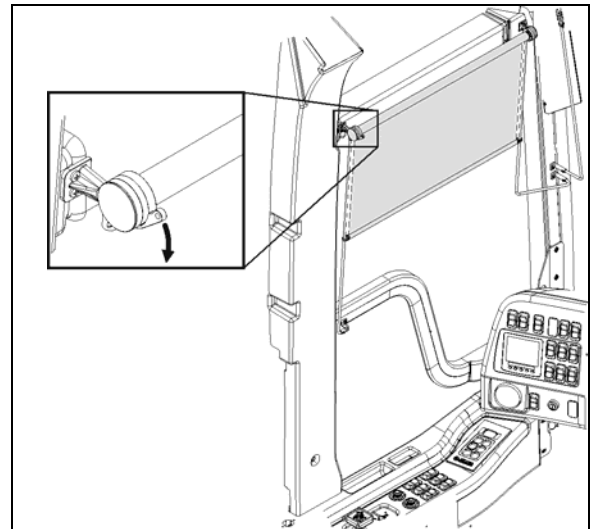
**DRIVER'S POWER WINDOW**

The driver has a power window on his left side. This window is controlled by a rocker switch located on the lateral control panel. Refer to "Controls and Instruments" chapter.

**DRIVER'S SUNSHADES**

This vehicle is provided with a spring release type sunshade on the driver's left side window. To operate, pull down the sunshade by its hem to the appropriate position and release. It will remain in position. To raise, depress the unlocking lever and guide the sunshade back up using the other hand.

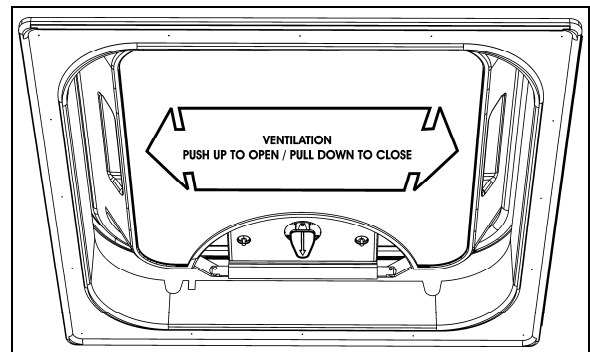
Two other spring release type sunshades are installed at the top of the windshields. These sunshades can be opened and closed manually.



SPRING RELEASE SUNSHADE 23019\_2

**VENTILATION / EMERGENCY EGRESS HATCH**

Roof ventilation / emergency egress hatches are installed in the ceiling at the front and the rear of the coach. To open the hatch, push up with both hands and pull down to close. The ventilation hatch can be completely opened for emergency egress. Refer to "Safety Features and Equipment" chapter.



VENTILATION HATCH

## 3-12 Coach Interior



### WARNING

Be aware of coach overhead clearance when traveling under overpasses with the ventilation hatch(es) open. Check for maximum clearance height.

## OVERHEAD COMPARTMENTS

Passenger carry-on baggage is stored in overhead compartments on each side of the coach. A first aid kit is located in the first front curb side overhead storage compartment. An optional video cassette player and a CD player may be installed in the first front driver's side overhead storage compartment.

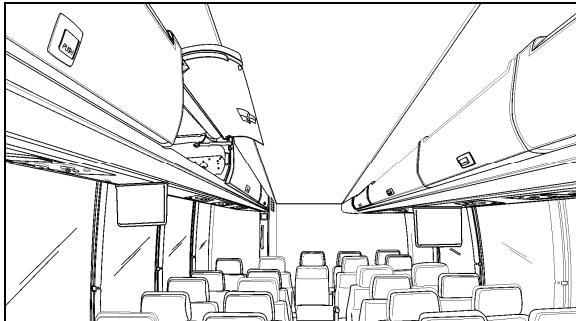
To open the optional closed overhead storage compartments, push the handle in to release the latch, then let go. A pressurized cylinder opens the door.

### NOTE

The overhead storage compartments have a minimum amount of separators installed so as to quicken inspection for forgotten objects.

### NOTE

An optional lock can be installed on the first front driver's side overhead storage compartment door.



OVERHEAD STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

18603

## WASTE CONTAINER

The waste container is located on the lavatory wall, and is accessible through an opening on each side of the wall.



WASTE CONTAINER

## LAVATORY

The lavatory is located in the rear curb side corner of the coach. It is equipped with a chemical flush toilet, bathroom tissue dispenser, mirror and waste container access.

A movement detector will automatically illuminate a fluorescent light inside the lavatory and two outside signs to indicate occupation. One sign is located on the outer wall of the lavatory and another sign is located over the windshield. A telltale light on the dashboard will also illuminate to inform the driver when the lavatory is occupied.

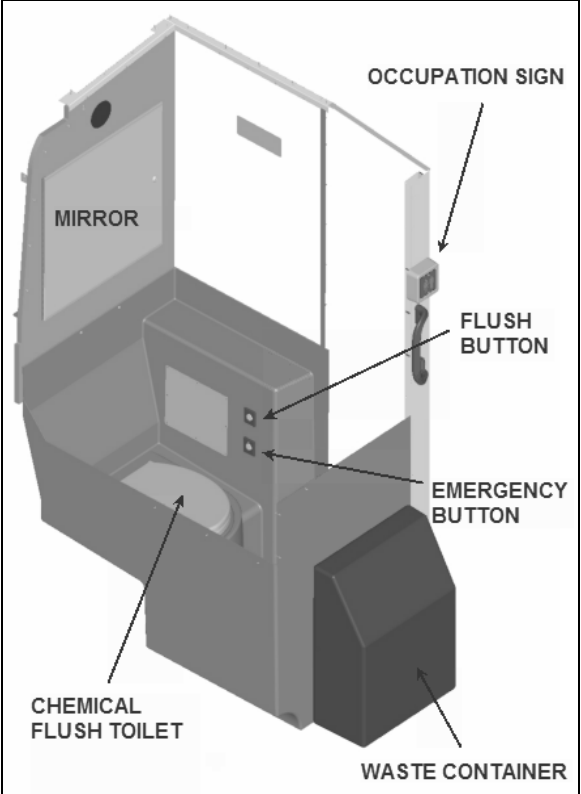
If emergency assistance is required, the lavatory occupant can actuate a buzzer that will sound in driver's area. The buzzer's push-button is located just below the toilet flush button.



FLUSH AND EMERGENCY CALL BUTTONS

The lavatory has its own ventilation system that operates only when the ignition switch is in the "ON" position.

**NOTE**  
This fan runs constantly when the ignition switch located on the dashboard is in the "ON" position.



LAVATORY

23235\_1



|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| <b>KEYS .....</b>  | <b>4</b>  |
| UTILITY COMPARTMENTS KEY .....                                     | 4         |
| <b>KEYLESS IGNITION SWITCH.....</b>                                | <b>4</b>  |
| OFF .....  | 4         |
| ON.....  | 5         |
| START .....  | 5         |
| <b>LATERAL CONTROL PANEL.....</b>                                  | <b>7</b>  |
| TRANSMISSION CONTROL PAD .....                                     | 8         |
| <i>Kneeling System</i> .....                                       | 8         |
| <i>Horn Selector</i> .....   | 8         |
| <i>Power Window Switch</i> .....                                   | 8         |
| TAG AXLE CONTROL VALVE .....                                       | 9         |
| PARKING BRAKE CONTROL VALVE .....                                  | 9         |
| PREHEATER TIMER.....   | 9         |
| UTILITY COMPARTMENT.....   | 9         |
| 12-VOLT POWER OUTLET.....  | 9         |
| <b>ON BOARD DIAGNOSTIC RECEPTACLE.....</b>                         | <b>9</b>  |
| <b>AUTOMATIC FIRE DETECTION AND SUPPRESSION SYSTEM (AFSS).....</b> | <b>10</b> |
| PROTECTION PANEL .....   | 10        |
| MANUAL ACTIVATION SWITCH.....                                      | 10        |
| <b>CRUISE CONTROL .....</b>  | <b>10</b> |
| <i>Turning the system on</i> .....                                 | 10        |
| <i>Setting at a desired speed</i> .....                            | 10        |
| <b>PREVOST AWARE • ADAPTIVE CRUISE BRAKING .....</b>               | <b>12</b> |
| TURNING THE ACB SYSTEM ON .....                                    | 13        |
| TURNING OFF THE ACB SYSTEM.....                                    | 13        |
| MAINTAINING A SET FOLLOWING DISTANCE.....                          | 13        |
| DRIVER WARNINGS.....   | 14        |
| <i>Dashboard Telltale</i> .....                                    | 14        |
| <i>Speedometer Leds</i> .....                                      | 14        |
| <i>Following Distance Alert (Fda)</i> .....                        | 15        |
| <i>Impact Alert</i> .....  | 15        |
| BRAKE OVERUSE WARNING.....   | 15        |
| SELF-DIAGNOSTIC AT START-UP .....                                  | 17        |
| SYSTEM MALFUNCTION.....  | 17        |
| <b>TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) .....</b>                | <b>17</b> |
| <i>TPMS Display</i> .....  | 17        |
| <i>Operation</i> .....   | 18        |
| <i>Start-up</i> .....  | 18        |
| <i>Pre-Trip Check</i> .....  | 18        |
| <i>Spare tire:</i> .....   | 20        |
| <i>Post Trip Operation</i> .....                                   | 20        |
| <b>DASHBOARD .....</b>   | <b>21</b> |
| CONTROL SWITCHES.....  | 22        |

## 4-2 Controls and Instruments

---

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| L. H. DASHBOARD PANEL .....   | 22        |
| <b>7B</b> Headlights and Exterior Lighting .....  | 22        |
| R. H. DASHBOARD PANEL.....  | 24        |
| HVAC CONTROL UNIT.....  | 26        |
| Heating Mode Indicator.....   | 27        |
| Cooling Mode Indicator .....  | 27        |
| Fan Speed .....   | 27        |
| Recirculate .....   | 27        |
| Driver's section temperature setting .....  | 27        |
| Passenger's section temperature setting .....   | 27        |
| Windshield Defogger .....   | 28        |
| Panel and Footwell .....  | 28        |
| Panel .....   | 28        |
| Temperature Degree Selector.....  | 28        |
| AUDIO-VIDEO SELECTOR FOR THE PASSENGER'S AREA .....   | 28        |
| AIR VENTS .....   | 31        |
| <b>INSTRUMENT CLUSTER.....</b>  | <b>32</b> |
| ANALOG INDICATORS .....   | 33        |
| TELLTALE LIGHTS.....  | 36        |
| <b>10B</b> Stop .....   | 36        |
| <b>11B</b> Check .....  | 36        |
| <b>12B</b> Information.....   | 36        |
| <b>13B</b> Turn signal indicators .....   | 36        |
| <b>14B</b> Parking brake or emergency brake applied.....                                      | 37        |
| <b>15B</b> Aftertreatment system malfunction (Malfunction Indicator Lamp).....                | 37        |
| <b>16B</b> Cruise control.....  | 37        |
| <b>17B</b> Cruise control set speed.....  | 37        |
| <b>18B</b> High exhaust system temperature (HEST).....  | 37        |
| <b>19B</b> DPF regeneration request.....  | 37        |
| Low DEF level.....  | 38        |
| <b>20B</b> CHARGING SYSTEM WARNING LIGHT .....  | 38        |
| <b>21B</b> Intake air preheater on – wait before starting.....                                | 38        |
| <b>22B</b> Flat tire (with optional tire pressure monitoring system) .....                    | 38        |
| <b>23B</b> Hill start assist .....  | 38        |
| <b>24B</b> Antilock brake system (ABS).....   | 39        |
| <b>25B</b> Trailer antilock brake system (ABS).....   | 39        |
| <b>26B</b> TCS/ESC - Traction Control System and Electronic Stability Control.....            | 39        |
| <b>27B</b> High beam .....  | 39        |
| STOP, CHECK AND INFORMATION TELLTALE LIGHTS .....   | 39        |
| STOP Telltale light.....  | 39        |
| CHECK Telltale light .....  | 40        |
| INFORMATION Telltale light .....  | 40        |
| Acknowledging Messages.....   | 40        |
| DRIVER INFORMATION DISPLAY .....  | 40        |
| Selecting a menu.....   | 41        |
| To change settings.....   | 41        |
| Scrolling through the menus without using the steering wheel buttons.....                     | 41        |
| PICTOGRAMS DISPLAYED ON THE DRIVER INFORMATION DISPLAY (DID) .....                            | 43        |
| Warning pictograms, pop-up message pictograms, verifications and information pictograms ..... | 43        |
| Status Line Pictograms .....  | 50        |
| Status Line Pictograms Contd. ....  | 51        |
| VEHICLE CLEARANCE INFORMATION .....   | 51        |

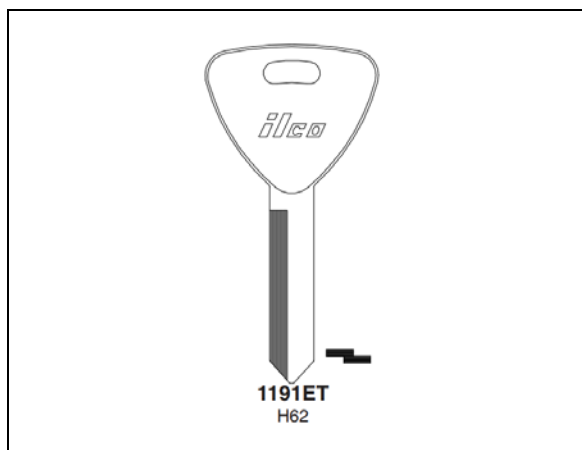
|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>STEERING COLUMN CONTROLS .....</b>         | <b>51</b> |
| MULTI-FUNCTION LEVER .....                    | 51        |
| <i>Turn Signal (1)</i> .....                  | 51        |
| <i>Lane Change Signal (2)</i> .....           | 51        |
| <i>Headlight Beam Toggle Switch (3)</i> ..... | 51        |
| <i>Courtesy Blinkers (4)</i> .....            | 52        |
| <i>Windshield Washer Control (5)</i> .....    | 52        |
| <i>Windshield Wipers (6)</i> .....            | 52        |
| STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS .....                 | 53        |
| HORNS .....                                   | 54        |
| <b>FOOT-OPERATED CONTROLS .....</b>           | <b>54</b> |
| BRAKE PEDAL .....                             | 54        |
| ACCELERATOR PEDAL .....                       | 55        |
| <b>ALLISON TRANSMISSION .....</b>             | <b>55</b> |
| OPERATION .....                               | 55        |
| PUSHBUTTON SHIFT SELECTOR .....               | 55        |
| PRIMARY AND SECONDARY SHIFT SCHEDULES .....   | 56        |
| TRANSMISSION SERVICE INDICATOR.....           | 56        |
| DESCRIPTION OF AVAILABLE RANGES.....          | 56        |
| <i>R (Reverse)</i> .....                      | 56        |
| <i>N (Neutral)</i> .....                      | 56        |
| <i>D (Drive)</i> .....                        | 57        |
| <i>2 (Second range)</i> .....                 | 57        |
| <i>3, 4 (Third and fourth ranges)</i> .....   | 57        |



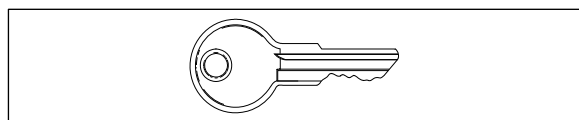
### KEYS

Use this key to unlock all the following interior and exterior locks.

- the entrance door;
- the baggage compartment doors;
- WCL door;
- inverter access hatch (lavatory mirror);
- the electrical and service compartment doors;
- Two lockable overhead compartment;

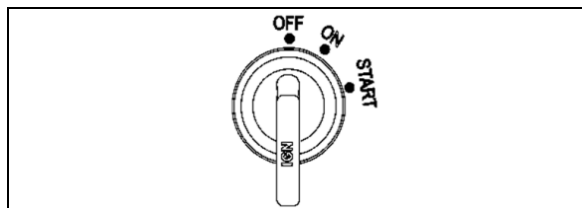


### UTILITY COMPARTMENTS KEY



This key locks or unlocks the utility compartments and the utility drawer on the dashboard.

### KEYLESS IGNITION SWITCH



IGNITION SWITCH POSITIONS

06354

Coaches may be equipped with an ignition lever instead of an ignition key. Use the ignition switch to activate the electrical circuit by turning it counterclockwise to the ON position.

To start the engine, turn the key clockwise to the START position, and then release it. The key will set to ON position.



### CAUTION

When the vehicle is parked overnight or for an extended period of time, the battery master switch (ignition switch) should be set to the *off* position.

### NOTE

When the battery master switch (ignition switch) is set to the *off* position, all electrical supply from the batteries is cut off, with the exception of battery equalizer check module, ecm ignition and power supply, Allison tcm, i-shift transmission ecu), coolant electronic, coolant heater and water re-circulating pump, power-verter, fire alarm and entrance door.

The ignition switch doubles as the battery master switch. Any position other than OFF activates the electrical circuits. Electrical circuits are also activated when the hazard switch is depressed. Two auxiliary master switches in series with the ignition switch are installed on the vehicle; one is located on the rear electrical panel and one in the engine compartment on the rear start panel, for maintenance ease.

The ignition switch is located on the lower left side of the dashboard. It has four positions:

### OFF

In the *OFF* position, ignition cannot take place. The key can be removed when in this position.

The electrical circuits are not activated when the switch is in this position. Only the accessories connected directly to the batteries can be activated. These are the coolant heater and water pump, the battery master switch, the baggage compartments locking system, the entrance door and Message Center Display

(MCD). Maintain the switch in this position when parked overnight or for an extended period.

**NOTE**

*The battery master switch is on when the hazard flashers are activated, even if the key is in the off position.*

**ON**

To place ignition switch to *ON*, turn the key clockwise to the first position. The key cannot be removed when in this position.

The electrical circuits activated when the switch is in the *ACC* position plus the transmission, engine and accessories, ABS system, wipers, dashboard cluster gauges and buzzers, air horn and air dryer heater are activated when the switch is in this position. Do not leave the key in this position unless the engine is running.

**START**

Turn the key clockwise to the second position and release as soon as the engine starts. The key will return to the *ON* position. If the engine did not start, return the ignition key to the *OFF* position before trying to restart the engine.

The ignition switch is equipped with a starter protection which inhibits turning the key to the *START* position if the key has not previously been turned to the *OFF* position.



**CAUTION**

To avoid overheating the starter, do not engage the starter for more than 15 seconds at a time. Allow the starter to cool before trying to restart the engine.



**CAUTION**

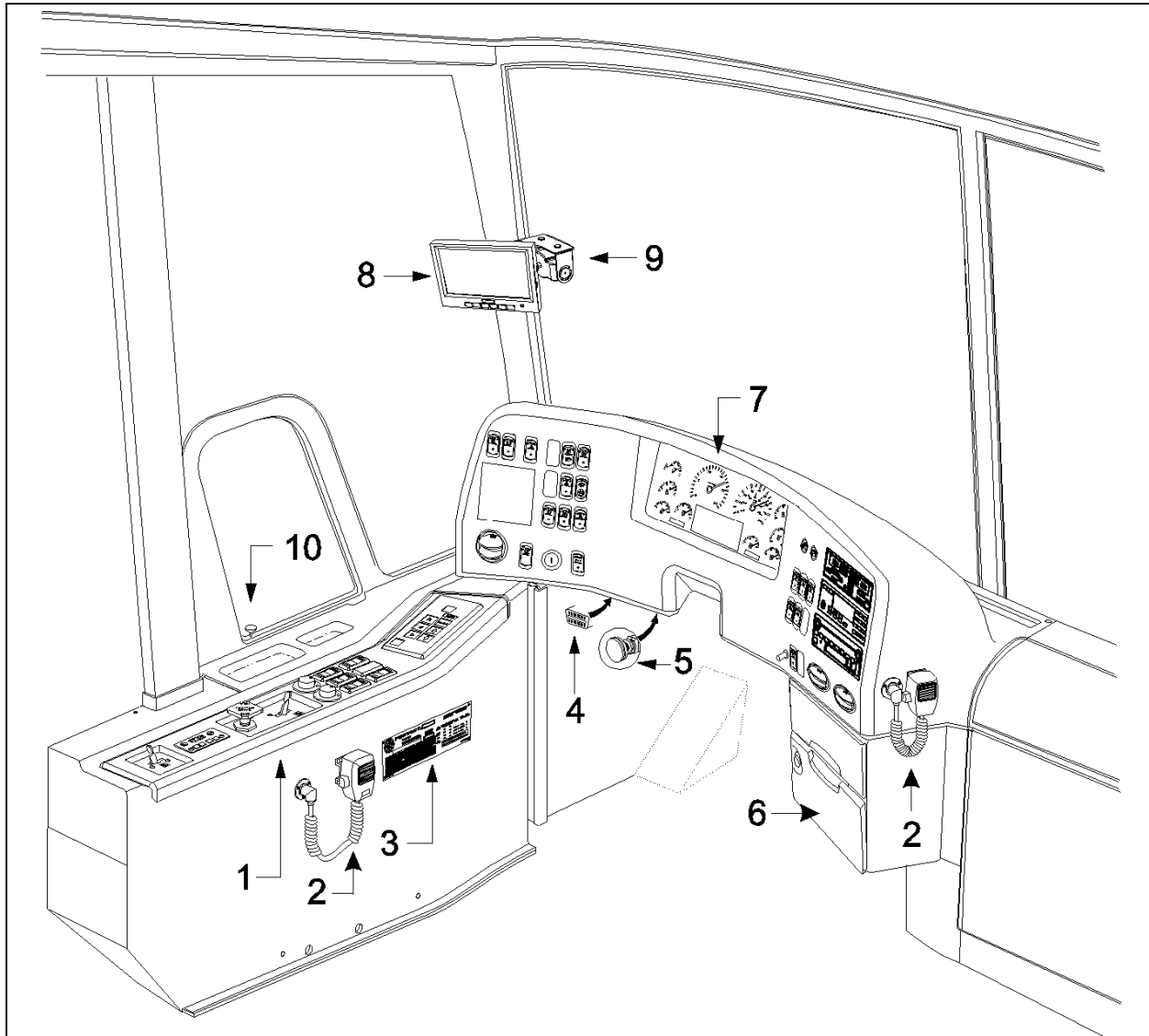
If the "starter on" indicator light remains illuminated even after releasing the ignition switch, stop the engine immediately and set the battery master switch (ignition switch) to the off position. Have the starter checked immediately.

The features activated when the engine is running are all those described above plus the HVAC system and daytime running lights.



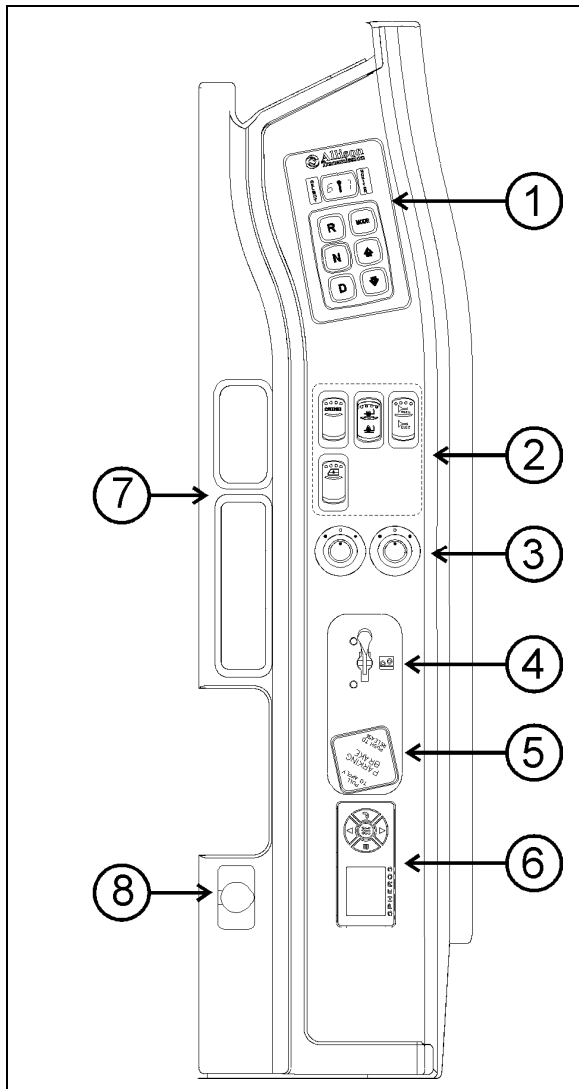
**DANGER**

**Do not** use ether or other combustible starting aid fluid on any engine equipped with an intake air preheater. If the engine is equipped with a preheater, introduction of ether or similar starting aids could cause a fire or explosion resulting in severe property damage, serious personal injury or death.



1. Lateral control panel
2. Microphone
3. DOT certification plate
4. OBD (On Board Diagnostics) receptacle
5. Foot-operated steering wheel adjustment release knob
6. Driver's utility compartment
7. Dashboard
8. Rear view monitor (not provided)
9. Front view scenic camera (not provided)
10. Front electrical and service compartment door unlocking pull rod

LATERAL CONTROL PANEL



1. Transmission control pad
2. Control switches
3. Not functional (outside rear view mirrors are manually adjustable)
4. Tag axle control valve
5. Parking brakes control valve
6. Coolant preheater timer
7. Utility Compartment
8. 12-volt power outlet

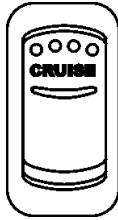
LATERAL CONTROL PANEL

### 1 TRANSMISSION CONTROL PAD

The Allison transmission control pad is located on the lateral control panel. Refer to AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION in this chapter for operating instructions and more information.

### 2 CONTROL SWITCHES

#### Cruise Control Switch

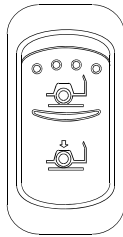


06701

Depress the **crui**se rocker switch to activate the cruise control. This turns the system on. A led on the switch shows that you can now set the vehicle at a desired cruising speed.

For operation of the cruise control, refer to CRUISE CONTROL & PREVOST AWARE-ADAPTIVE CRUISE BRAKING paragraphs in this chapter.

#### Kneeling System



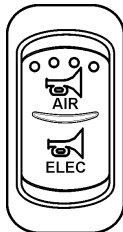
06250

Momentarily press the rocker switch downwards to lower the front end of the coach 4 inches (100 mm). Momentarily press the rocker switch upwards to raise the coach to the normal driving height. Refer to OTHER FEATURES section for more information.

***NOTE***

*The parking brakes must be applied to allow the use of the kneeling.*

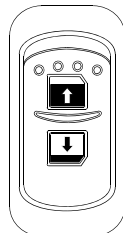
#### Horn Selector



06700

Use this switch the toggle between the air horn and the electric horn when pressing the steering wheel center pad.

#### Power Window Switch



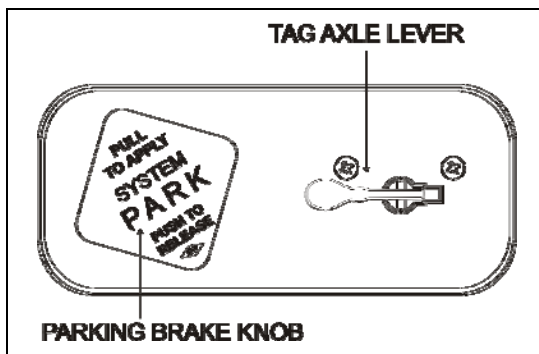
06338

Use this rocker switch to open or close the driver's power window.

** CAUTION**

Close power window when parked or leaving the coach unattended.

4 TAG AXLE CONTROL VALVE



CONTROL VALVES

12129\_EN

Lift the tag axle by pushing the lever forward. Pulling the lever back will lower the tag axle. Refer to "Other Features" chapter for additional information.

**AUTOMATIC UNLOAD**

To reduce the turning radius, the air springs pressure will be automatically reduced by 75% when the coach is moving at speed lower than 5 mph (8 km/h) and with more than 1½ turn from the steering.

5 PARKING BRAKE CONTROL VALVE

Spring-loaded parking brakes are applied by pulling up the control valve knob and protector assembly. Lift the safety cover and push down to release brakes. Refer to SAFETY FEATURES AND EQUIPMENT chapter.

6 PREHEATER TIMER

Use the timer to program the start time of the optional engine coolant preheater. Refer to OTHER FEATURES chapter and supplied manufacturer's manual for additional information.

7 UTILITY COMPARTMENT

To open the compartment, lift the cover.

8 12-VOLT POWER OUTLET

This 12 volts DC power outlet can be used to power small 12 volt DC appliances such as a cellular phone. The maximum power consumption allowed for appliances plugged in this socket is 130 watts.

**ON BOARD DIAGNOSTIC RECEPTACLE**

To ease troubleshooting, you can connect a diagnostic tool through the OBD receptacle to access recorded data. The OBD receptacle is located under the dashboard, on the left side.

## 4-10 Controls and Instruments

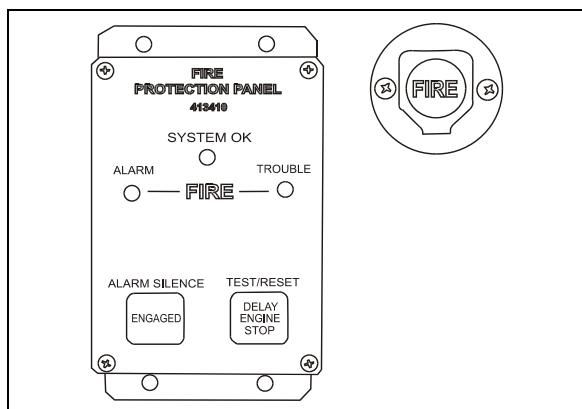
### AUTOMATIC FIRE DETECTION AND SUPPRESSION SYSTEM (AFSS)

#### PROTECTION PANEL

The protection panel displays the current system status. The protection panel contains “SYSTEM OK”, fire “ALARM” and “TROUBLE” lamps, the audio alarm, the “TEST/RESET” switch, and the “ALARM SILENCE” switch.

The “SYSTEM OK” lamp indicates power is on the system and that there are no trouble conditions present. The “TROUBLE” lamp blinks if there is a fault in the detection circuitry and illuminates solid if there is a fault in the extinguishing circuitry. When the “TROUBLE” lamp is on, the “SYSTEM OK” lamp will be off and the audible alarm will sound intermittently. The “SYSTEM OK” lamp will flash when the system is low on battery power. Depressing the “TEST/RESET” switch tests the protection panel lamps and audio alarm. The “ALARM SILENCE” switch will disable the audio alarm.

When a fire detector automatically detects a fire, the fire “ALARM” lamp and audio alarm activate. When the Manual Activation Switch is activated, the fire “ALARM” lamp blinks and the audio alarm activates. The lamp will remain blinking until power is cycled to the system.



AFSS PROTECTION PANEL & MANUAL ACTIVATION SWITCH

#### MANUAL ACTIVATION SWITCH

The manual activation switch allows immediate system activation (extinguisher discharge and engine shutdown) by the operator at any time. Activation of the switch is accomplished by

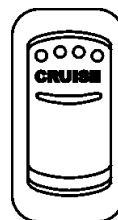
twisting and pulling the tamper seal to remove, lifting the cover and pressing the red “FIRE” button for more than half a second. After the manual activation switch has been activated, the protection panel will blink the fire “ALARM” indicator until power has been cycled to the system.

Refer to SAFETY FEATURES AND EQUIPMENT chapter for more information on *Kidde Dual Spectrum* Automatic Fire detection and Suppression System (AFSS).

### CRUISE CONTROL

The cruise control allows you to cruise the vehicle at a desired speed without having to use the accelerator pedal.

#### Turning the system on

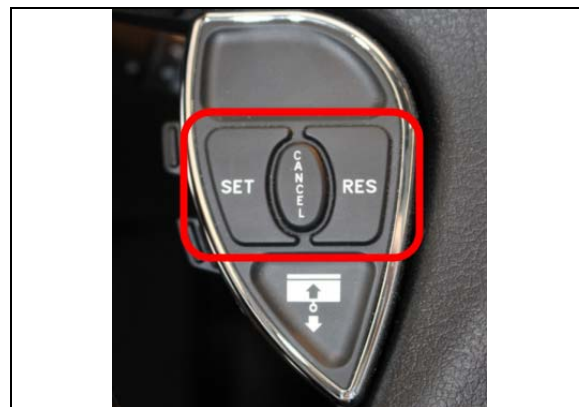


06701

To operate the cruise control, press the **cruise** rocker switch located on the lateral control panel to the on position. This turns the system on. The dashboard telltale turns on; you can now set the vehicle at a desired cruising speed. To turn off the system, press the rocker switch to the off position.

#### NOTE

The **cruise** switch and **resume** button do not operate at speeds below 30 mph (50 km/h).



CRUISE CONTROL BUTTONS

#### Setting at a desired speed

Accelerate the vehicle to the desired cruising speed using the accelerator pedal. Press and

release the **SET** button then remove foot from the accelerator pedal. This will set the vehicle cruise speed and store it in memory. The set speed will appear in the driver information display.

### Increasing set speed

The vehicle cruise speed setting can be increased by one of the following methods.

1. Accelerate using the accelerator pedal until the desired cruising speed is reached. Press and release the **SET** button.  
or
2. Press and hold the **RES** (RESUME) button until the desired cruising speed is reached. When the **RES** button is released, the new cruising speed will be stored in the cruise control memory.  
or
3. When driving with cruise control, each time the **RES** button is momentarily depressed, the cruising set speed is raised by 1 mph (2 km/h).

**NOTE**

*When driving with cruise control, the vehicle can still be accelerated by depressing the accelerator pedal in the usual manner. Once the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will return to the previously set cruising speed.*

### Decreasing set speed

The vehicle cruise speed setting can be decreased by one of the following methods.

1. Press and hold the **SET** button until the desired cruising speed is reached. When the **SET** button is released, the new cruising speed will be stored in the cruise control memory.  
or
2. Each brief pressing of the **SET** button will decrease set cruising speed by 1 mph (2 km/h).  
or
3. Slightly apply the service brake and when desired cruise speed is reached, press and release the **SET** button.

### Canceling the set speed

You can cancel the set cruising speed by:

1. Pressing momentarily the **CANCEL** button;
2. Depressing the brake pedal.

### Automatic Cruise Control Cancellation

The set speed is automatically canceled in any of the following situations:

- The windshield wipers are operating in low or high speed;
- The actual vehicle speed falls below 30 mph (50 km/h).



## 4-12 Controls and Instruments

### Resuming Set Speed

If the set speed is cancelled by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, pressing the **RES** (RESUME) button will restore the speed set prior to cancellation, providing that your speed is above 30 mph (50 km/h).

#### NOTE

*When driving downhill with the cruise control on and set, the engine brake or the transmission retarder engage automatically (if previously activated) when the selected cruise speed is exceeded by approximately:*

- 4 mph (7 km/h) with the engine brake activated;
- 0.6 mph (1 km/h) with the transmission retarder activated.

*The engine brake or the transmission retarder is then disengaged when speed has returned near to selected cruise speed.*

*The engine brake will provide low braking power or high braking power depending on which of the two steering wheel engine brake control buttons is activated;*

① = engine brake low

② = engine brake high

*The transmission retarder maximum braking level is determined by the retarder hand lever position on the steering wheel.*

#### NOTE

*To avoid sudden vehicle hesitation, slightly depress the accelerator pedal before disengaging the cruise control.*

#### NOTE

*When the **cruise** rocker switch is released, the cruise control is completely shut off and the cruise speed setting is erased from the cruise control memory.*

#### IMPORTANT NOTE

*If the engine was stopped and the cruise rocker switch was in the on position, the rocker switch must be reset by turning it off then on again in order for the cruise control to be reactivated.*



#### WARNING

Do not use the cruise control when driving speed must be constantly adjusted, such as in heavy traffic or on winding, icy, snow-covered or slippery roads, or on gravel roads.



#### WARNING

Do not put the transmission in the neutral (n) position while driving with cruise control. This may cause the engine to over-speed and result in a loss of driving control.

### PREVOST AWARE • ADAPTIVE CRUISE BRAKING

Prevost AWARE Adaptive Cruise Braking (ACB) is an optional cruise control that not only maintains the set speed, but will also intervene, as needed, to help the driver maintain a set following distance behind the forward vehicle by reducing speed as necessary. As soon as the forward vehicle is at a safe distance, the coach will accelerate back to the cruise set speed.

#### NOTE

*The following paragraphs briefly sum up the information concerning the operation and function of the ACB. Before driving the vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information found in Bendix Wingman ACB Active Cruise with Braking Operator's Manual. The driver should fully understand all the audible alerts and visual indicators that the system provides. Bendix Wingman ACB Active Cruise with Braking Operator's Manual (available on Prevost web site and included on the Technical Publications CD) will assist in explaining what each of them means and what actions the driver may be required to take to avoid potential collisions.*



**WARNING**

Even with ACB, the driver must remain alert, react appropriately and in a timely manner, and use good driving practices. Ultimate responsibility for the safe operation of the vehicle remains with the driver at all times.

Be certain that you have read all safety warnings found in Bendix Wingman ACB Active Cruise with Braking Operator's Manual.

The driver will benefit all the audible and visual warnings that the system provides whether or not ACB is turned on. In addition to the audible and visual warnings, when the ACB is turned on and a cruise speed is set, the driver benefits from active interventions like engine throttle reduction, retarder or engine brake application and service brakes application to help maintain a set following distance.



**WARNING**

Adaptive Cruise Braking must be used only in the same conditions that are normally recommended for ordinary cruise control. Refer to "Regular Cruise Control" paragraph.

**TURNING THE ACB SYSTEM ON**

Activation of the adaptive cruise braking is similar to the regular cruise control activation. Press the CRUISE rocker switch to the ON position, accelerate the vehicle to the desired cruising speed and then, press the SET button. ACB is now engaged with the set following distance and driver warnings features. Whenever the cruise control is engaged, the ACB is also engaged. You cannot engage the cruise control without also using the ACB features.

**TURNING OFF THE ACB SYSTEM**

You can turn off the ACB system, simply by applying service brakes, setting the CRUISE rocker switch to the OFF position or pressing the cruise control CANCEL button on the steering wheel.

**NOTE**

*Whenever the service brakes are applied by*

*intervention of the ACB or by the driver, normal cruise will automatically be cancelled. The driver must resume or set the cruise mode in order for the vehicle to throttle up.*

**MAINTAINING A SET FOLLOWING DISTANCE**

Using a radar sensor mounted to the front bumper, the ACB system measures the distance between the coach and the forward vehicle and intervenes to help maintain a safe set following distance behind the vehicle. This feature engages automatically once the driver turns on and sets cruise speed.

Following distance refers to the time gap, measured in seconds, between the coach and the vehicle ahead. The actual physical distance between the coach and the vehicle ahead will vary based on your set cruise speed; although the set time gap remains the same for all set cruise speeds. Prevost's default set time gap is 1.7 seconds.

With cruise control engaged and a cruise speed set, you are maintaining a set following distance between the coach and the forward vehicle:

- **If the vehicle in front of the coach slows down** below your cruise control set speed, the system will progressively intervene as follows, in this order:
  - 1) reduce the engine throttle;
  - 2) apply the engine brake or transmission retarder;
  - 3) apply about 30% of the service brakes available braking power in an attempt to maintain the set following distance.

**The driver must apply additional braking power when required, to avoid collision or to maintain a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.**

**NOTE**

*If the ACB is actively decelerating or braking the coach in an attempt to maintain the set following distance at the moment when the driver cancels the ACB system, the ACB system will continue deceleration or braking intervention until a safe following distance is established, then will cancel.*

*Even though the cruise control doesn't operate at speeds below 30 mph (50 km/h),*

## 4-14 Controls and Instruments

*the ACB system will continue deceleration or braking intervention in an attempt to maintain the set following distance if the coach speed reduces to less than 30 mph (50 km/h).*

- **If the vehicle ahead slows below your cruise control's set speed**, but then accelerates away, and the ACB system did not need to use the service brakes as it managed the intervention, the coach will automatically accelerate back to the original cruise control set speed, and again maintain a set following distance behind the forward vehicle.

### **NOTE**

*The maximum radar range is approximately 500 feet (150 meters). Rain, snow, fog, ice and other severe weather conditions may affect the performance of the ACB system and shorten radar range.*

### **NOTE**

*As part of your pre-trip vehicle inspection, check to see that there is no mud, snow, ice build-up or other obstruction in front of the radar sensor. You should inspect the radar sensor mounting and remove any obstruction that may impair the sensor functioning.*

### DRIVER WARNINGS

Before using the ACB, the driver should fully understand all the audible and visual warnings that the system provides. Any audible warning (beeping or tone) means that your vehicle is too close from the vehicle ahead.

### Dashboard Telltale

When ACB is turned on and a cruise speed is set, if the forward vehicle is detected (in range) by the radar, the FORWARD VEHICLE DETECTED telltale light on the dashboard will illuminate. This is an indication to the driver that the forward vehicle is being tracked, that the ACB is actively managing the distance between the coach and the vehicle ahead and that the ACB system may automatically intervene to maintain the set following distance.



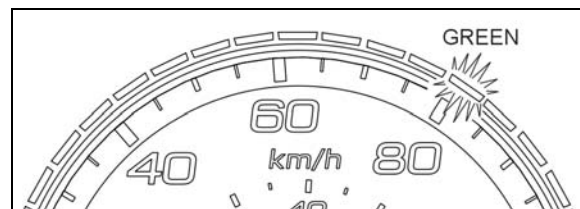
### FORWARD VEHICLE DETECTED telltale light

There are three types of warnings with this telltale light:

- Green: The forward vehicle is detected (in range).
- Flashing red: Collision alert. The forward vehicle is too close to follow safely or a metallic stationary object such as a stopped or stalled vehicle in your lane of travel is detected. The driver must intervene to avoid a collision.
- Solid red: ACB system malfunction. The ACB system and the alert functions are not available.

### Speedometer Leds

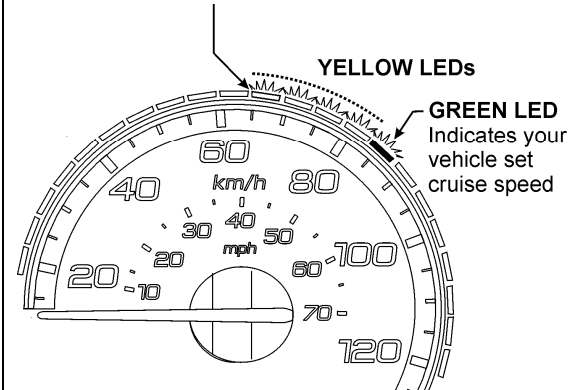
With the cruise control engaged and a cruise speed set, a green LED illuminates above the cruise control set speed on the speedometer.



THE CRUISE SET SPEED IS 80 km/h

With a cruise speed set, the vehicle ahead slows moderately. The system will display to the driver the approximate speed of the vehicle ahead with yellow LEDs above the speedometer.

The vehicle in front of you travels at a speed slower than your vehicle cruise control set speed. The first yellow LED indicates that vehicle's speed as measured by the ACB system.



**EXAMPLE OF THE SPEEDOMETER LED DISPLAY WHEN THE FORWARD VEHICLE IS SLOWER WHILE THE COACH TRAVELS WITH THE ACB CRUISE CONTROL ON AND SET**  
06729\_3

The Impact Alert is also applicable to stationary metallic objects such as stopped or stalled vehicles. This alert provides a warning given up to 3.0 seconds before a potential collision with a stationary metallic object in the coach's lane of travel. The driver can either slow down or maneuver in an attempt to avoid the object. The Impact Alert will only warn and will not actively decelerate or brake the coach when approaching stationary objects.



**WARNING**

Impact Alerts are always operational when the vehicle is running, whether or not ACB is turned on. Active interventions of ACB to maintain safe following distance (throttle reduction, engine brake/retarder application, service brakes application) are only operational when the ACB is engaged with a cruise speed set.

Following Distance Alert (Fda)

Following Distance Alert provides both audible and visual warnings whenever the distance between the coach and the forward vehicle is less than the set distance and getting closer. Once the audible warning is given, the driver must increase the distance between the coach and the vehicle ahead until the audible warning stops or maneuver clear of the forward vehicle.



**WARNING**

Following Distance Alert is always active whenever the coach is moving to a speed greater than 37 mph (60 km/h), whether or not ACB is turned on. Active interventions of ACB to maintain safe following distance (throttle reduction, engine brake/retarder application, service brakes application) are only operational when the ACB is engaged with a cruise speed set.

BRAKE OVERUSE WARNING


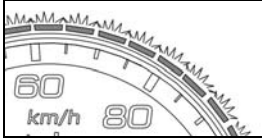
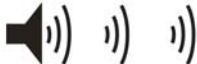
ACB provides a warning when the system is intervening and using the service brakes excessively. Overuse of the foundation brakes can lead to the brakes overheating and a potential loss of braking performance from brake fade. For example, the use of ACB on downhill runs may cause this alert to be activated. It is recommended that ACB be disengaged on downhill grades. The driver should use appropriate gearing and brake techniques, and not rely on ACB, on downhill grades.



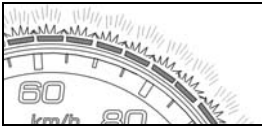

If the driver does not respond to the Brake Overuse Warning after a brief delay, the ACB will switch off.


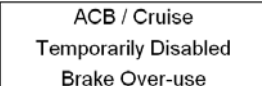

Impact Alert

The Impact Alert warning is the most severe warning issued by the ACB system. This alert indicates that the driver must take immediate evasive action by applying more braking power and/or steering clear of the vehicle ahead to avoid a potential collision.

## 4-16 Controls and Instruments

| FOLLOWING DISTANCE ALERT |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| CONDITION                | The Following Distance Alert feature is only available when the coach speed is greater than 37 mph (60 km/h), whether or not ACB is engaged.   |
|                          | The forward vehicle is slowing down and the distance between your vehicle the coach and the forward vehicle is less than the set distance  |
| ACTIONS BY ACB SYSTEM    | <p>“Distance Alert” pop-up message appears on the DID</p>  <p>The speedometer LEDs illuminate in <b>red</b></p>  <p>If the vehicles remain to close from each other for more than 15 seconds, an audible warning will sound (<b>beeping</b>)</p>  |

| IMPACT ALERT          |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| SITUATION             | ACB system detects a risk of collision with forward moving vehicle or a stationary metallic object in your lane of travel.   |
| ACTIONS BY ACB SYSTEM | <p>On the dashboard, the Forward Vehicle Detected telltale <b>flashes</b> in <b>red</b></p>  <p>“Impact Alert” pop-up message appears on the DID</p>  <p>The speedometer LEDs <b>flash</b> in <b>red</b></p>  <p>An audible warning will sound (<b>continuous modulating tone</b>)</p>  |

| BRAKE OVERUSE WARNING |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| SITUATION             | ACB system is using the service brakes excessively to maintain the set following distance (for example, the use of ACB on long, steep downhill runs). Excessive application of the service brakes can cause the brakes to overheat resulting in increasing stopping distances.  |
| ACTIONS BY ACB SYSTEM | <p>After a brief delay, the ACB system will stop functioning and be disabled.</p> <p>On the dashboard, the Forward Vehicle Detected telltale <b>illuminates</b> in <b>red</b></p>  <p>“ACB/Cruise Temporarily Disabled Brake Over-use” pop-up message appears on the DID</p>  <p>“ACB Not Available” pictogram appears on the DID status line</p>  |

SELF-DIAGNOSTIC AT START-UP

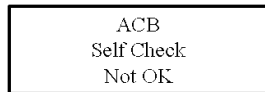
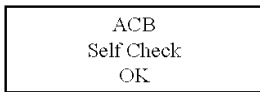
Initiate the self-diagnostic as follows:

- The engine must be running since at least 15 seconds with parking brake applied.
- Trip the CRUISE rocker switch located on the lateral control panel from OFF to ON position.

The following sequence will begin:

1. Pop-up message “Impact Alert” will show in the DID;
2. The speedometer LEDs will flash in red;
3. FORWARD VEHICLE DETECTED telltale will flash in red;
4. The Impact Alert audible alarm will sound.

At the end of the self-diagnostic sequence, pop-up message « ACB SELF CHECK OK » will show on the DID if the system functions properly or « ACB SELF CHECK NOT OK » if a fault condition is detected.



SYSTEM MALFUNCTION

In case of system malfunction, visual warnings will illuminate in the instrument cluster or the driver information display to warn the driver that the ACB is disabled. In that situation, the Impact Alert and Distance Alert functions are not available.

If the ACB is not available, the FORWARD VEHICLE DETECTED telltale light will illuminate in red and will stay on and “ACB NOT AVAILABLE” pictogram will appear on the DID status line.



FORWARD VEHICLE DETECTED telltale light



ACB NOT AVAILABLE pictogram

For proper functioning of the system, the radar must be perfectly aligned and not blocked. If a

radar fault condition is detected, one of the following pop-up messages will show in the DID.

ACB RADAR MISALIGNMENT

ACB RADAR FAULT

ACB RADAR DATA LINK FAILURE

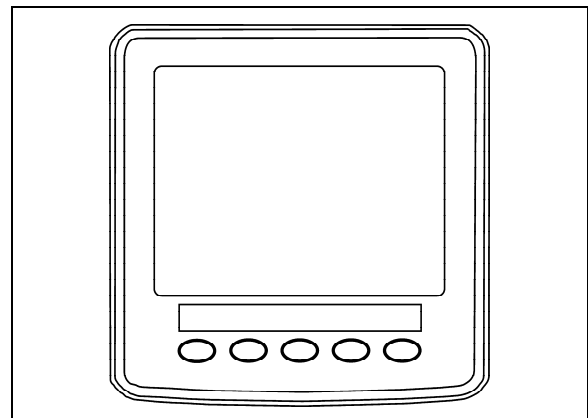
ACB RADAR BLOCKED

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

This system is a sensing device designed to identify and display tire operating data and activate an alert or warning when pressure or temperature irregularities are detected.

**NOTE**

*It is the responsibility of the driver to react promptly and with discretion to alerts and warnings. Abnormal tire inflation pressures should be corrected at the earliest opportunity.*



TPMS DISPLAY

06711

TPMS Display

The TPMS display knows where the sensors are located. It receives the raw temperature and pressure readings from the TPMS receiver, it reads several signals from the vehicle and does the calculation required to generate the various screens.

When no readings have been received for a tire location or when the received data corresponds to a parameter range defined as unavailable, then the reading is considered as not available and appears as two dash lines “\_ \_”.

## 4-18 Controls and Instruments

The TPMS display is initially configured to define how many axles and running tires are present on the vehicle. For current Prevost vehicle models, there are two axle / tire configurations. These configurations are:

**Config 1:** Axle 1 (Front) Two tires, Axle 2 (Drive) 4 tires, Axle 3 (Tag) 2 tires.

**Config 2:** Axle 1 (Front) Two tires, Axle 2 (Drive) 2 tires (super Singles), Axle 3 (Tag) 2 tires.

The TPMS display is also configured with several other parameters, including threshold levels for the alarms.

The TPMS display power supply turns OFF when the ignition key is switched OFF.

### Operation

The system will monitor all vehicle tires (6 or 8) plus the spare tire when a spare is supplied.

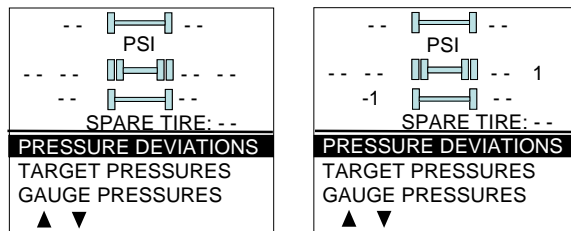
#### **NOTE**

*Some vehicle models do not come with a spare tire.*

There are two configurations of vehicle tires to be supported. One configuration (the most common) consists of 8 tires total: two tires on the front axle, 4 tires on the drive axle and 2 tires on tag axle. All screen figures shown in this document relates to this vehicle configuration. The second tire configuration consist of 6 tires total: 2 tires on the front axle, 2 tires on the drive axle (super single tires) and 2 tires on the tag axle. The vehicle tire configuration is selected with a parameter (Refer to chapter « SAFETY FEATURES AND EQUIPMENT » for more information). When the display is configured for 6 tires, the drive axle tires appears as one large tire on both side instead of twin tires as illustrated in this document and there is one reading appearing on each side instead of two as illustrated in this document.

### Start-up

When turning the ignition switch to ON, the screen shown below appears on the TPMS Display. Dash lines are displayed meaning that no pressure data have been received by the display.

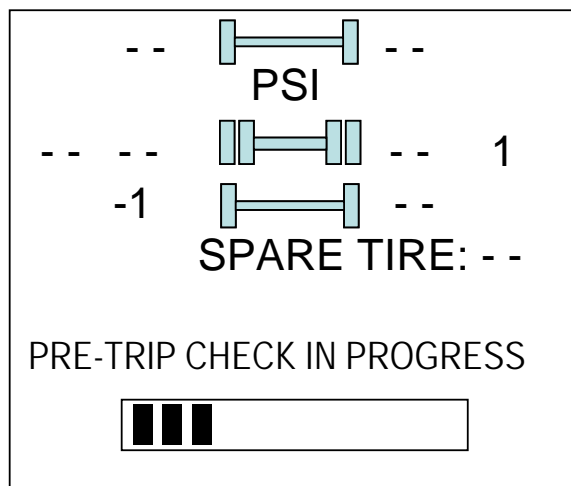


As illustrated, the pressure readings will appear replacing the dash lines as the TPMS display starts to receive pressure data from the TPMS receiver. It can take 1 minute to get all pressure readings updated since the sensors transmit at a one minute interval.

The user can flip through the menus.

### Pre-Trip Check

When one of the preconditions defined to start the pre-trip check is met, the TPMS display enters into a pre-trip check routine and the screen shown below appears. The preconditions to initiate the pre-trip are: Park brake removed Or No activity on the display menu keys for a defined time (Key pressed timeout). After a pre-trip, the display is in a “drive” mode with bottom menu replaced by the alarm status. The display remains in this mode until one of the following occurs: A menu key is touched while the park brake is applied, or the park brake does a transition from released to park brake applied.



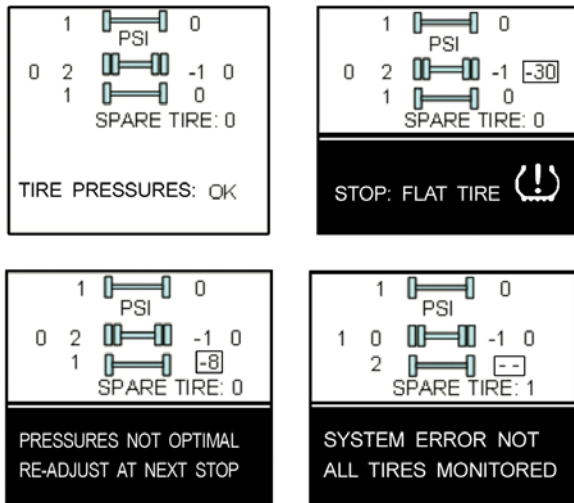
During the pre-trip check, the pressure readings for the different wheels become all available.

The pre-trip check ends, either when the pressure readings have been received for all running wheels or the pre-trip check maximum time has elapsed. It was selected to provide

sufficient time for all wheel sensors to wake-up and send a first reading.

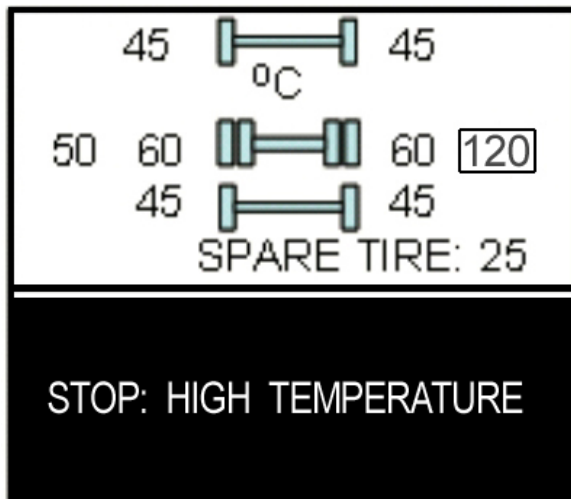
The pre-trip check is aborted and the bottom menu reappears if the park brake was active and the user press one of the menu keys.

Upon completion of the pre-trip check, the TPMS display will come up with one of the screens shown hereafter:



A rectangle around each pressure / temperature reading of the tires that have an issue is blinking to draw the attention to the defective tires.

In the case of multiple errors at the same time, the highest priority error is displayed at the bottom. "Flat Tire" has the highest priority followed by "High Temperature", "Not all tires monitored" and "Tire pressure not Optimal".



To get the driver's attention to the alarms, the bottom section of the screen where the alarm message appears will blink to reverse contrast

at the following rate: 0.7 sec normal contrast, 0.3 sec reverse contrast. Pressing any key will acknowledge the alarms that are considered as non-critical and stop the blinking of these alarms message for the remaining of the trip. The non-critical alarms are: "Pressure not optimal" and "Not all tires monitored". The "flat tires" and "high temperature" alarms are critical and will keep blinking even when a key is pressed. If a different alarm occurs, blinking will start again. The blinking rectangle around the pressure /temperature readings is not impacted by the acknowledgement and keeps blinking until the error condition disappears.

The spare tire does not contribute to alarms and so never blinks.

On the road, the TPMS display shows one of the 5 previous screens.

In the event of a temperature alarm, the display switches automatically to temperature readings.

The driver can also press any of the menu keys to momentary switch the display to temperature readings. In this case, the temperature reading appears for 15 seconds and the display returns to pressure.

The switching to temperature by pressing a key does not take place if there is an acknowledgeable alarm active, since in this case pressing the key does acknowledge the alarm.

The switching to temperature does not take place either if there is an alarm of Temperature or Flat Tire.

The switching to temperature works when the bottom message indicates either: Tire Pressure OK, Pressure Not Optimal non flashing or not all tires monitored non flashing. When the switch is done to temperature readings, the bottom portion of the screen is not affected and still shows the status message.

**NOTE**  
*High temperature is not likely to occur during the pre-trip.*

The pressure and temperature readings are continuously updated with the displayed readings of the wheel having issues blinking. The bottom line message is automatically updated to the highest priority alarm prevailing. There is a hysteresis on the alarm levels to assure that the error conditions do not flicker ON and OFF.



## 4-20 Controls and Instruments

On the occurrence of an alarm, a beep will sound. The alarm beep could be turned OFF in the alarm settings menu.

### Spare tire:

The spare tire is monitored but it is not taken into account when setting the bottom alarm messages. This is to prevent unnecessary alarms that would otherwise occur, if for example, the spare tire is removed from a vehicle.

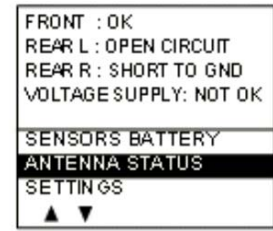
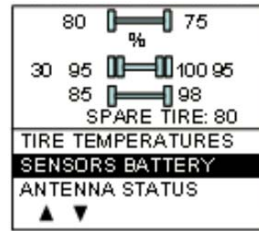
The user will have the possibility to check the pressure of the spare tire by accessing the TPMS display menu. For vehicles that have no spare tires, the title "spare tire" will still appear on the screens but the pressure will remain with two dash lines at all time.

### Post Trip Operation

When parking the vehicle (park brake applied), the TPMS display keep the drive mode display active. The driver can press any keys to get the bottom lines showing the status information replaced with the menus.

The pressure readings are still displayed and updated as new readings are received and the readings are blinking if not within the optimum pressure range.

From this point the user can scroll through the menus to get more detailed information and inflate / deflate the tires to bring them back to their optimum target pressures. Scrolling through these menus is also available prior to departure.

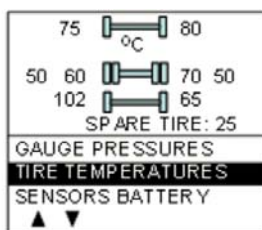
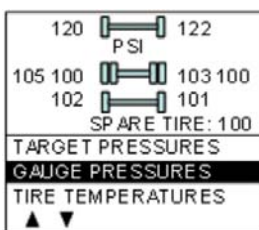
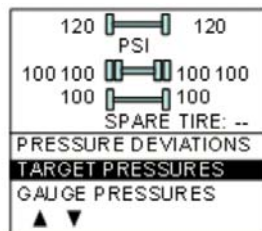
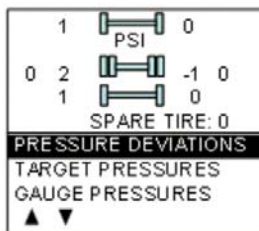
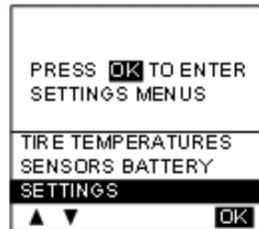


The display remains in this mode with the menus appearing at the bottom until the pre-trip check sequence starts again.

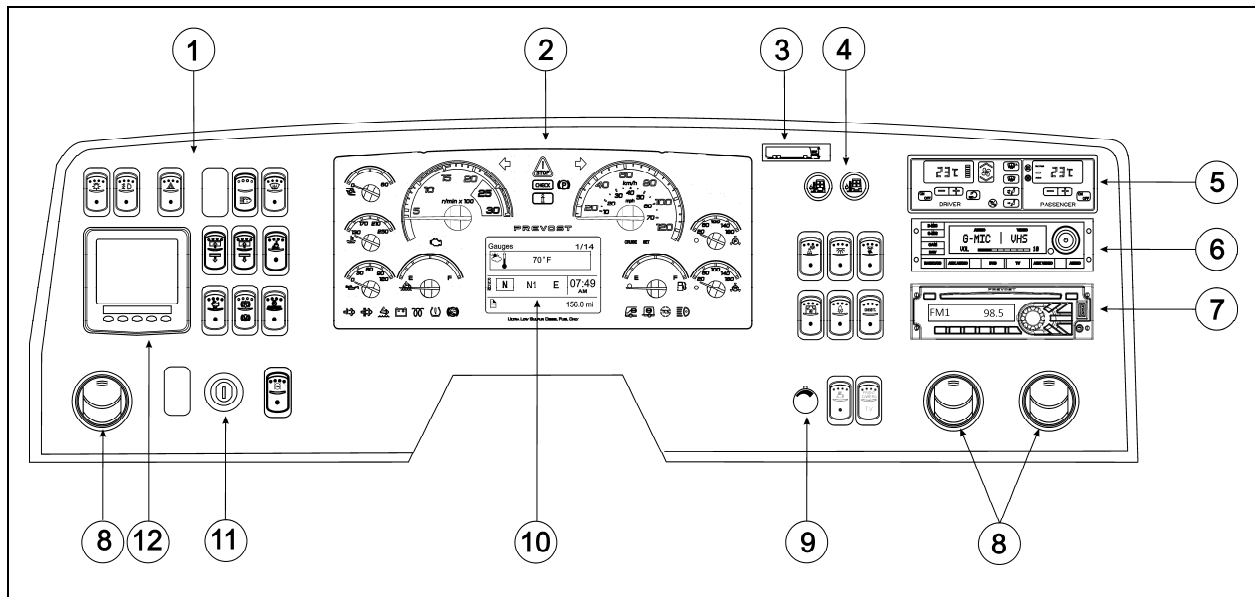
Scrolling down below the Battery life menu will show the Settings menu. Highlighting the Settings and pressing OK allows entering the settings menu. Refer to chapter "SAFETY FEATURES AND EQUIPMENT" for more information on "SETTINGS MENU".

Refer to chapter "Appendix G" for TPMS Troubleshooting Guide.

Highlighting the Exit menu and pressing OK exits the settings and come back to the pressure display mode.



**DASHBOARD**



**DASHBOARD**

06761\_3

1. L. H. Dashboard Panel
2. Instrument Cluster
3. Vehicle Clearance Information
4. R. H. Dashboard Panel
5. HVAC Control Unit
6. Audio-video Selector Panel VSS-05
7. AM/FM CD Radio (not equipped)
8. Air Vents
9. Brightness Control
10. Diver Information Display (DID)
11. Ignition Switch
12. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Display

## 4-22 Controls and Instruments

### CONTROL SWITCHES

High quality laser-engraved switches are used to control many of the features of the vehicle. Many switches have an embedded indicator LED to inform the driver at a glance which features are active. Some switches' LED will turn *OFF* after a short while when the engine is running. This is normal and is designed to reduce glare when driving. The functions still operate even if the LED is *OFF*. If the switches are still *ON* when the engine is turned *OFF*, the LEDs will illuminate to warn the driver to turn them *OFF*. Switches are described in the order they appear, from left to right, top to bottom.

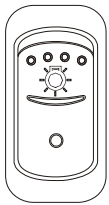
### L. H. DASHBOARD PANEL



The L.H. dashboard panel includes controls for the operation of the coach; it also includes the ignition switch and an adjustable air vent.

L. H. DASHBOARD PANEL

06762\_3



### Headlights and Exterior Lighting

**Off position** – Daytime running lights only

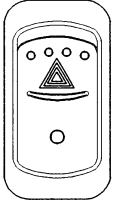
Press this rocker switch to turn on the following lights:

**First position** – Front parking lights, clearance lights, tail lights, license plate lights and marker lights.

**Second position** - Push down fully to turn *ON* the headlights, the controls and instrument lights and all lights from first position.

### **NOTE**

*Daytime running lights will be automatically cancelled when the exterior lighting switch is fully depressed (second position).*



06256

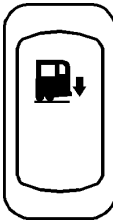
**Hazard Warning Flashers**

Press the rocker switch to make all turn signal lights flash at once. The dashboard telltale lights will flash when the hazard warning flashers are *ON*.

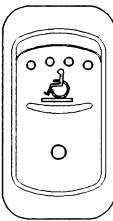


**CAUTION**

Do not use the hazard flashers for an extended period of time unless necessary because the electrical circuits are activated when the hazard switch is depressed.



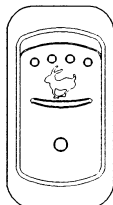
**Rear Axle Load Monitor**



06268

**Wheelchair Lift (Optional)**

Activate the optional wheelchair lift by pressing down on the rocker switch. Refer to “Other Features” section and to wheelchair lift system’s Operator’s Manual for operating instructions.



06264

**Fast Idle**

For extended idling periods, run the engine at fast idle. Press down the rocker switch to engage fast idle. This increases the engine speed to approximately 1,000 rpm. Return to normal idle before driving or when stopping engine.



**CAUTION**

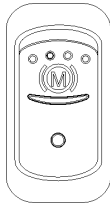
Reduce the engine to normal idle before shutting the engine *off*.

**NOTE**

*If the parking brake is released and/or the transmission is engaged with the engine running at fast idle, the engine will return to normal idle and remain there as long as the parking brake is not applied and/or transmission is not placed in neutral (n).*

## 4-24 Controls and Instruments

The engine will return to fast idle once the parking brake is applied or neutral (n) selected.



06703

### Engine Brake

The vehicle's engine brake is by default set to automatic (AUTO (A) mode). It is possible to disable the engine brake (OFF mode) using this spring return switch.

Pressing this switch again will enable the engine brake and reset the default mode. Cycling the ignition will have the same effect.

From AUTO mode, the driver can switch to Engine Brake LOW or Engine Brake HIGH mode by using the buttons on the steering wheel. Refer to ENGINE BRAKE in Section 5 Other Features.



06265

### Engine Stop Override (with Automatic Fire Detection and Suppression System)

Press the Engine Stop Override switch on the dashboard or the Delay Engine Stop switch on the AFSS protection panel to delay the engine shutdown and extinguisher discharge by an additional 15 seconds.



### CAUTION

Use this function if you are not prepared to bring the vehicle to a safe stop (i.e. on a railroad track, in intersection).

This switch is functional only if the vehicle is equipped with the Automatic Fire Detection and Suppression System.

## R. H. DASHBOARD PANEL



R. H. DASHBOARD PANEL

06707\_2

The HVAC control module as well as the cluster dimmer switch, interior lighting control switches, entrance door operating buttons as well as miscellaneous control switches and air vents are located on the R.H. dashboard panel.



### Entrance Door Operating Buttons

Press and hold the L.H. button to open the door and the R.H. button to close the door.

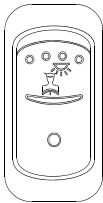
06464

Releasing the button at any time will immediately stop door movement.



### WARNING

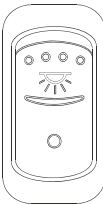
The door mechanism has no automatic safety protection to avoid injury to bystanders. The driver is responsible for the safe operation of the door.



06244

### Driver's Area Lighting

Press the rocker switch to illuminate the ceiling lights in the driver's area as needed.



06239

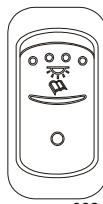
### Interior Lighting

Press this rocker switch to the first position to illuminate the aisle fluorescent lighting. Press down the second position to gradually illuminate the in-station reading lights to 80% of their intensity regardless if they were turned off individually by passengers. Lights will also turn OFF gradually.



### CAUTION

To avoid running down the batteries when the engine is off, turn off the lights or connect the optional battery charger to a 110 - 120 volt AC power supply.

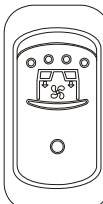


06240

### Reading Lights

This switch powers the reading light circuit enabling passengers to operate their personal reading lights. Refer to "Coach Interior" chapter.

Turning the key or ignition lever to the accessory position "ACC" when the reading lights are on will activate the lights to full intensity, providing a clear view over the entire cabin area.

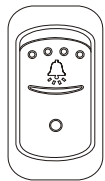


06245

### Passenger Overhead Air Registers With Air Conditioning

Press the switch to the first position to set the fans to low speed. Press the switch to the second position to set the fans to high speed. Activating the fans also engages the dedicated A/C compressor to provide cool air to the passengers through the overhead console air registers.

## 4-26 Controls and Instruments



06243

### Stop / Service Chime (Optional)

Press this switch to enable the stop / service chime. When depressed, the service buttons illuminate even when the chime circuit is not enabled.



06262

### Destination Sign (Optional)

Press the rocker switch to illuminate the destination sign.



06249

### Brightness Control

Adjusts the brightness of the dashboard instruments and switches.



06240\_1

### Reading Lights Cancel Switch (first rows)

This switch is used to cancel the reading lights in the first two rows. This function is useful to minimize glare in the windshield during night driving.

## HVAC CONTROL UNIT



22296

The vehicle is slightly pressurized by the central HVAC system to prevent dust and moisture from entering. Air flow and controls divide the vehicle into two areas: driver's area with defroster and passengers' area.

Fresh air is fed in each area and has a separate return air and discharge air duct.

### NOTE

*To operate the air conditioning system when stationary, run engine at fast idle. When the system is running, keep windows and door closed.*

To prevent battery run-down, the central A/C and heating systems will not operate if the charging system is not working properly.

When the A/C system is running, park at least 4 feet (1,5 m) from other vehicles or buildings to allow sufficient air flow through the condenser core.

Separate driver and passenger heating, ventilation and air conditioning controls are

located on this panel. To operate, the vehicle's engine must be running.

The driver's and the passengers' units may be turned ON by pressing the ON/OFF button.



Also, the driver's HVAC section turns on automatically at starting of the engine and uses the settings that were kept in memory before turning off of the system.

The A/C compressor starts automatically when the two following conditions are satisfied:

1. The outside temperature is above 32°F (0°C).
2. The passenger's area temperature has reached 7°F (4°C) under the set point.

All parameters set before turning the system OFF will be kept in memory for the next power ON.

The HVAC module performs a self-diagnosis every time it is turned ON. Codes are shown on displays or flashed on control buttons. Refer to "Maintenance Manual" for more information on the diagnostic codes.

Heating Mode Indicator



This red LED illuminates when system is heating.

22131

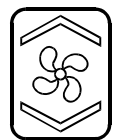
Cooling Mode Indicator



This green LED illuminates when the system is cooling (when the compressor clutch is engaged).

22134

Fan Speed



The driver's fan has six speeds. Increase speed by pressing on the upper portion of the button, decrease by pressing on the lower portion.

22135

Recirculate



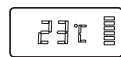
Closes or opens the driver's and passenger's section fresh air damper.

22138

A red LED in the top right corner of the button illuminates when air is recirculated. Use for faster driver's section heating.

This feature is automatically cancelled when defogging is activated.

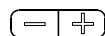
Driver's section temperature setting



22303

The temperature displayed on the driver's side HVAC control unit is the temperature set point.

To increase the temperature set point, press on the "+" sign, to decrease the temperature set point, press on the "-" sign. Temperature range is between 60°F and 82°F (16°C to 28°C). On the driver's side only, asking for a temperature set point above 82°F (28°C) will keep the coolant valve open and "FUL" will be displayed.

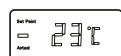


22132

In case of interior temperature sender unit failure, the coolant valve will remain open and three lines "---" will be displayed.

|  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
|  | <p><b>WARNING</b></p> |
| <p>Warm temperatures may cause drowsiness and affect alertness while driving. Keep the temperature comfortable but not too high.</p> |                       |

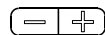
Passenger's section temperature setting



22304

The temperature displayed on the passenger's side HVAC control unit is the actual temperature in the passenger's area.

To increase or decrease the temperature set point in the passenger's area, press on the "+" or the "-" sign. Pressing these buttons will flash the displayed set point and the word "SET" will highlight. Temperature range is between 60°F and 82°F (16°C to 28°C).



22132

In case of interior temperature sender unit failure, the coolant valve will remain open and three lines "---" will be displayed.

|   |
|---|
| <p><i>NOTE</i></p>  |
| <p><i>Upon starting, if the outside temperature is above 32°F (0°C) and then drops below 32°F</i></p> |



## 4-28 Controls and Instruments

(0°C), the compressor will keep running up to a temperature of 15°F (-9°C) to prevent condensation from forming on the windows.

### Windshield Defogger



22305

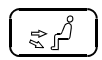
Upon pressing this button, the dashboard damper sends air only to the lower windshield. The fan is turned on to maximum speed, the fresh air damper opens completely (REC off) and the driver set point is increased to 4°F (2°C) over the passenger's section set point.



22139

The dashboard damper sends air only to the lower windshield when activated. The footwell damper is closed also but the fan speed can be reduced or increased.

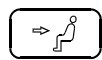
### Panel and Footwell



22137

The dashboard damper sends air to the panel vents and footwell.

### Panel



22136

Air is sent to panel registers. The footwell damper is closed.

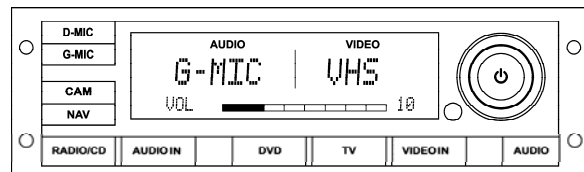
### Temperature Degree Selector



22133

Toggles the HVAV control unit temperature units between Fahrenheit and Celsius. The driver's section must be on. Also toggles the outside temperature units displayed on the telltale panel.


### AUDIO-VIDEO SELECTOR FOR THE PASSENGER'S AREA



The VSS-05 Video and Sound Selector enables the driver to select audio, audio/video and video source with settings of volume level, bass, treble, etc. for the passenger's area only. The

DVD player, TV tuner, P.A. system and auxiliary audio or video sources are controlled with this unit.

### TURNING POWER ON AND OFF

Press  button to turn on the unit.

Press  button again to turn off the unit.

### SETTING OF VOLUME/ BASS/ TREBLE/ BALANCE/ LOUDNESS

**AUDIO**

Press audio button repeatedly to choose the desired mode. Each press changes the modes as follows:

→ **VOL** → **BASS** → **TREB** → **BAL** → **LOUD**

Turn volume knob until the desired sound is obtained in each mode. The final setting will apply to all audio sources for the passenger's area. If no button is pressed within 8 seconds after selecting BASS, TREB, BAL and LOUD modes, the unit automatically sets in the VOL mode. The volume value adjust from 0 (complete mute) to 40 (maximum).

### SELECTION OF AUDIO OR AUDIO/VIDEO SOURCE

**RADIO/CD**

Press RADIO/CD button to select the dashboard radio as current audio source for the passenger's area. Pressing this button will also permit to listen to the CD inserted in the dashboard radio.

**AUDIO IN**

Press AUDIO IN button to select an auxiliary audio input as current audio source. AUDIO IN RCA connections are located at the back of the VSS-05 unit.

**DVD**

Press DVD button to select the in dash DVD player as current audio/video source.

**TV**

If an optional TV tuner is installed, press TV button to select it as current audio/video source.

**VIDEO IN**

Press VIDEO IN button to select an auxiliary video input as current audio/video source.

**NOTE**

If CAM or NAV is already activated, DVD, TV or VIDEO IN cannot be selected and displayed.

OPERATION OF THE OPTIONAL AUDIO-VIDEO MODESTY PANEL

On some vehicles, it is possible to connect and display on the main monitor a laptop or other audio-video equipment (DVD player, gaming console) from an optional audio-video modesty panel located behind the driver's seat.

To do so, connect the laptop to the modesty DB9 connector (9 pins, blue connector), select Video IN on the Video and Sound Selector and turn on the laptop presentation mode.

Devices using RCA connectors (DVD, gaming console) can also be used by connecting them to the 3 modesty RCA connectors and selecting the Video and Sound Selector TV mode.

OPERATION OF THE PANORAMIC VIEW CAMERA

- CAM**
1. Press CAM button to select the optional panoramic view camera signal. The video section of the vss-05 lcd panel will show "CAM". The video monitors turn on automatically.
  2. Press CAM button again to turn off the panoramic view camera and return to previous audio/video source.

DISPLAY OF THE GPS NAVIGATION GUIDANCE SCREEN

- NAV** Not applicable

**NOTE**

When CAM or NAV is selected, the previously selected audio source remains active.

OPERATION OF THE DRIVER MICROPHONE

- D-MIC**
1. Press D-MIC button to turn on the driver microphone. The audio section of the lcd panel will show "D-MIC" and a gong sound can be heard.
  2. Turn volume knob to adjust microphone level.

3. Press D-MIC button again to turn off the driver microphone.

OPERATION OF THE GUIDE MICROPHONE

- G-MIC**
1. Press G-MIC button to turn on the guide microphone. The audio section of the lcd panel will show "G-MIC" and a gong sound can be heard.
  2. Turn volume knob to adjust microphone level.
  3. Press G-MIC button again to turn off the guide microphone.

**NOTE**

BACKGROUND VOLUME ADJUSTMENT

When a microphone is activated, the current audio source volume will reduce to a certain level which has been set at the factory. To adjust this level, proceed as follows:

- 1- Press and hold AUDIO button then press AUDIO IN button. The LCD panel will show "BACK GROUND".
- 2- Turn the volume knob to adjust the background level.
- 3- Press any button to save the setting. If no button is pressed within 8 seconds, the unit automatically saves the setting and exits this mode.

GONG SOUND LEVEL

A gong will sound in the passenger's area upon activating of the microphone. This gong will also sound when a passenger activates the service bell. The gong sound level can be adjusted as follows:

- 1- Press and hold AUDIO button then press VIDEO IN button. The LCD panel will show "GONG PASS".
- 2- Turn the volume knob to adjust the gong level.
- 3- Press any button to save the setting. If no button is pressed within 8 seconds, the unit automatically saves the setting and exits this mode.

**NOTE**

While maintaining the service bell gong active, the gong sound heard upon activation of the

## 4-30 Controls and Instruments

microphones can be disabled. To do so,

- 1- Press and hold audio button then press G-MIC button. The lcd panel will show "GONG-MIC-ON" or "GONG-MIC OFF".
- 2- Turn the volume knob clockwise to activate the microphones gong sound. Turn the volume knob counterclockwise to deactivate the microphones gong sound.

### **NOTE**

Point the remote control in direction of the VSS-05. Remote control battery replacement. Use CR2025 lithium battery.

### USING THE VSS-05 REMOTE CONTROL



#### 1.

Press this button to turn on the unit.

Press this button again to turn off the unit.

#### 2. R/CD, AU IN, DVD, TV, VI IN

Press one of these buttons to select the relevant audio or audio/video source.

#### 3. DMIC

Press DMIC button to turn on the driver microphone.

Press DMIC button again to turn off the driver microphone.

#### 4. GMIC

Press GMIC button to turn on the guide microphone.

Press GMIC button again to turn off the guide microphone.

#### 5. CAM

Press CAM button to select the optional panoramic view camera signal.

Press CAM button again to turn off the panoramic view camera.

#### 6. NAV

Press NAV button to display the optional gps navigation system guidance screen (not applicable).

#### 7. BAS, BAL, TRE, LOUD

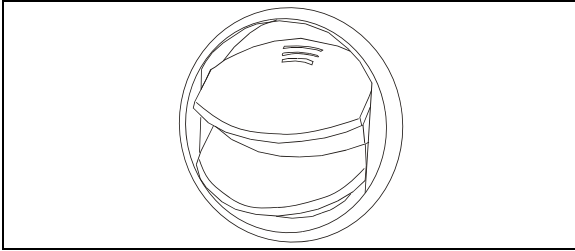
Press one of these buttons to select bass, balance, treble and loudness mode.

#### 8. +, -

Press these buttons to increase or decrease the value for bass, balance, treble and loudness mode.

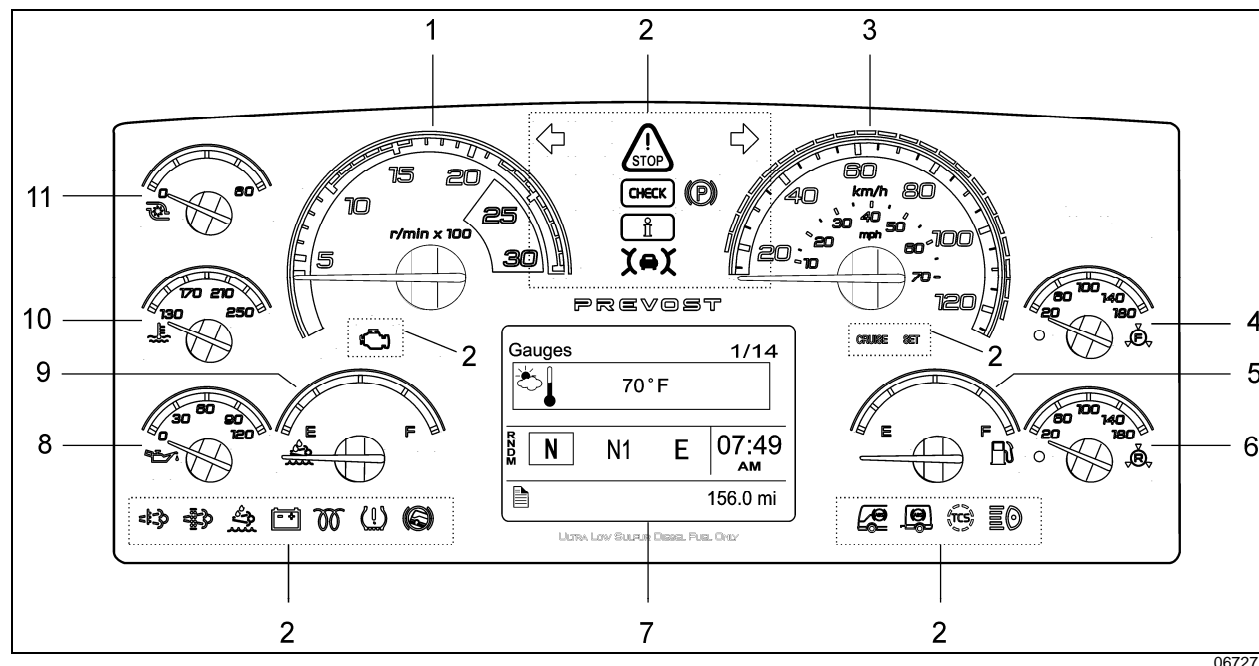
## AIR VENTS

Three adjustable driver air vents in the dashboard and one near the door feed air to the driver's compartment. Use the HVAC control panel to set air temperature and fan speed.



AIR VENT

### INSTRUMENT CLUSTER



06727

1. Tachometer
2. Telltale lights
3. Speedometer
4. Front brake air pressure (secondary)
5. Fuel level
6. Rear brake air pressure (primary)
7. Driver Information Display (DID)
8. Oil pressure indicator
9. DEF level (Diesel Exhaust Fluid) indicator
10. Engine coolant temperature
11. Turbo boost pressure

The instrument cluster includes the analog instruments. It also presents two devices to communicate information to the driver, the telltale lights and the Driver Information Display (DID).

Indications and warnings are presented according to three levels of attention required:

#### 1. THE TELLTALE LIGHTS

The highest level of attention. The telltale lights are temporary and exceptional; they present information critical to safety or vehicle integrity.

#### 2. POP-UP MESSAGES

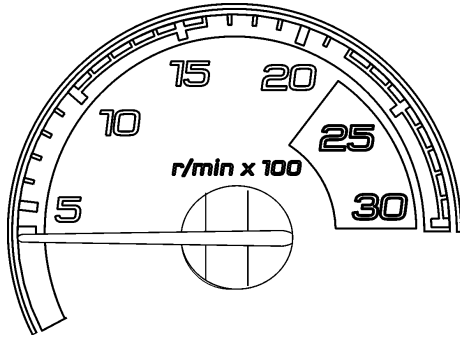
The second level of attention. Pop-up messages appear in the Driver Information Display DID without the driver's intervention and

acknowledgement. Pop-up messages present supplemental information to the driver.

#### 3. THE STATUS LINE

The lowest level of attention. The status line monitors certain systems and gives feedback to the driver concerning current actions and functions.


ANALOG INDICATORS

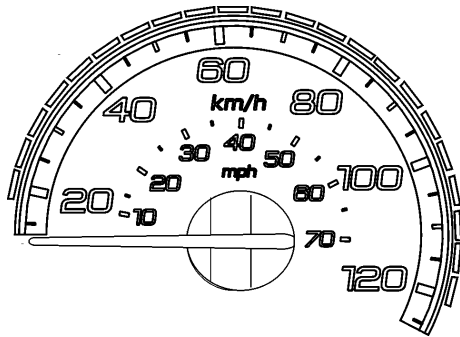


06728

**TACHOMETER (RPM X 100)**

Indicates the operating speed of the engine in hundreds of revolutions per minute. The tachometer serves as a guide for gear shifting and helps to prevent engine over-speeding when driving downhill with the engine brake operating. Use the green field for normal driving (1000 to 1600 rpm).

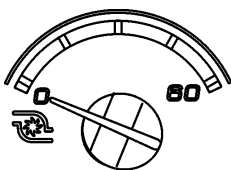
|  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
|                 | <p><b>CAUTION</b></p> |
| <p>Never allow the engine to go into the red field. This could lead to severe engine damage.</p> |                       |



06729

**SPEEDOMETER (MPH, KM/H)**

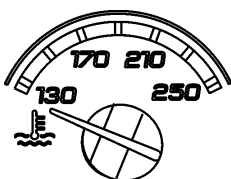
Indicates the vehicle speed in miles per hour (mph) and kilometers per hour (km/h). The LEDs above the instrument work in conjunction with AWARE Adaptive Cruise Braking (ACB) system. Refer to “Prevost AWARE Adaptive Cruise Braking” paragraph.



06730

**TURBO BOOST PRESSURE (PSI)**

Indicates the turbo boost pressure in psi. This pressure should be the same at a given engine temperature, speed, and load. An unusual reading could indicate an engine failure.



06731

**ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE (°F)**

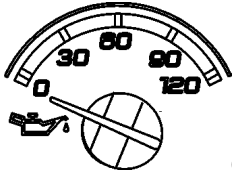
Indicates the operating temperature of the engine coolant in °f. The normal reading should be between 170°f and 222°f (80°c to 106°c).

The temperature limit is dependent on the electronic program for the engine model. When coolant temperature is excessive, the stop telltale light turns on, an audible alarm sounds and a pop-up message appears on the DID. The engine protection system will automatically derate and stop the engine in 30

seconds. Stop at the first safe place where the problem can be checked.  
 If the temperature remains below or exceeds the normal temperature range, the cooling system should be checked for problems.



STOP TELLTALE LIGHT



06732

**ENGINE OIL PRESSURE (psi)**

Indicates the engine oil pressure in psi. When the oil pressure is too low, the stop telltale light turns on, an audible alarm sounds and a message appears on the DID. The engine protection system will automatically derate and stop the engine in 30 seconds. Bring the vehicle to a safe stop where the problem can be checked.



STOP TELLTALE LIGHT



OIL PRESSURE PICTOGRAM



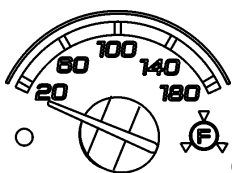
**WARNING**

Failure to take necessary action when the stop telltale light is on can ultimately result in automatic engine derate and shutdown.

**Front Brake Air Pressure (Psi) – Secondary System**

Indicates the front brake air system pressure in psi. The normal operating pressure is from 122 to 140 psi.

A low air pressure indicator LED illuminates when the front air system pressure drops below 85 psi. If the air pressure drops further, the STOP telltale light will turn on, an audible alarm will sound and a message will appear on the DID. If the air pressure drops below 60 psi, the emergency spring brake applies at full capacity.



06737

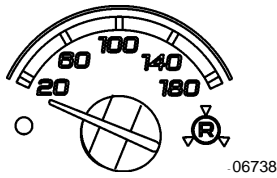


**WARNING**

Do not drive the coach when the brake air pressure is low.

**NOTE**

Do not refer to dashboard instruments during adjustment procedures. Use only calibrated gauges.




**Rear Brake Air Pressure (Psi) – Primary System**

Indicates the rear brake air system pressure in psi. The normal operating pressure is from 122 to 140 psi.

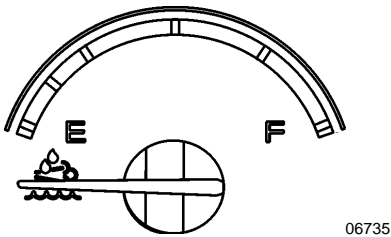
A low air pressure indicator LED illuminates when the rear air system pressure drops below 85 psi. If the air pressure drops further, the STOP telltale light will turn on, an audible alarm will sound and a message will appear in the DID. If the air pressure drops below 60 psi, the emergency spring brake applies at full capacity.




STOP telltale light

|  |
|--|
|  <b>WARNING</b> |
| Do not drive the coach when the brake air pressure is low.                                       |

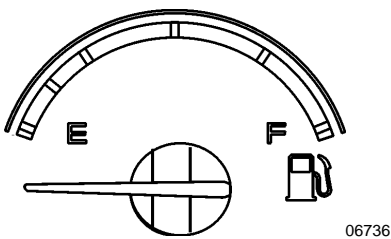
**DEF level**



Indicates the amount of DEF (diesel exhaust fluid) remaining in the DEF tank. The DEF tank is considered as being full when it contains 16 gallons (60 liters) of DEF. DEF consumption will be approximately 2% of the diesel fuel consumed.

|  |
|--|
|  <b>CAUTION</b>   |
| DEF will begin to crystallize and freeze at 12°f (-11°c). DEF expands by approximately 7% when frozen. In order to permit DEF expansion without causing damages to the DEF tank, do not fill the DEF tank with more than 16 gallons (60 liters). |

**Fuel Level**



Indicates the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. At the beginning of the red area, there is approximately 48 gallons (182 liters) left in the tank.

|  |
|--|
| <b>NOTE</b>  |
| A pop-up message will appear in the DID informing that there is only 24 gallons (92 liters) left in the fuel tank. |



### TELLTALE LIGHTS

The telltale lights illuminate during 5 seconds at the start of every ignition cycle as a light bulb check.



#### Stop

Indicates that a serious problem has been detected. Immediately park the coach in a safe place and stop the engine. This telltale light may be accompanied with a message in the DID and a diagnostic troubleshooting code will be stored to ease identification of the problem. **WARNING:** Failure to take necessary action when the STOP telltale light is on can ultimately result in automatic engine derate and shutdown.



#### Check

Indicates that a problem has been detected and must be checked at the next stop. This telltale light may be accompanied with a message in the DID and a diagnostic troubleshooting code will be stored to ease identification of the problem.



#### **FORWARD VEHICLE DETECTED – ADAPTIVE CRUISE BRAKING**

When the ACB is engaged with a cruise speed set and the forward vehicle is in range, the FORWARD VEHICLE DETECTED telltale light illuminates, indicating the ACB system is actively tracking the forward vehicle.

**GREEN:** The vehicle ahead of you is detected by the radar.

**FLASHING RED:** Impact alert. The vehicle ahead of you is too close. The driver must take immediate evasive action by applying more braking power and/or steering clear of the vehicle ahead to avoid a potential collision.

**RED:** System malfunctions. The Adaptive Cruise Braking is not available.



#### Information

This telltale light illuminates when there is a new information message or an abnormal status is detected by the electronic control unit. A pictogram, text or both are shown in the DID in addition to the info telltale light. Make sure the indicated fault is checked at the next stop.



#### Turn signal indicators

Flashes when the right or left turn signals are activated. Signal right and left turns by operating the multi-function lever. See “Steering Column Controls” in this chapter.

#### **NOTE**

The turn signals are automatically activated when the vehicle is backing up.



Parking brake or emergency brake applied

Illuminates when the emergency/parking brake is applied. The control valve is located on the L.H. control panel. An audible alert will sound if ignition is turned to off and the parking brake is not engaged.



Aftertreatment system malfunction (Malfunction Indicator Lamp)

Indicates a failure of an emission control device. May illuminate at the same time as the CHECK amber warning light. The lamp will go out after 3 completed ignition on-ride-ignition off cycles. Vehicle can be driven to end of shift. Call for service.

**CRUISE**

Cruise control

Indicates that the cruise control is enabled.

**SET**

Cruise control set speed

Indicates that a cruising speed is set and stored in the memory.



High exhaust system temperature (HEST)

06740\_A

Illuminates to notify the driver of potentially hazardous exhaust gas temperature at the exhaust system diffuser.



**WARNING**

During regeneration, exhaust temperature may reach up to 1200°f (650°c) at the particulate filter. When parking the vehicle, if this telltale light is illuminating, make sure that the exhaust system diffuser is away from people or any flammable materials, vapors or structures.



DPF regeneration request

06740\_B

Illuminates to notify the driver that a manual stationary regeneration will be required soon. Refer to "Exhaust Aftertreatment System" paragraph in Other Features chapter.



Low DEF level

06740\_C

Illuminates when there is less than 2.6 gallons (10 liters) of DEF left in the tank.



**CAUTION**

This telltale light starts flashing when there is only 2.5 liters (0.6 gallons) left in the tank.

If the vehicle is kept in operation with an empty DEF tank, and engine derate will eventually occur, limiting the speed to 5 mph.



CHARGING SYSTEM WARNING LIGHT

06740\_D

Indicates a malfunction of the charging system or a low battery voltage condition.

**NOTE**

To identify if an alternator is defective (1=lower alternator, 2=upper alternator), perform a system diagnostic using the Driver Information Display DIAGNOSTICS menu. Select VIEW ACTIVE FAULTS and then ELECTRICAL SYSTEM. Scroll through the active faults. The electrical system active faults will appear. A diagnostic message indicating “alternator 1” or “alternator 2” with failure mode “open circuit” will come in sight.



Intake air preheater on – wait before starting

06740\_E

Illuminates when the intake air preheater element is in function. Wait until this telltale light has turned off before starting the engine. For more information on this feature, refer to paragraph “Cold Weather Starting” in Starting And Stopping Procedures chapter.



Flat tire (with optional tire pressure monitoring system)

06740\_F

Illuminates when a tire pressure is 25% below the target tire pressure.



Hill start assist

06740\_G

Indicates a malfunction of the hill start assist function. This function might not be available.



06740\_H

Antilock brake system (ABS)

Illuminates when the ABS is not available or when the ABS is malfunctioning. Since the ABS system does not operate at less than 4 mph (7 km/h), the indicator will remain illuminated until the coach reaches that speed. Refer to Other Features chapter.



06740\_I

Trailer antilock brake system (ABS)

Illuminates when the trailer ABS is not available or when the trailer ABS is malfunctioning.



06740\_AA

TCS/ESC - Traction Control System and Electronic Stability Control

At vehicle ignition, TCS/ESC telltale lamp illuminates for approximately 3 seconds and then turns off. If it remains on steadily (not flashing) after ignition, or if it illuminates steadily while you are driving, the TCS or ESC system may not be fully functional or their operation may be completely disabled. If this happens, your vehicle will still have normal service braking and it still can be driven, although without the benefits of TCS or an ESC system.

**Flashes slowly** when TCS's Mud/Snow mode is turned on using the Mud/Snow switch.

**Flashes quickly** when ESC or TCS intervenes to reduce risk of loss of control.



06740\_K

High beam

Illuminates when the high beams are selected. High and low beams are selected with the multi-function lever. Refer to "Steering Column Controls" paragraph in this chapter.

STOP, CHECK AND INFORMATION TELLTALE LIGHTS


STOP, CHECK and INFORMATION telltale lights illuminate automatically to draw the attention of the driver and their associated messages are displayed in the DID. More than one message (see "Acknowledging Messages" below) can be active at the same time. A displayed message can be replaced by a new message provided the new message has a higher priority. Only fault codes that have a direct impact on vehicle operation are displayed. All fault codes are stored in the appropriate ECU for access by service technicians.

STOP Telltale light

In the event of a serious fault, the red STOP telltale light comes on and an audible alarm will sound if the engine is running. An illuminated stop message light indicates a serious problem has been detected, and the driver must respond immediately to the problem.



When illuminating, this telltale light means the vehicle must be safely pulled off the road and stopped. In some instances, the engine must be switched off immediately.

 **WARNING**

Failure to stop and take necessary action when the stop telltale light is on can result in automatic engine derate and shutdown.

In some cases preventive action may be taken by the engine ECU to protect the engine. For further details, refer to “Engine Protection System” in *Starting and Stopping Procedures*.

CHECK Telltale light

This telltale light means that a fault or an abnormal operating condition has been detected. The vehicle must be checked at the next stop.



If the CHECK telltale light illuminates, an associated message is displayed in the DID. Always pay attention to the associated messages (see “Acknowledging Messages” below).

INFORMATION Telltale light

The INFO indicator light comes on when there is a new information message or an abnormal status is detected by the electronic control unit. A pictogram or text or both are shown in the DID in addition to the INFO telltale light (see “Acknowledging Messages” below).

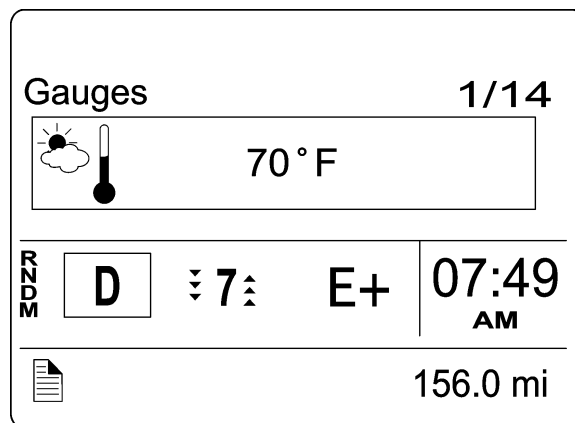


Acknowledging Messages

A fault message associated to a STOP, CHECK or INFORMATION telltale light must be acknowledged by pressing the ESCAPE or ENTER button after which the display returns to the same status that existed before the fault occurred. All messages can be acknowledged. Acknowledged but inactive messages are displayed again when the ignition key is turned to the START position or they can be read in the DID menu. Refer to *Other Features* for more information on the DID menus.

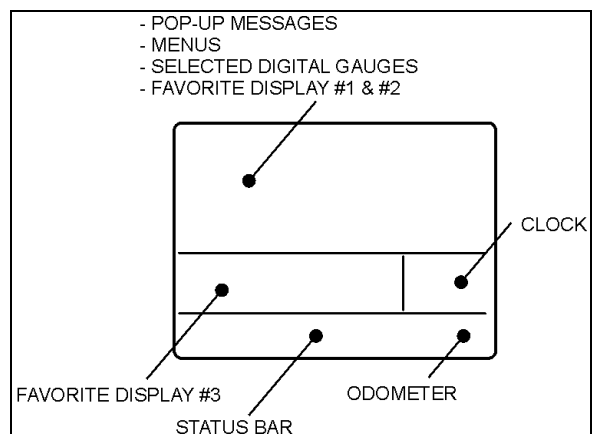
DRIVER INFORMATION DISPLAY

The DID (Driver Information Display) is located in the center of the instrument cluster. It displays digital gauges, main menus and sub-menus that provide necessary and important information to the driver. The information available to the driver depends on vehicle configuration, and whether the vehicle is in operation or parked. For the list of the available menus and sub-menus, refer to “Driver Information Display Menus” in *Other Features* chapter.

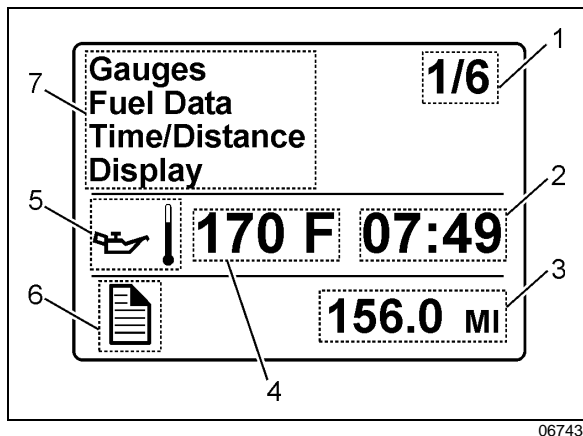


06746

The outside air temperature, fuel flow and the odometer (Allison transmission) are part of the default display. You can replace the default display by your selection of favorite gauges using the Driver Information Display sub-menu Favorite Display Setting. Refer to *Other Features* chapter for more information.



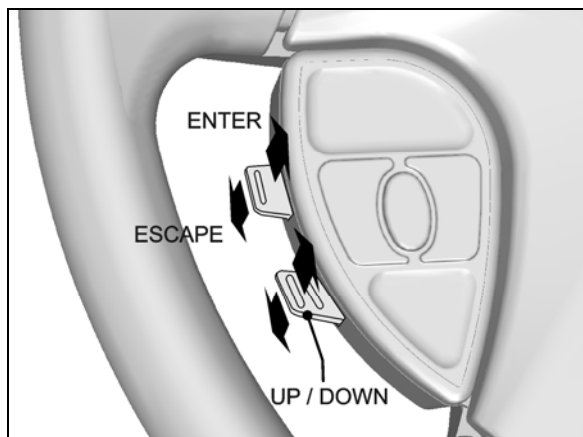
06742



1. Indicates first of six available menus (varies by menu)
2. Clock
3. Odometer
4. Value or data (in this example, the engine oil temperature)
5. Pictogram relevant to the displayed value or data
6. Status bar active pictogram
7. Messages or available menus

Selecting a menu

Menus are placed in a cascade arrangement. Use the steering wheel controls buttons to scroll through them.



14069\_3

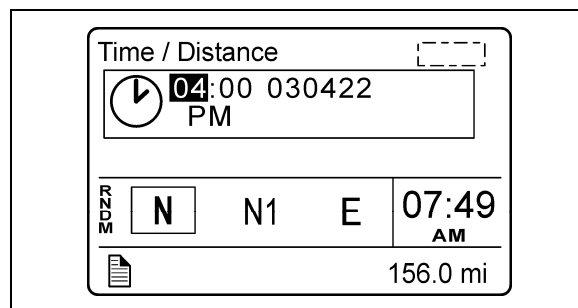
To select a menu:

1. Press the ENTER or ESCAPE button to display the list of available menus.
2. Use the UP/DOWN button to scroll up or down through the menus.
3. Use the ENTER button to open a menu.
4. Use the ESCAPE button to return to the previous menu or display or to cancel a setting or operation.

To change settings

To change a setting, like the clock for example:

5. Use the UP/DOWN button to increase or decrease the numerical value of the selected field.
6. Use the ENTER button to confirm your choice and to move to the next field.
7. Press the ESCAPE button to return to the previous field or to cancel a setting or operation.



06743

Scrolling through the menus without using the steering wheel buttons

In case of failure of the steering wheel buttons, it is still possible to gain access to the menus or acknowledge the pop-up messages to return to the default display.

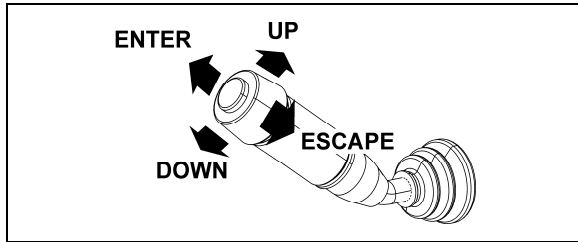
This alternate mode is possible only if the steering wheel buttons are faulty.

To enable the alternate mode:

1. Apply the parking brake;
2. Depress and hold the service brake pedal.

## 4-42 Controls and Instruments

---



**MULTI-FUNCTION LEVER**

In alternate mode, use the multi-function lever as follows:








- Move the lever up = UP
- Move the lever down = DOWN
- Push the lever away from you = ENTER
- Pull the lever towards you = ESCAPE

PICTOGRAMS DISPLAYED ON THE DRIVER INFORMATION DISPLAY (DID)










**NOTE**

In certain situations, the pictogram displayed represents a system or a function of the vehicle. A particular pictogram may be displayed with different messages. In that situation, it is very important to pay attention to the message displayed with the pictogram.

Warning pictograms, pop-up message pictograms, verifications and information pictograms

| DRIVER INFORMATION DISPLAY "GAUGES" MENU PICTOGRAMS                                 |  |
|---|--|
| PICTOGRAM   | Description  |
|    | <b>Engine oil temperature</b>  |
|    | <b>Outside air temperature</b>   |
|   | <b>A/c compressor pressure</b><br>This pictogram is displayed with A/C compressor suction pressure value (low side) and discharge pressure value (high side).  |
|  | <b>Accessories air pressure</b><br>Normal pressure should be between 122 and 140 psi   |
|  | <b>Voltmeter</b><br>This pictogram is displayed with both the 12-volt and 24-volt electrical system current voltage value. When the engine is running, the 24-volt electrical system voltage value should be between 26,5 et 28,0 volts. |
|  | <b>Battery State Of Charge</b><br>Displays the level of charge for the 12v and 24v battery banks   |
|  | <b>Transmission oil temperature</b>  |



| POP-UP MESSAGES   |  |
|---|--|
| PICTOGRAM   | Description  |
|    | <b>High engine oil temperature</b>   |
|    | <b>Engine coolant temperature</b>  |
|    | <b>Engine oil pressure</b>   |
|    | <b>Intake air preheater failure</b>  |
|   | <b>Engine temperature too low for Volvo engine brake (VEB) operation</b>   |
|  | <b>High transmission oil temperature</b><br>This pictogram indicates that the transmission oil temperature is too high. Turn the transmission retarder off to allow the oil to cool down.  |
|  | <b>Allison transmission– oil or filter replacement required</b><br>This pictogram may be displayed with many different messages. Pay attention to the displayed message which can advise that the transmission oil or filter change is necessary. Refer to appendix C for more information on the Allison transmission prognostic features (oil life monitor, filter life monitor, transmission health monitor). |
|  | <b>Trailer braking system low air pressure / trailer parking brake</b><br>This pictogram appears when the trailer emergency/parking brake is unexpectedly applied as when the vehicle is moving and a parking brake air line rupture happens.  |
|  | <b>Low brake or ABS air pressure</b>   |



**A/C system pressure high**

This pictogram indicates that the a/c system pressure is too high. If the a/c pressure is too high, the compressor clutch is disengaged, but the fan remains activated.

**NOTE**

When outside temperature is high, it is possible and normal for that pictogram to appear.



**A/C system pressure low**

This pictogram indicates that the A/C system pressure is too low. If the A/C pressure is too low, the compressor clutch disengages and the fan stops.

**NOTE**

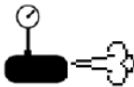
When outside temperature is low, it is possible and normal for that pictogram to appear.



**Compressor/air dryer fault**

This pictogram indicates that a risk of water in the pneumatic system has been detected due to a compressor or air dryer related problem. Possible causes are:

- Compressor is used at an unusual (high) rate.
- A fault with the air system has been detected.



**Air leakage**

This pictogram indicates that an air leak has been detected in the pneumatic system.



**Battery voltage warning**

This pictogram indicates that the battery voltage is too high, too low or the 12V/24V battery arrangement is not equalized.

The value low or high is displayed at the right of the pictogram to indicate if the voltage is too low or too high.

**NOTE**  
This pictogram will illuminate for a few seconds after the engine is started because of the voltage drop when the starter is engaged.

**NOTE**  
This pictogram may appear as a reminder to connect the battery charger if the ignition switch is left in the "ON" position *for twenty minutes* with engine not running and parking brake set.

**NOTE**  
To identify the battery problem (too high, too low or not equalized voltage), using the DID menus, perform a system diagnostic by selecting DIAGNOSTIC, VIEW ACTIVE FAULTS, ELECTRICAL SYSTEM and see the fault messages.

**NOTE**  
To prevent discharge of the batteries when the engine is not running, some functions are automatically switched off if the batteries voltage drops below 24.0 volts for more than 30 seconds. Set the ignition key to the OFF position and then turn the ignition key to the ON position to reactivate the functions for a period of 30 seconds before they switch off again.

**NOTE**  
If the battery equalizer indicator illuminates, make sure that the battery equalizer circuit breakers are reset before requesting breakdown assistance. Wait 15 minutes after setting breakers to allow batteries to equalize. The breakers are located on the rear junction panel, on the engine compartment R.H. side.



**Engine door ajar**

This pictogram indicates that the engine compartment door is ajar.



**Emergency window open**

This pictogram indicates that an emergency window is open or unlocked.



**Baggage compartment door ajar**

This pictogram indicates that one or more baggage bay doors are ajar.



**Low windshield washer or headlights washer fluid level**

Illuminates when the windshield washer or the headlight washer fluid level is low. The washer fluid containers are located inside the front service compartment.



**WARNING**

Do not drive without sufficient washer fluid.



**Wheelchair lift**

This pictogram indicates that the wheelchair lift system is enabled and the wheelchair access door or the lift compartment door is open. It is necessary to stow the wheelchair lift, close the doors and set the wheelchair lift system enable switch to the off position to permit release of the parking brake.



**Lavatory occupied**

This pictogram indicates that the lavatory compartment is occupied. This pictogram will appear only when the engine is shut down in order to advise the driver of the presence of a passenger in the lavatory compartment during a stop.



**Lavatory compartment emergency call**

If the vehicle is moving, this pictogram indicates that a passenger has activated the lavatory compartment emergency call button.



**Differential lock (option)**

This pictogram indicates that the differential action is locked.



**Freezing conditions**

This pictogram appears when the temperature is in the range between 0°C and 2°C (32°F and 35°F), when the road is most slippery.



**Fuel level**

This pictogram appears when approximately 24 US gallons (92 liters) of fuel remains in the tank. Refuel as soon as possible.



**Automatic traction control**

This pictogram appears when the automatic traction control system intervenes to prevent excess wheel spin during acceleration.



**Parking brake applied**




**DPF regeneration**



**High exhaust gas temperature**

This pictogram appears to notify the driver of potentially hazardous exhaust gas temperature at the dpf outlet.

|  |                       |
|--|-----------------------|
|   | <p><b>WARNING</b></p> |
| <p>During regeneration, exhaust temperature may reach up to 1200°F (650°C) at the particulate filter. When parking the vehicle, if this pictogram is displayed, make sure that the DPF outlet diffuser is away from people or any flammable materials, vapors or structures.</p> |                       |



**Fuel economy**

This pictogram is displayed with fuel consumption value of the vehicle. Proper units for the displayed value are written under the pictogram: liters/100km, km/liter, mpg, liters/hour.



**Part of trip made using “free” electricity**

Percentage besides this pictogram represents percentage of trip made with electricity generated when braking or decelerating.



**Leg fuel consumption**

This pictogram is displayed with the value for the fuel consumption for the current leg.



**Trip data**

Function of the DID’s “Time/Distance” menu. Refer to “Driver Information Display Menus” in *Other Features* chapter.



**Estimated time of arrival**

Function of the DID’s “Time/Distance” menu. Refer to “Driver Information Display Menus” in *Other Features* chapter.



**Fuel filter/water separator**

Indicates that the draining the fuel Filter/Water separator is required. See *Care And Maintenance* chapter.



**Raised tag axle**

This pictogram appears if the vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h) while the tag axle is raised.



**Low buoy**

This pictogram appears if the vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h) while the front suspension of the vehicle or the entire vehicle suspension is lowered.



**Cooling fans low voltage**

This pictogram indicates that battery voltage is too low for proper fan operation.



**FIRE IN ENGINE COMPARTMENT**

This pictogram appears if a fire is detected in the engine compartment while the vehicle is on the road. An audible alarm informs the driver when a fire is detected. In case of fire detection when parked (parking brake applied, engine running or not), the electric horn is activated to alert the driver. Refer to *Safety Features And Equipment* Chapter.



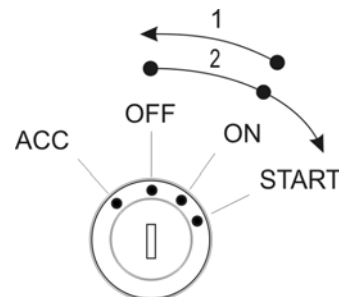
**WARNING**

In case of a fire, stop the vehicle immediately, stop the engine and evacuate the vehicle.

**NOTE**

*It is possible to cancel an alarm while on the road. To do so, stop the vehicle. , perform this ignition switch (key) sequence.*












- From the **ON** position,
- Turn to **OFF**, return to **ON** and **START** vehicle within 2 seconds.



**NOTE**

*To stop the electric horn alarm when parked, cycle the ignition between the on and off position twice within 3 seconds.*

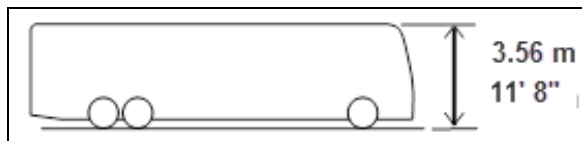
Status Line Pictograms

| PICTOGRAM   | DESCRIPTION  |
|---|--|
|    | <b>MESSAGE ACTIVE</b>  |
|    | <b>ALARM CLOCK ACTIVATED</b>   |
|    | <b>RAISED TAG AXLE</b>   |
|    | <b>KNEELING/FRONT SUSPENSION HI-BUOY ACTIVE</b><br>This pictogram appears if the vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h) while the front suspension of the vehicle (kneeling – solid ON pictogram) or the entire vehicle suspension is lowered (low buoy – blinking pictogram).           |
|    | <b>BAGGAGE COMPARTMENTS LOCKED</b><br>Indicates that all the baggage compartment doors are locked.   |
|  | <b>BAGGAGE COMPARTMENTS UNLOCKED</b><br>Indicates that at least one baggage compartment door is unlocked.  |
|  | <b>ADAPTIVE CRUISE BRAKING (ACB) NOT AVAILABLE</b><br>Indicates that the adaptive cruise braking system is disabled.   |
|  | <b>ENGINE BRAKE</b><br>Engine brake is disabled (OFF mode).  |
|  | <b>ENGINE BRAKE</b><br>Indicates that the engine brake is in the AUTO mode. When using this mode, the engine brake is activated when pressing on the brake pedal.<br>The engine brake is by default set to AUTO mode when the vehicle ignition switch is cycled from OFF to ON position. |
|  | <b>ENGINE BRAKE – ENGINE BRAKE LOW (1) AND ENGINE BRAKE HIGH (2)</b><br>Indicates which engine braking power is selected with the steering wheel control buttons.  |
|  | <b>ALLISON TRANSMISSION RETARDER</b><br>Indicates that the Allison transmission retarder is off.   |

Status Line Pictograms Contd.

①...⑥ **ALLISON TRANSMISSION RETARDER – BRAKING LEVEL 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6**  
 Indicates the retarder hand lever position. Each position corresponds to a given braking level. Refer to “transmission retarder” heading in this chapter.

VEHICLE CLEARANCE INFORMATION



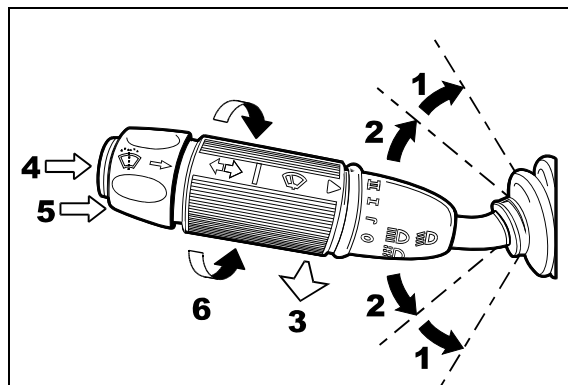
Safe vehicle clearance height is 11'8" (3.56 m).

**CAUTION**  
 Vehicle clearance is higher when the ventilation hatch is open, hi-buoy is selected or if additional equipment is installed on the roof.

STEERING COLUMN CONTROLS

Many of the most frequently used controls are conveniently placed on the steering column or the steering wheel, just like a passenger car. The multi-function lever is located on the left side of the steering wheel while the optional transmission retarder lever is located on the right side of the steering wheel. Switches for the electric horn and the air horn are located directly on the steering wheel.

MULTI-FUNCTION LEVER



MULTI-FUNCTION LEVER

23133

The multi-function lever is used to operate the following:

Turn Signal (1)

Move the lever all the way up until it locks in position to signal a right turn. Move the lever all the way down until it locks in position to signal a left turn. The lever automatically returns to the horizontal OFF position once the turn is completed.

Lane Change Signal (2)

Move the lever part way to the catch position and hold until the lane change maneuver is completed. The lever will spring back into the OFF position once released.

Headlight Beam Toggle Switch (3)

Toggle between high and low beams by pulling the lever up towards you. To flash the headlights, pull the lever up halfway. The lever will spring back into normal position once released.



## 4-52 Controls and Instruments

---

### Courtesy Blinkers (4)

Clearance and parking lights can be flashed by pressing the button located on the lever tip.

### Windshield Washer Control (5)

Push the external ring at the end of the lever toward the steering column to activate the windshield washers. The wipers come ON and continue wiping for a few seconds after the ring is released.



#### **WARNING**

Before using the windshield washers in cold weather, heat the windshield with the defroster to prevent icing and reduced visibility.



#### **CAUTION**

To avoid damaging the pump mechanism, do

not use the windshield washer when the fluid level is very low or empty.

### Windshield Wipers (6)

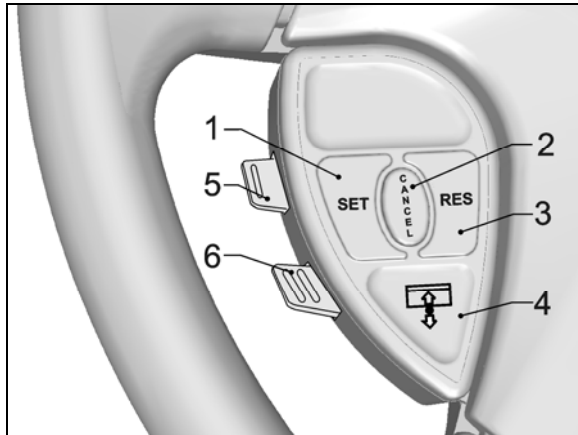
Turn the lever counterclockwise to activate the windshield wipers. The first position activates the wipers intermittently. The second position is the slow speed and the third position is for high speed wiping.



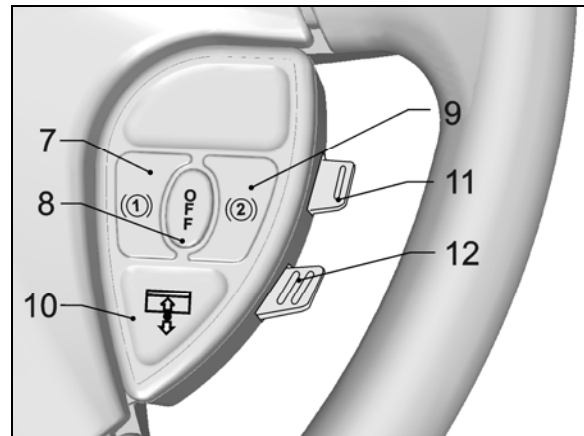
#### **CAUTION**

To avoid scratching the windshield, do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry. To avoid damaging the wiper motor, free wiper blades that may be frozen to the windshield before operating the wipers.

STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



LEFT STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



RIGHT STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS

The steering wheel controls include the following functions:

- 1 **SET (CRUISE CONTROL)**  
For the cruise control operating instructions, refer to “cruise control” paragraph in this chapter.
- 2 **CANCEL (CRUISE CONTROL)**  
For the cruise control operating instructions, refer to “cruise control” paragraph in this chapter.
- 3 **RESUME (CRUISE CONTROL)**  
For the cruise control operating instructions, refer to “cruise control” paragraph in this chapter.
- 4, 10 **LEFT SUNSHADE, RIGHT SUNSHADE – NOT FUNCTIONAL**
- 5 **ESCAPE/ENTER (DRIVER INFORMATION DISPLAY)**  
Enter: lift this button briefly.  
Escape: press briefly on this button.
- 6 **UP/DOWN (DRIVER INFORMATION DISPLAY)**  
Use this button to scroll up or down through the menus.
- 7 **ENGINE BRAKE LOW (Ⓐ)**  
The engine brake provides two levels of braking power. Press this button for low engine braking power (about 50 % of full braking power upon release of the accelerator pedal). Refer to Section 5 *Other Features* for more information about the engine brake operation and AUTO (Ⓐ) mode.
- 8 **ENGINE BRAKE OFF**

## 4-54 Controls and Instruments

This button is a momentary switch that will cancel the Engine Brake LOW (1) or Engine Brake HIGH (2) mode and switch the engine brake to AUTO (A) mode. On vehicles so equipped, an engine brake switch located in the dashboard can be used to cancel completely (OFF mode) the engine brake.

### NOTE

Engine brake is safe to use in any road conditions including adverse conditions.

### 9 ENGINE BRAKE HIGH (2)

Pressing this button will allow full application of engine brake (100 % of braking power upon release of the accelerator pedal). Refer to Section 5 *Other Features* for more information concerning the engine brake operation and AUTO (A) mode.

### 11 VOLUME (DASHBOARD RADIO WHEN EQUIPPED)

Use this button to increase or decrease the dashboard radio (driver's radio) volume.

### 12 SEEK (DASHBOARD RADIO WHEN EQUIPPED)

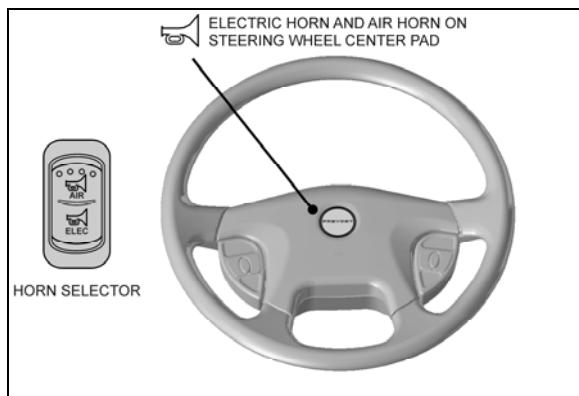
Use this button to seek up or down for a radio station.

## HORNS

The electric horn (city horn) and air horn (highway horn) are operated from the steering wheel center pad. Use the Horn Selector switch located on the lateral control panel to select the appropriate horn type.

### NOTE

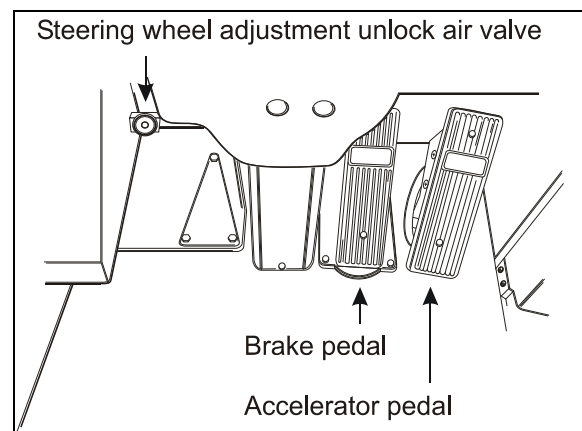
When the vehicle is stationary, the electric horn will sound to inform the driver that a fire is detected in the engine compartment.



STEERING WHEEL

14068\_1

## FOOT-OPERATED CONTROLS



FOOT-OPERATED CONTROLS

00023A

## BRAKE PEDAL

The coach is equipped with a dual braking system. The front brakes operate from a different air pressure source from the drive and tag axle brakes. The dual braking system becomes a modulated emergency system if a pressure drop occurs in the primary brake system.

Service brakes are applied by depressing the brake pedal. Braking increases with the amount of pressure applied to the foot pedal. Refer to

Other Features chapter under Antilock Braking System. When the brake pedal is depressed, the brake lights turn *ON* automatically.

For safe and effective braking, the air system pressure should reach at least 122 psi in both the primary and secondary circuits. A warning light and an audible alert will sound when the air pressure in either the primary or secondary circuits drops below 85 psi. If this occurs, stop the coach; determine the cause of the pressure loss before proceeding. The brake pedal can be used in conjunction with the transmission retarder. Refer to Transmission Output Retarder in this chapter.

**DANGER**

Immediately report any brake system problem to your company or directly to the nearest prevost or prevost-approved service center.

Do not "fan" or "pump" the brake pedal. This practice does not increase brake system effectiveness but rather reduces system air pressure thereby causing reduced braking effectiveness.

**CAUTION**

"Riding" the brake by resting one's foot on the brake pedal when not braking can cause abnormally high brake temperature, can damage and cause premature wear of brake components and reduce brake effectiveness.

**ACCELERATOR PEDAL**

Controls engine RPM as needed.

**NOTE**

*The accelerator pedal will not operate when the entrance door is open.*

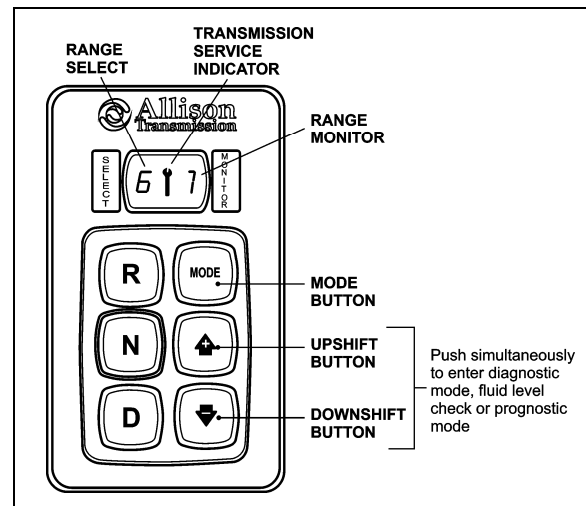
**Allison Transmission**

The transmission is fully automatic: Proper ranges should be automatically selected according to driving speeds to improve vehicle performance and control. The speed ratio of the power converter changes automatically as vehicle speed increases and direct-drive goes in

and out as necessary. The speed ratio is modulated by vehicle speed and accelerator pedal position. You will find the complete transmission operation instructions and driving tips in the **Allison 5<sup>th</sup> Generation Bus Series Operator's Manual** included in your vehicle's publication box.

**OPERATION**

When a button is depressed on the transmission control pad, the corresponding letter or number is displayed indicating the transmission is ready to operate in the selected range. If the transmission control module (TCM) detects a serious problem in the transmission, the CHECK telltale lights on the dashboard.



**ALLISON PUSHBUTTON SHIFT SELECTOR** 07142

**PUSHBUTTON SHIFT SELECTOR**

The pushbutton shift selector has the following elements:

**R:** Press to select Reverse gear.

**N:** Press to select Neutral.

**D:** Press to select Drive. The highest forward range available will appear in the digital display window under SELECT. The transmission will start out in the lowest available forward range, displayed under MONITOR, and advance automatically to the highest range.

▲ ▼ : Press respectively the ▲ (Upshift) or ▼ (Downshift) arrow button when in DRIVE to

## 4-56 Controls and Instruments

request the next higher or lower range. One press changes gears by one range. If the button is held down, the selection will scroll up or down until the button is released or until the highest or lowest possible range is selected. Protection mechanisms inhibit selecting ranges that are not appropriate for the current speed or which may damage driveline components.

**MODE:** Pressing the MODE button allows the driver to activate the secondary shift schedule that has been programmed into the TCM unit.

### PRIMARY AND SECONDARY SHIFT SCHEDULES

The **primary shift schedule** is the default mode at starting of the engine and is typically specified to accommodate normal vehicle operation. The transmission controller automatically selects between ECONOMY and PERFORMANCE shift strategy, based on the vehicle actual load and the grade on which the vehicle is operating. This is called Load Based Shift Scheduling (LBSS). This can produce improved overall vehicle fuel economy while still enabling high productivity when the vehicle is loaded.

In the **secondary shift schedule**, only the ECONOMY shift strategy is available. No switching is done between shift strategies. The secondary shift mode is available only if selected by the driver, using the MODE button. When the secondary mode is activated, "MODE" illuminates on the display.

#### NOTE

*When the diagnostic display mode has been entered, the MODE button is used to view and toggle through diagnostic code information. Refer to appendix C for more details about **diagnostic code display procedure** and **fluid level check** using the pushbutton shift selector.*

### TRANSMISSION SERVICE INDICATOR

**I**: This indicator will be illuminated upon the detection of a service issue relating to clutch, filter or fluid life. The appearance of the indicator (lit steadily, flashing, etc.) varies for each of the conditions monitored by the system. Refer to

appendix C for more details about **diagnostic code display procedure, fluid level check or prognostic features** (Oil Life Monitor, Filter Life Monitor and Transmission Health Monitor) using the pushbutton shift selector.

Illuminated at startup for a bulb check, this indicator will then be turned off if no service conditions exist.

### DESCRIPTION OF AVAILABLE RANGES

#### R (Reverse)

Press the «R» button to select reverse. Completely stop the vehicle and let the engine return to idle before shifting from forward range «D» to reverse «R» or from reverse to forward range. The reverse warning signal will be activated when this range is selected.

#### N (Neutral)

Use this position to start engine. Select «N» (Neutral) when checking vehicle accessories and for extended periods of engine idle operation; parking brake must then be applied. *The pushbutton shift selector automatically select «N» (Neutral) when the ignition switch is turned ON.*

#### NOTE

*The automatic transmission does not have a park «P» position. Select «N» (Neutral) and apply parking brake when the vehicle is left unattended. An audible alert will sound if the engine is stopped and the parking brake is not applied.*




#### WARNING


Before leaving driver's seat, always put the transmission in NEUTRAL and apply parking brake.



#### WARNING

The vehicle service brakes or park brake must be applied whenever NEUTRAL is selected to prevent unexpected vehicle movement.

|  |
|--|
|  <b>CAUTION</b>                               |
| Diesel engines should not be idled for extended periods at "slow" idle. For extended idling, engine should run at "fast" idle. |

|  |
|--|
|  <b>CAUTION</b>   |
| Do not allow your vehicle to "coast" in neutral «N». This practice can result in transmission damage. Also, no engine braking is available in neutral. |

**D (Drive)**

Use this position for all normal driving conditions. After touching this pad, the vehicle will start in first or second range and will automatically upshift to a higher range as output speed increases. As the vehicle slows down, output speed decreases, the transmission automatically downshifts to the correct range. If a locked brake or a slick surface condition should occur, the TCM (Transmission Control Module) will command converter operation (disconnect lockup) and inhibit downshifts for a period of time or until normal wheel speed has been restored.

|   |
|---|
| <b>IMPORTANT NOTE</b>   |
| Brake pedal must be applied when selecting «D» (Drive) otherwise the transmission will stay in «N» (Neutral). |

|   |
|---|
| <b>NOTE</b>   |
| The transmission should normally be allowed to shift by itself, but manual shifting can be done as described below. |

**1 (First range)**

Select this range when pulling through mud and snow, when speed control is needed for driving up or down steep grades or when maneuvering in tight spaces. This range also provides maximum driving torque and engine braking power or retarder braking effect. In the lower ranges (1, 2, 3 and 4), the transmission will not


upshift above the highest gear selected unless engine overspeed is detected.


**2 (Second range)**

Select this range when operating in heavy and congested traffic. The transmission will start in first and automatically upshift to second. When slowing, the transmission will automatically downshift to first range. Low ranges provide progressively greater engine and retarder braking power (the lower the range, the greater the engine and retarder braking effect).

**3, 4 (Third and fourth ranges)**

Select these ranges when driving on moderate grades or when load and traffic conditions limit speed.

|   |
|---|
|  <b>WARNING</b>  |
| Service brake should not be used to control the speed of vehicle on long, steep descents. Instead, lower transmission ranges should be used (in conjunction with output retarder. Refer to "Engine Brake" and "Transmission Retarder" headings in Section 5 <i>Other Features</i> for details regarding both systems. This procedure keeps service brake cool and ready for emergency stopping. |

|  |
|--|
|  <b>CAUTION</b> |
| When descending in lower ranges, care must be taken that engine speed does not exceed 2,450 rpm.   |



|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| <b>EXHAUST AFTERTREATMENT SYSTEM.....</b>  | <b>3</b>  |
| FILTRATION AND REGENERATION UNIT .....   | 3         |
| <i>Passive regeneration</i> .....  | 3         |
| <i>Active regeneration</i> .....   | 3         |
| <i>Stationary (parked) regeneration</i> .....  | 3         |
| <i>Initiating a Stationary (Parked) Regeneration</i> .....   | 5         |
| <i>Voluntary Interruption of a Stationary Regeneration</i> .....   | 5         |
| SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION UNIT .....   | 6         |
| DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID DEF .....   | 6         |
| <i>Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Consumption</i> .....  | 6         |
| SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION – DRIVER WARNING AND INDUCEMENT .....  | 6         |
| DEF TANK LEVEL DRIVER WARNING AND INDUCEMENT .....   | 8         |
| DEF QUALITY DRIVER WARNING AND INDUCEMENT .....  | 9         |
| SCR SYSTEM TAMPERING DRIVER WARNING AND INDUCEMENT .....   | 10        |
| <b>DRIVER INFORMATION DISPLAY (DID) MENUS .....</b>  | <b>11</b> |
| DRIVING MODE MENUS .....   | 12        |
| <i>Gauges</i> .....  | 12        |
| <i>Fuel Data</i> .....   | 13        |
| <i>Time/distance</i> .....   | 14        |
| <i>Prevost Liaison (Option)</i> .....  | 14        |
| <i>Vehicle Messages</i> .....  | 15        |
| NON-DRIVING/STATIONARY MODE MENUS.....   | 15        |
| <i>Display Settings</i> .....  | 15        |
| <i>Diagnostics</i> .....   | 17        |
| <i>Pre-Trip Assistant (Option)</i> .....   | 18        |
| <i>Data Log</i> .....  | 20        |
| <i>Aftertreatment</i> .....  | 21        |
| <i>Password</i> .....  | 22        |
| <b>ENGINE BRAKE .....</b>  | <b>22</b> |
| VOLVO ENGINE BRAKE (VEB) .....   | 22        |
| CRUISE CONTROL AND ENGINE BRAKE.....   | 23        |
| <b>ANTILOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS), TRACTION CONTROL SYSTEM (TCS) &amp; ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL (ESC) .....</b> | <b>24</b> |
| ANTILOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) .....  | 24        |
| TRACTION CONTROL SYSTEM (TCS) .....  | 24        |
| ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL (ESC) .....   | 24        |
| <b>DRIVER CONTROLLED DIFFERENTIAL LOCK (DCDL) .....</b>  | <b>25</b> |
| OPERATION TIPS .....   | 25        |
| LOCKING THE DCDL .....   | 25        |
| UNLOCKING THE DCDL .....   | 25        |
| <b>KNEELING SYSTEM .....</b>   | <b>25</b> |
| <b>RETRACTABLE TAG AXLE .....</b>  | <b>26</b> |
| TAG AXLE AUTOMATIC UNLOAD.....   | 26        |
| <b>IN-STATION LIGHTING .....</b>   | <b>26</b> |
| <b>ENGINE COOLANT HEATER .....</b>   | <b>26</b> |



## 5-2 Other Features

---

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| SWITCHING THE HEATER ON .....  | 27        |
| SWITCHING THE HEATER OFF .....                                       | 27        |
| COOLANT HEATER TIMER .....   | 27        |
| TIMER A: OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS.....                                 | 27        |
| <i>Remaining Operating Time</i> .....                                | 28        |
| <i>Setting the Digital Timer</i> .....                               | 28        |
| <i>Setting the Time and Day of the Week</i> .....                    | 28        |
| <i>Viewing the Time (Ignition ON)</i> .....                          | 28        |
| <i>Viewing the Time (Ignition OFF)</i> .....                         | 28        |
| <i>Switching Heater ON (Instant Heating) With Ignition ON</i> .....  | 28        |
| <i>Switching Heater ON (Instant Heating) With Ignition OFF</i> ..... | 28        |
| <i>Switching Heater OFF</i> .....                                    | 28        |
| <i>Presetting Starting Time</i> .....                                | 28        |
| <i>Recalling Preset Times</i> .....                                  | 28        |
| <i>Canceling Preset Time</i> .....                                   | 29        |
| <i>Setting Operating Time</i> .....                                  | 29        |
| <i>Setting the Remaining Operating Time</i> .....                    | 29        |
| TIMER B: OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS.....                                 | 29        |
| <i>Set Time And Day</i> .....  | 29        |
| <i>Set Time And Day With 24h Mode Selected</i> .....                 | 29        |
| <i>Set Time And Day With 12h Mode Selected</i> .....                 | 29        |
| PREHEATER TROUBLESHOOTING AND MAINTENANCE .....                      | 31        |
| <b>WHEELCHAIR LIFT SYSTEM .....</b>                                  | <b>32</b> |
| INTERIOR APPOINTMENTS .....  | 32        |
| WHEELCHAIR LIFT SYSTEM DOORS.....                                    | 32        |
| OPERATING THE WHEELCHAIR LIFT.....                                   | 33        |
| <i>Normal Lift Operation – To Enter Vehicle</i> .....                | 35        |
| <i>Normal Lift Operation – To Exit Vehicle</i> .....                 | 35        |
| EMERGENCY OPERATION.....   | 36        |
| <i>Wheelchair Area Sliding Door Emergency Unlock</i> .....           | 36        |
| <i>To Manually Deploy The Platform</i> .....                         | 37        |
| <i>To Manually Raise The Platform</i> .....                          | 38        |
| <i>To Manually Lower The Platform</i> .....                          | 38        |
| <i>To manually stow the platform</i> .....                           | 38        |
| THRESHOLD WARNING SYSTEM (TWS) ADJUSTMENT.....                       | 39        |
| <i>Adjust Aiming Of Acoustic Sensor Beam</i> .....                   | 39        |
| <i>Test Aim of Acoustic Sensor Beam</i> .....                        | 40        |
| <i>Adjust acoustic sensor timing</i> .....                           | 40        |
| <b>WHEELCHAIR RESTRAINT SYSTEMS .....</b>                            | <b>40</b> |
| 4-POINT SECUREMENT WITH ANCHORAGE TO PASSENGERS SEAT PEDESTALS ..... | 40        |
| <i>Wheelchair Occupant Restraint</i> .....                           | 41        |
| WHEELCHAIR LIFT REMOVAL FOR STORING OR MAINTENANCE PURPOSES.....     | 41        |
| WHEELCHAIR LIFT REMOVAL FOR STORING OR MAINTENANCE PURPOSES.....     | 41        |
| WHEELCHAIR LIFT INSTALLATION .....                                   | 42        |
| WHEELCHAIR LIFT INSTALLATION .....                                   | 42        |

## EXHAUST AFTERTREATMENT SYSTEM

The exhaust aftertreatment system consists of two units, the filtration and regeneration unit and the selective catalytic reduction SCR unit.

### FILTRATION AND REGENERATION UNIT

The aftertreatment system primary function is to capture and oxidize (regenerate) the particulate matter (soot) in the engine exhaust gases and to reduce NOx. To achieve this goal, the exhaust aftertreatment system is split into two main sections: the exhaust gases first enter the **Diesel Oxidation Catalyst (DOC)** and **Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)** assembly to capture and regenerate the soot on a regular or passive basis, then the exhaust gases flow through the **catalytic converter** to reduce NOx to minimum level. Through constant monitoring of the exhaust gas temperature and the system back pressure, EMS is able to manage regeneration.

#### Passive regeneration

Passive regeneration is the process by which the particulate matter is oxidized due to the heat generated by the engine internal combustion process. During normal highway operation, exhaust temperatures alone are usually high enough to oxidize accumulating soot. In low ambient temperatures, however, or in some stop-and-go applications, the system needs a little help to regenerate, or clean itself. This process is called "active" regeneration.

#### Active regeneration

Active regeneration is necessary when the engine internal combustion process alone does not generate enough heat. A dosing system injects a mist of diesel fuel into the exhaust system to increase and maintain the aftertreatment system temperature. Exhaust temperature must be above 572°F (300°C) to initiate the oxidation catalyst, which in turn oxidizes the injected diesel fuel molecules to achieve up to 1200°F (650°C) exhaust temperature at the particulate filter. This process of active regeneration takes place during the normal operation cycle of the vehicle without charges in performance or control for the

operator. EPA2010 compliant Volvo engines produce less soot, so less active or stationary regeneration will be required.








#### Stationary (parked) regeneration

In a small number of specific engine duty cycles, engine control module may not be capable of completing an active regeneration. In these situations, the operator will be notified that a stationary or parked regeneration may be required. A DPF telltale light will illuminate indicating the need for user interaction. The lamp gives the operator a grace period to allow this process to take place at a time when most convenient for the operator. This process requires the vehicle to be parked while a driver or maintenance technician initiates the regeneration process using the DID menus. Once initiated, the stationary regeneration process will be complete in about 45 minutes.

The driver will be notified of the need for a stationary regeneration (parked) by illumination of the DPF REGENERATION telltale light.

## 5-4 Other Features


### Diesel particulate filter clogging sequence – Instrument cluster telltale light

|                       |  |   |
|-----------------------|--|---|
| <p><b>LEVEL 1</b></p> |  solid  | <p><b>REGENERATION NEEDED</b></p> <p><i>Diesel particulate filter is becoming full</i></p> <p><i>The DPF REGENERATION telltale light illuminates to notify the driver that a stationary regeneration (parked) will be required soon. When this lamp is lit, initiate stationary regeneration process at an appropriate time of day. <b>THERE IS NO URGENCY AT THIS LEVEL.</b></i></p>   |
| <p><b>LEVEL 2</b></p> |  flashing   | <p><b>REGENERATION REQUIRED</b></p> <p><i>Diesel particulate filter full</i></p> <p><i>If no DPF regeneration occurs after the initial DPF REGENERATION telltale light illumination, the lamp will begin blinking and a stationary regeneration should be initiated as soon as possible in order to prevent from entering into Level 3.</i></p>   |
| <p><b>LEVEL 3</b></p> |  flashing<br>+<br>   | <p><b>ATD SERVICE REQUIRED</b></p> <p><b>ENGINE DERATE ACTIVE</b></p> <p><i>Diesel particulate filter overfull</i></p> <p><i>If the flashing DPF REGENERATION telltale light is still ignored, the CHECK telltale light will illuminate. In that situation, engine performance is limited. Perform a parked regeneration IMMEDIATELY to avoid further derate and prevent from entering into Level 4.</i></p>  |
| <p><b>LEVEL 4</b></p> |  flashing<br>+<br><br>+<br> | <p><b>ATD SERVICE REQUIRED</b></p> <p><b>ENGINE SHUTDOWN ACTIVE</b></p> <p><i>A serious engine problem has occurred. The DPF may be over its maximum capacity.</i></p> <p><i>If a stationary regeneration is still not initiated, a standard Engine Protection Shutdown sequence will occur. All of the following dashboard lamps will be present:</i></p> <p><i>Blinking DPF REGENERATION telltale light;</i><br/> <i>Solid CHECK telltale light;</i><br/> <i>Solid STOP telltale light.</i></p> <p><i>Once engine derate and/or shutdown sequence is completed, a stationary regeneration must occur to continue vehicle operation. If the driver continues to operate the vehicle without regeneration, additional measures will be taken to protect the engine and ATD from damage, up to and including engine shutdown. Parked regeneration might no longer be possible.</i></p> <p><b><i>If engine protection has been initiated and forces the engine to shutdown, you CAN immediately re-start the engine and perform the necessary steps in order to initiate a stationary regeneration.</i></b></p> |


Initiating a Stationary (Parked) Regeneration

**NOTE**


*At starting of the engine, if a stationary regeneration is required, the engine coolant temperature must reach 140°F (60°C) before any stationary regeneration may be initiated and completed. Permit the engine to idle for a short while or drive the vehicle until engine temperature increases sufficiently.*

 **WARNING**

*Do not initiate a stationary regeneration in a closed area like a garage. Stationary regenerations must be undertaken outdoors only.*

 **WARNING**

*During stationary regeneration, exhaust temperature may reach up to 1200°F (650°C) at the particulate filter. Before initiating stationary regeneration, make sure that the DPF outlet diffuser is clear of objects and that no one is working near the DPF outlet diffuser.*

 **WARNING**

*Hot surfaces. Keep yourself clear of all hot Aftertreatment Device components, particularly during and after active or stationary regeneration. Hot surfaces can cause serious burns.*

**NOTE**

**STATIONARY REGENERATION**

*This process requires the vehicle to be parked while the driver or a maintenance technician initiates the regeneration process.*

The DPF REGENERATION telltale light illuminates to notify the driver of the need and urgency of a manual stationary regeneration.



DPF REGENERATION telltale light

If stationary regeneration is not performed, this telltale light will blink, indicating that a stationary regeneration is required immediately. If stationary regeneration is still not performed,

“engine power derate and shutdown” sequence may occur as per level 1 to level 4 sequence.

To initiate a stationary regeneration:


- Park the vehicle in a clear area, vehicle speed must be 0 mph (0 km/h);
- Engine must be on normal idle and fully warmed up (coolant temperature above 140°F/60°C);
- Apply parking brakes and set the transmission to neutral (N).
- Press the DID ENTER button and then get to the DID Aftertreatment menu. Select sub-menu Request Parked REGEN and press ENTER button to confirm and initiate regeneration.

The regeneration will begin. Turn off the air conditioning to reduce engine load. The engine idling speed will increase to 1600 rpm. Once the regeneration is completed, the engine speed will return to normal idle.

Voluntary Interruption of a Stationary Regeneration

It is possible to interrupt a stationary regeneration at all time. To do so, set the ignition key to the OFF position or get to the DID's Aftertreatment menu, select Cancel REGEN and press ENTER button to confirm. You can stop regeneration simply by releasing the parking brake. Use this procedure in order to move the vehicle in a safe area only.

If regeneration is interrupted, it is very important to reinitiate the regeneration as soon as possible.

 **CAUTION**

If an active regeneration is stopped repeatedly, the vehicle may need to be taken to a service facility. The service facility will use a service tool to manually initiate the regeneration. Moreover, the interruption of active regeneration should not be considered as a normal practice. Some components of the aftertreatment system might be damaged in the long term.

## 5-6 Other Features

### SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION UNIT

Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) is a technology that uses Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) and a catalytic converter to reduce nitrogen oxides (NOx) emissions.

SCR is an exhaust aftertreatment system that injects small amount of DEF into the exhaust gas between the DPF and the selective reduction catalytic converter. DEF turns to ammonia and carbon dioxide when heated. The exhaust stream then passes over a catalyst, the ammonia reacts with the NOx to form nitrogen and water vapor.

The basic elements of the SCR system consist of a 15.9 gallons (60 liters) DEF tank complete with pump, lines and heating system, a dosing injector, a catalytic converter and the control and monitoring system.

### DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID DEF

When handling DEF solution, keep electrical connectors properly connected or well encapsulated, otherwise there is a risk that the DEF will cause oxidation that cannot be removed. Water or compressed air will not help, since DEF quickly oxidizes certain metals. If a disconnected connector comes into contact with the DEF solution, it must be replaced immediately to prevent the DEF solution from creeping further into the copper wiring, which takes place at a speed of about 2.4 in (60 mm) per hour.



#### CAUTION

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is a nontoxic aqueous solution of urea (32.5%) and ultra-pure water (67.5%). Urea is a compound of nitrogen that turns to ammonia when heated. The fluid is non flammable, and is not dangerous when handled as recommended. However, it is highly corrosive to certain metals, especially copper and brass.

When detaching hoses and components, do not spill DEF on disconnected or unsealed connectors. If DEF is spilled on a disconnected or unsealed connector, the connector must be removed immediately and replaced.

Things to know about spilled diesel exhaust fluid (DEF):

- If urea solution comes into contact with the skin, rinse with plenty of water and remove contaminated clothing.
- If urea solution comes into contact with the eyes rinse for several minutes and call for medical help if necessary.
- If inhaled breathe fresh air and call for medical help if necessary.
- Do not allow the DEF solution to come into contact with other chemicals.
- The DEF solution is not flammable. If the DEF solution is exposed to high temperatures, it breaks down into ammonia and carbon dioxide.
- The DEF solution is highly corrosive to certain metals, including copper and aluminum.
- If the DEF solution is spilled onto the vehicle, wipe off the excess and rinse with water. Spilled DEF solution can form concentrated white crystals on the vehicle. Rinse off these crystals with water.



#### WARNING

DEF spilt onto hot components will quickly vaporize. Turn your face away!

### Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Consumption

DEF consumption is related to fuel consumption. In order to meet EPA2010 requirements, DEF tanks are sized so one refill will be necessary every two refill of the fuel tank.

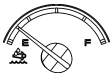


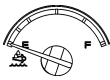


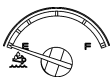


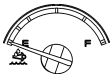


### SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION – DRIVER WARNING AND INDUCEMENT









SCR system components must not be removed, altered or modified in any way. In order to protect the SCR system from tampering, inducement measures will occur if the following states are detected:

- Disconnection of DEF tank level sensor
- Blocked DEF line or dosing valve
- Disconnection of DEF dosing valve
- Disconnection of DEF pump
- Disconnection of SCR wiring harness

- Disconnection of NOx sensor
- Disconnected exhaust temperature sensor
- Disconnected DEF temperature sensor
- Disconnected DEF quality sensor









## 5-8 Other Features

| DEF TANK LEVEL DRIVER WARNING AND INDUCEMENT |   |   |   |   |
|--|---|---|---|---|
| Conditions / Triggers                        |   | DEF Tank LOW LEVEL Indicator, DID Message and audible warning                                   |   | Inducement  |
| 1  | <b>Normal</b><br>DEF tank level sensor reads between 100% and 12%   | None  |   | None  |
| 2  | <b>Low DEF tank warning</b><br>DEF tank level sensor reads between 12% and 0.1%    | <br>solid      | DEF TANK LEVEL LOW<br>REFILL DEF SOON TO PREVENT ENGINE DERATE<br> 3 cycles of 2 beeps                     | Warning message   |
| 3  | <b>DEF tank near empty</b><br>DEF tank level sensor reads less than 0.1%   | <br>blinking   | DEF TANK EMPTY<br>REFILL DEF AT NEXT STOP TO AVOID 5 MPH LIMIT<br>ENGINE IN DERATE<br> 3 cycles of 2 beeps | Engine torque reduction of 25%  |
| 4  | <b>DEF tank empty</b> and one (1) hour of operation in engine derate mode    | <br>blinking   | DEF TANK EMPTY<br>5 MPH (8KM/H) LIMIT NEXT 20MIN VEHICLE STOP<br> 3 cycles of 2 beeps                     | Engine torque reduction of 40%  |
| 5  | <b>DEF tank empty</b> and either <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Diesel fuel refueling done with a fuel level sensor reading increase of 15%, or more</li> <li>Vehicle stationary (speed=0) for 20 minutes with engine off or at idle</li> </ol>  | <br>blinking | REFILL DEF TANK<br>VEHICLE SPEED LIMITED TO 5 MPH (8 KM/H)<br> continuous cycle of 2 beeps               | Vehicle road speed limited (RSL) to 5 mph (8 km/h)<br><br><i>Note: The vehicle has to be stationary before 5 mph (8 km/h) road speed limit becomes active</i> |

| DEF QUALITY DRIVER WARNING AND INDUCEMENT |  |  |   |  |
|---|--|--|---|--|
| Conditions / Triggers                     |  | Amber Warning Light & Did Message And Audible Warning                                      |   | Inducement   |
| 1   | <b>Good DEF quality</b>  | None   |   | None   |
| 2   | <b>Poor DEF quality detected</b>   | <br>solid | POOR DEF QUALITY DETECTED<br>SERVICE DEF SYSTEM AT NEXT STOP<br> 3 cycles of 2 beeps                       | Warning message<br>Engine will derate 25% in < 60 mins   |
| 3   | <b>Poor DEF quality detected</b> and one (1) hour of operation with active diagnostic troubleshooting code   | <br>solid | POOR DEF QUALITY DETECTED<br>ENGINE IN DERATE<br>5 MPH (8KM/H) LIMIT IN < XXX MINS<br> 3 cycles of 2 beeps | Engine derated 25%<br>Engine will derate 40% in <240 mins  |
| 4   | <b>Poor DEF quality detected</b> and four (4) hours of operation with active diagnostic troubleshooting code   | <br>solid | SERVICE DEF<br>5 MPH (8KM/H) LIMIT NEXT 20MIN<br>VEHICLE STOP<br> 3 cycles of 2 beeps                      | Engine derated 40%<br>5 mph (8km/h) limit after next 20 min vehicle stop   |
| 5   | <b>Poor DEF quality detected</b><br>Diesel fuel refueling done with a fuel level sensor increase of 15% or more<br>or<br>Vehicle stationary (speed=0) for 20 minutes with engine off or at idle<br>or<br>Key cycle trigger | <br>solid | SERVICE DEF<br>VEHICLE SPEED LIMITED TO 5 MPH (8 KM/H)<br> continuous cycle of 2 beeps                   | Service DEF<br>Vehicle road speed limited (RSL) to 5 mph (8 km/h)<br><br><i>Note: The vehicle has to be stationary before 5 mph (8 km/h) road speed limit becomes active</i> |



## 5-10 Other Features

| SCR SYSTEM TAMPERING DRIVER WARNING AND INDUCEMENT |   |  |   |  |
|--|---|--|---|--|
| Conditions / Triggers                              |   | Amber Warning Light, Did Message And Audible Warning   |   | Inducement   |
| 1  | <b>Normal</b><br>No diagnostic troubleshooting code active  | None   |   | None   |
| 2  | <b>SCR system tampering</b> diagnostic troubleshooting code confirmed   | <br>solid   | SCR SYSTEM FAULT<br>SERVICE SYSTEM AT NEXT STOP<br> 3 cycles of 2 beeps                                      | Warning message                                    |
| 3  | Reached one (1) hour of operation with active <b>SCR system tampering</b> diagnostic troubleshooting code confirmed   | <br>solid   | SCR SYSTEM FAULT<br>ENGINE IN DERATE<br>5 MPH (8KM/H) LIMIT IN < XXX MINS<br> 3 cycles of 2 beeps            | Engine torque reduction of 25%                     |
| 4  | Reached four (4) hours of operation with active <b>SCR system tampering</b> diagnostic troubleshooting code confirmed | <br>solid   | SCR SYSTEM FAULT<br>REPAIR NEEDED<br>5 MPH (8KM/H) LIMIT NEXT 20MIN<br>VEHICLE STOP<br> 3 cycles of 2 beeps | Engine torque reduction of 40%                     |
| 5  | Diesel fuel refueling done with a fuel level sensor increase of 15% or more   | <br>solid | SCR SYSTEM FAULT<br>VEHICLE SPEED LIMITED TO 5 MPH (8 KM/H)<br> continuous cycle of 2 beeps                | Vehicle road speed limited (RSL) to 5 mph (8 km/h) |

**DRIVER INFORMATION DISPLAY (DID) MENUS**

There are Driving and Non-Driving menus. Several sub-menus are password-protected while the vehicle is parked. The Non-Driving menu is accessible only when the vehicle is parked.

| <b>DRIVING MODE MENUS</b>   | <b>NON-DRIVING/STATIONARY MODE MENUS</b>   |
|---|--|
| <p><b>Gauges</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Current Gear Position (I-Shift)</li> <li>2. Outside Temperature</li> <li>3. Engine Oil Temperature</li> <li>4. Transmission Fluid Temperature</li> <li>5. Prevost Liaison Compass</li> <li>6. Accessories Air Pressure</li> <li>7. A/C Compressor Pressure</li> <li>8. Battery Voltage</li> <li>9. Allison Transmission Oil Life</li> <li>10. Battery State Of Charge</li> </ol> | <p><b>Display Settings</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Language</li> <li>2. Units</li> <li>3. Time/Date</li> <li>4. Favorite Display Setting</li> <li>5. Display Light</li> <li>6. Change Password</li> </ol>                      |
| <p><b>Fuel Data</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fuel Flow / ECO %</li> <li>2. Trip Fuel Used</li> <li>3. Distance to Empty</li> </ol>   | <p><b>Diagnostics</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. View Active Faults</li> <li>2. View Inactive Faults</li> <li>3. Cluster Self Test</li> <li>4. Part Number</li> <li>5. Reset Inactive Faults</li> <li>6. Vehicle Tests</li> </ol> |
| <p><b>Time-Distance</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Time and Date</li> <li>2. Alarm Clock</li> <li>3. Trip Odometer 1 and 2</li> <li>4. Average Trip Speed</li> <li>5. Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA)</li> </ol>   | <p><b>Pre-Trip Assistance</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Exterior Light Inspection</li> <li>2. Air Leakage Monitor</li> </ol>   |
| <p><b>Prevost Liaison</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Read Message</li> <li>2. Send Message</li> <li>3. Other Info</li> </ol>   | <p><b>Datalog</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Vehicle ID</li> <li>2. Total Data</li> <li>3. Trip Data</li> <li>4. Reset Trip Data</li> </ol>   |
| <p><b>Vehicle Messages</b></p>  | <p><b>Aftertreatment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Request Parked REGEN</li> <li>2. ATS Status</li> <li>3. Cancel REGEN</li> </ol>   |
| <p><b>Reset Trip Data</b></p>   | <p><b>Password</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter Password</li> </ol>   |

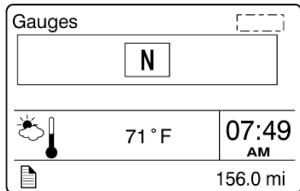
## 5-12 Other Features

---

### DRIVING MODE MENUS

#### Gauges

There are several gauges in this menu. The gauges are used to view current status of important functions in the vehicle.



**1. Current Gear Position (I-Shift transmission only)**

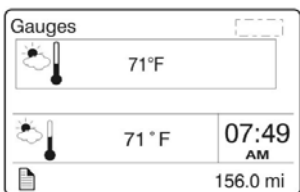
Indicates the current gear position selected on the I-Shift transmission.

D= drive

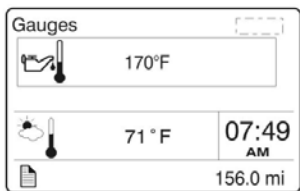
N= neutral

R= reverse

M= manual

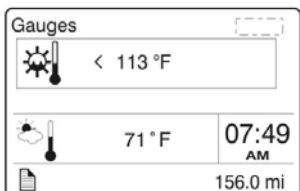


**2. Outside Temperature**

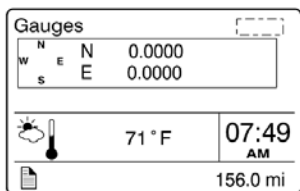


**3. Engine Oil Temperature**

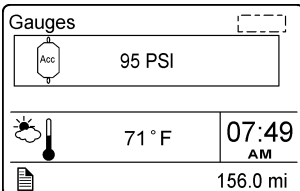
Selecting this gauge will display the engine oil temperature.



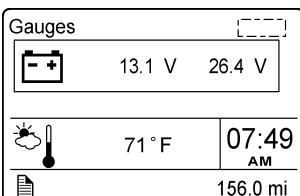
**4. Transmission Fluid Temperature**



**5. Prevost Liaison Compass**

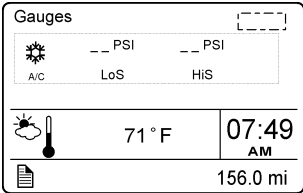


**6. Accessories Air Pressure**



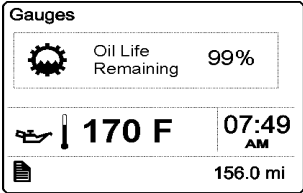
**7. Battery Voltage**

Displays current 12-volts and 24-volts systems voltage.



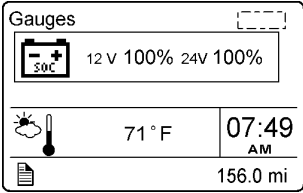
**8. A/C Compressor Pressure**

Displays the A/C compressor suction pressure value (LoS=low side) and discharge pressure value (HiS=high side).



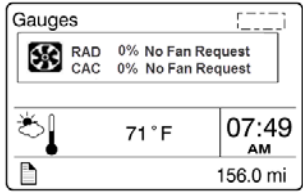
**9. Allison Transmission Oil Life**

Displays the percentage of the calculated remaining life of the transmission oil. New oil is displayed as 99%. Refer to Appendix C for more details.



**10. Battery State Of Charge**

When equipped with PRIME option, displays the state of charge of the 12-volt and 24-volt systems, expressed in percentage.

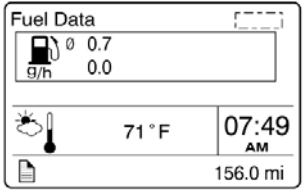


**11. Electric Cooling Fan Status**

Displays the speed and the state of both Charge Air Cooler and radiator fans, expressed in percentage from 0 to 100%.

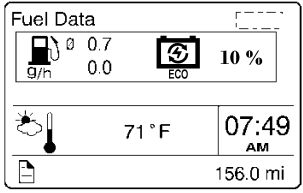
**Fuel Data**

The Fuel Data menu provides information on the fuel consumption of the vehicle in various situations. For example, how much fuel has been used, how much fuel is remaining before refueling the vehicle.

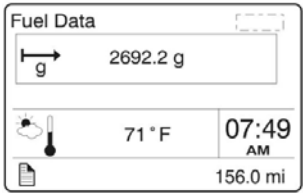


**1. Fuel Flow (gph)**

The lower numerical value indicates the instantaneous fuel consumption. In this menu, you can reset the upper numerical value which is the average fuel consumption. To reset, hold ENTER button for 1 second.



When equipped with PRIME option, the percentage of trip made on regenerated electricity is also displayed.

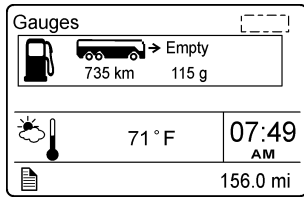


**2. Trip Fuel Used**

Indicates the total fuel consumption (gallons/liters) since the last reset. Note: You should use Reset function before each new trip.

You can reset the fuel consumption value in this menu. To reset, hold ENTER button for 1 second.

## 5-14 Other Features

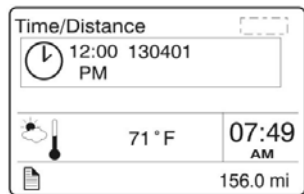


### 3. Distance to Empty

The left numerical value indicates the distance that can be traveled with the quantity of fuel that remains in the tank as indicated by the right numerical value.

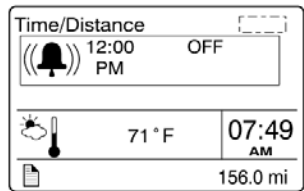
### Time/distance

The time and date can be set in the Time/Distance menu. The alarm clock can also be set from this menu. Following the alarm clock menu is the Trip Odometer 1 and 2 selection, which allows the operator to see the distance travelled since the last reset. Average trip speed is also shown. By specifying the distance to your destination, the vehicle can calculate the estimated time of arrival (ETA).



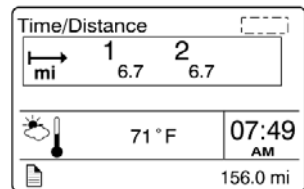
#### 1. Time And Date

Adjust time and date with this menu. The instrument cluster has its own internal battery, so the date and date setting is keep in memory even if the vehicle's battery is disconnected.



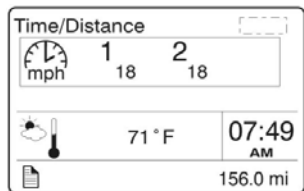
#### 2. Alarm Clock

Use this function to program and activate an alarm on the instrument cluster clock. When the alarm clock goes off, a warning signal is sounded. The alarm shuts off after 60 seconds or if the ESCAPE button is depressed.



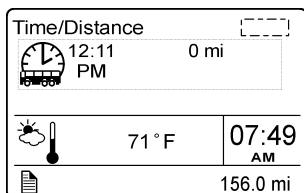
#### 3. Trip Odometer 1 and 2

Allows the operator to see the distance travelled since the last reset. You can reset the trip odometer 1 or 2 in this menu. To reset, depress ENTER button, use UP/DOWN button to select between odometer 1 or 2 and then hold ENTER button for 1 second.



#### 4. Average Trip Speed

This function displays the average speed for the current travel. The average trip speed is calculated as the distance traveled divided by the time the engine has been running (since the last reset). Two average trip speeds can be measured, corresponding to leg 1 and leg 2. Use Reset function before each new travel to start new measurements.

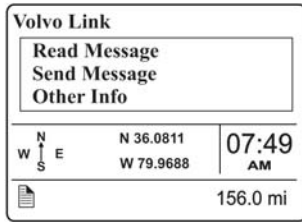


#### 5. Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA)

This function will display the estimated time of arrival if the distance to be traveled is entered first, in this menu. To set distance to be traveled, press ENTER and enter the distance left to drive in mile or km using ENTER and UP/DOWN buttons.

### Prevost Liaison (Option)

The Prevost Liaison system provides cellular communication between the driver and the fleet operator. The driver can send and receive short text messages, which are visible through the Driver Information Display.



The following menus are available:

1. **Read Message**
  - Quick Response (only available if there is a message available)
2. **Send Message**
  - Driver & Equipment
  - Dispatch Messages
  - Free Text
3. **Other Info**
  - Comm Liaison Info
  - Mailbox Info
  - GPS Info
  - INI Info
  - Configuration Info

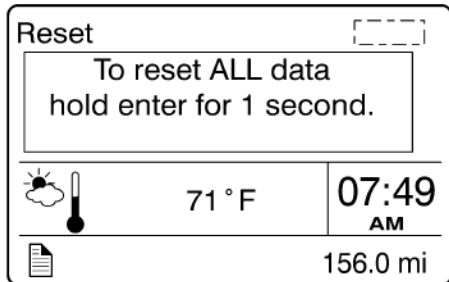
### Vehicle Messages

Use this function to consult the vehicle active messages that were previously displayed as pop-up messages and then acknowledged. When consulting a message, the corresponding STOP, CHECK or INFORMATION warning light will illuminate. Scroll through the messages using the up/down button. Press ESC button to return to main menu.

**RESET TRIP DATA**

When the Reset Trip Data menu is open, pressing and holding down the Enter button for more than 1 second resets the functions listed below. This function will permit to the system to calculate new value from the point of resetting.

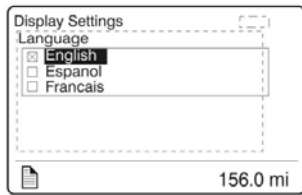
- Trip Fuel Used
- Average Trip Speed



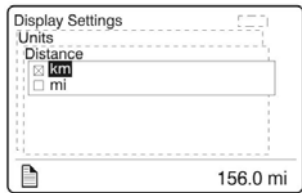
### NON-DRIVING/STATIONARY MODE MENUS

#### Display Settings

The Display Settings menu is used to change languages and units. The password, time and date can also be changed. The backlight and contrast of the display screen can be adjusted.



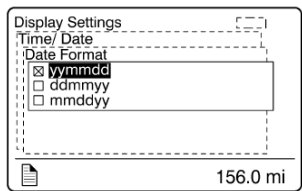
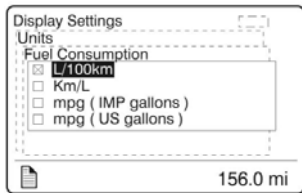
### 1. Language



### 2. Units

Use this function to select desired unit formats for:

- Distance (miles or km);
- Fuel consumption (km/l, l/100km, mpg US or IMP);
- Temperature (°C or °F).



### 3. Time/Date

Select the time and date format (am, pm, 24h) using this function.



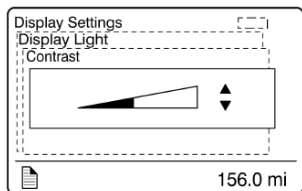
### 4. Favorite Display Setting

Use this menu to select your favorite display gauges 1, 2 and 3 and replace the default gauges. On vehicles provided with the I-Shift transmission, Favorite Display Gauge 3 cannot be edited as it is kept for display of the transmission status.

Example: You wish to display the engine oil temperature at the Gauge 1 position.

1. Use UP/DOWN button until Gauge 1 position is selected.
2. Press ENTER button to confirm.

Use UP/DOWN button to scroll through the available gauges. When the engine oil temperature gauge is displayed, press ENTER button to confirm (repeat steps 1-3 to change Gauge 2 and Gauge 3 if needed).



### 5. Display Light

The Display Light menu has three sub-menus:

#### • Contrast

Adjust the contrast with the UP/DOWN button and press ENTER button to confirm.

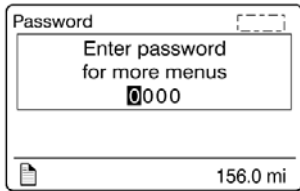
#### • Backlight

In this menu, the display lighting can be adjusted relative to other instrument lighting with the UP/DOWN button.

#### • Night/Day

Use the Night/Day menu to choose a dark background with light text and

images or a light background with dark text and images. Press ENTER button to toggle between Night and Day.



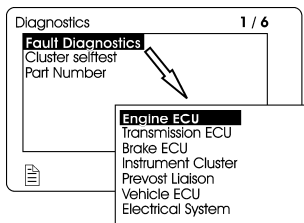
**6. Change Password**

Use this menu to change the current password. This menu is only accessible if the correct password is entered. The default password is 0000.

1. Mark which password is to be changed with the display UP/DOWN button.
2. Confirm with ENTER button.
3. Set the first digit with the UP/DOWN button.
4. Step to the next digit using ENTER button.
5. Step backwards with ESC button.

**Diagnostics**

The Diagnostics menu enables fault tracing on the control units in the vehicle to check for faults. Instrument tests are available to check the telltales, gauges, display and speaker. The part number of a control unit can be identified in the part number menu.



**1. View Active Fault**

A list of the control units on the vehicle is displayed. Use this function to check for active faults on specific control units.

**2. View Inactive Fault**

Use this function to check for inactive faults on specific control units.

**3. Cluster Selftest**

Use this menu to check proper functioning of the following components:

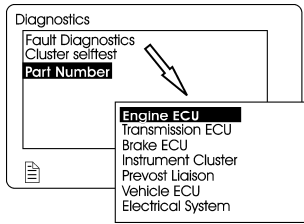
- Telltale lights
- Analog gauges
- Display
- Speakers

The following table describes the available tests. To cancel a test, press the ESC button).

|                      |  |
|----------------------|--|
| Telltale lights test | Telltales illuminate for approximately five seconds. Press the Esc button to cancel the test.  |
| Analog gauges        | The indicators move forwards and backwards between the end positions. They do not show any particular value. This is just a check to confirm that the indicators move, and to make sure the operators are working.<br>Press the Esc button to cancel the test. |
| Display test         | The entire display lights up until the Esc button is pressed.  |
| Speaker Test         | A sound is emitted through the speakers. Press the Esc button to cancel the test.  |



## 5-18 Other Features

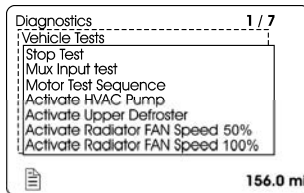


### 4. Part Number

A list of the control units on the vehicle with their part numbers is displayed in the Part Number menu.

### 5. Reset Inactive Faults

Use this menu to delete an inactive fault for a particular control unit. Note: it is not possible to delete inactive faults of the Engine ECU.



### 6. Vehicle Test

Use this menu to perform tests on several components and systems:

- dashboard switches (Mux Input Test)
- electric motors, valve and pump contactors (Motor Test Sequence)

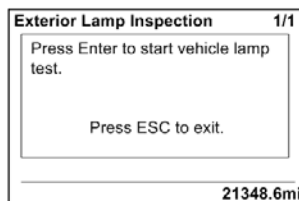
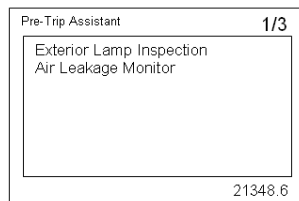
In case of overheating of the engine due to a malfunction of the radiator fan you can force activation of the fan using ACTIVATE RADIATOR FAN SPEED 50%, SPEED 100%.

The DID status line will show TEST to confirm that one of the test modes is active. To cancel an active test, turn the ignition switch to the OFF position or press ESCAPE button, select STOP TEST submenu and then press ENTER button twice. "TEST" will disappear from the DID status line.

For further information concerning these functions, refer to section 06: Electrical, under "Troubleshooting And Testing The Multiplex Vehicles" paragraph of the Maintenance Manual.

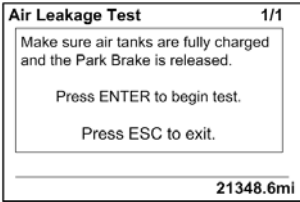
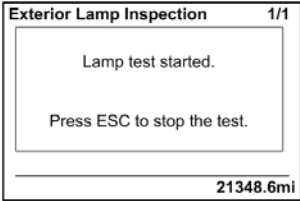
## Pre-Trip Assistant (Option)

The Pre-Trip Assistance option is a tool to assist the driver in completing the pre-trip inspection of the vehicle. This option is not a substitute for a complete pre-trip inspection. If any system of the vehicle does not pass inspection, the error must be corrected before operating the vehicle. The available pre-trip tests include the Exterior Light Inspection check, and the Air Leakage check.



### 1. Exterior Light Inspection

The Exterior Light Inspection function turns on all the exterior lights simultaneously. This allows the operator to start the test, exit the vehicle and do a visual check that all exterior lights function properly. Press ESCAPE button to end the test and turn off all the exterior lights.

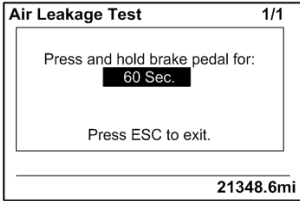
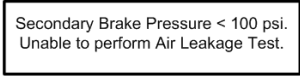
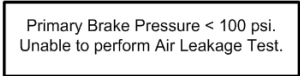


**2. Air leakage Monitor**

The Air Leakage check allows the driver to accurately measure the amount of air pressure drop in the front and rear brake air systems. After selecting this test from the DID, you are prompted to apply the service brake for 60 seconds. After applying and holding the service brake for 60 seconds, the DID will display the amount of pressure drop in the brake system.

Before starting the test through the DID, complete the following:

- a. Start the engine and check that the brake systems air pressure is greater than 100 psi.
- b. Turn engine off.
- c. Release the brakes and allow the system to settle (air gauge needle stops moving).
- d. Press the ENTER button to start the test.
- e. If the air tanks pressure is too low to perform the test (pressure must be greater than 100 psi), the following messages will appear.
- f. You must press and hold brake pedal for 60 seconds, as instructed.
- g. Once the brake pressure test is completed the pressure leak test results are displayed.

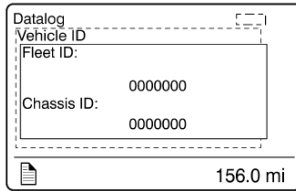


Pressure Leak Test Results

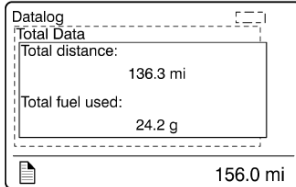
| Tank | Before | After | Drop |
|------|--------|-------|------|
| F    | 127    | 127   | 0    |
| R    | 129    | 129   | 0    |

(1)VEC 2044.6mi

### Data Log



#### 1. Vehicle ID

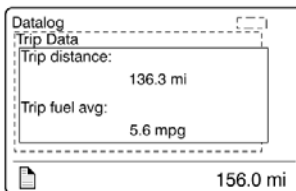


#### 2. Total Data

Total Data menu indicates the accumulated engine values that have been logged during the lifetime of the engine ECU.

Available information:

- Total distance traveled
- Total fuel used
- Total engine hours
- Total idle time
- Total PTO hours
- total engine revolutions

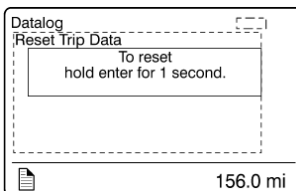


#### 3. Trip Data

This menu displays the trip information listed below. This function must be reset before each measurement (before each new trip or leg) using the Reset Trip Data menu.

Available information for the trip or leg is:

- Trip distance (miles or km)
- Trip fuel average (mpg, liter/100km; km/liter)
- Trip fuel used (gallons or liters)
- Trip duration on cruise control (hours)
- Trip duration with engine rpm greater than economy rpm (hours)
- Trip duration while engine rpm is greater than the desire maximum rpm RPM Limit set in Fleet Limits sub-menu (hours)
- Trip fuel used with engine rpm greater than the economy rpm (gallons/liters)
- Trip average speed (mph, km/h)
- Trip duration with speed greater than the maximum desired speed as set in Fleet Limits sub-menu (hours)
- Trip engine hours
- Trip duration on engine idle (hours)
- Trip fuel used while in engine idle (gallons, liters)

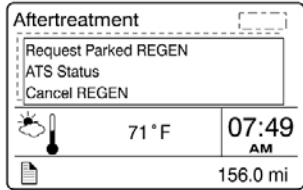


#### 4. Reset Trip Data

This menu can only be accessed if the correct password has been entered. Use this function to reset measurements of the Trip Data menu before each new trip or leg.

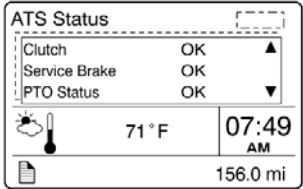
Aftertreatment

This menu permits to the driver to initiate a stationary regeneration, to check the status of the aftertreatment system and to interrupt regeneration.



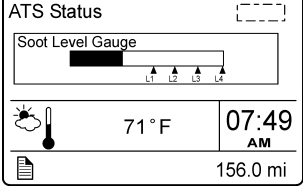
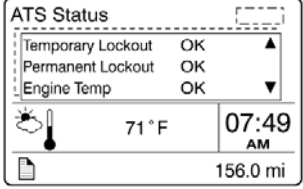
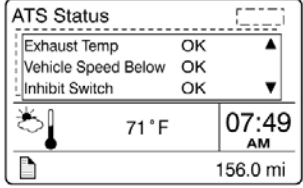
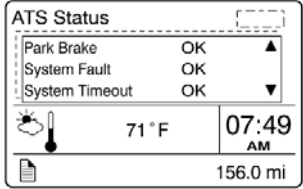
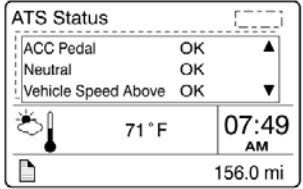
1. Request Parked REGEN

Use this function to initiate a stationary (parked) regeneration.



2. ATS Status

The Aftertreatment status sub-menus provide information about the conditions required for performing regeneration. The status can be OK (regeneration allowed), CHECK (regeneration not allowed) or N/A (not applicable). When ATS Status is selected, the following sub-menus are available.



Soot Level Gauge

From the ATS Status sub-menu, you can view the soot level for the Aftertreatment system. When the soot level is high, regeneration is necessary. L1, L2, L3 and L4 under the scale correspond to Level 1 up to Level 4 (see Diesel particulate filter clogging sequence – Engine indicator lamp).



**3. Cancel REGEN**

From the Aftertreatment main menu, you can cancel a REGEN cycle.

Password


Certain functions are password-protected. These passwords give the user access to all password-protected functions. The default password is 0000.

**1. Password**

The following menus are password-protected and marked with a key symbol in the menus:


- Change Password
- Fleet ID
- Reset Trip Data
- Fault Diagnostics
- Inactive Faults

**ENGINE BRAKE**

 **WARNING**

A vehicle speed retarding device (such as engine brake) is not intended to replace the service brake systems on your vehicle nor intended to bring your vehicle to a stop. A vehicle speed retarding device is only intended to reduce the speed of your vehicle under certain conditions.

Several types of engine brake can be installed or are standard on certain engines. All are used to reduce wear on the vehicle brake linings.

 **WARNING**

When descending significant grades, use the service brake as little as possible. If the engine does not slow the vehicle to a safe speed, apply service brake and shift to a lower range. Let the engine (and engine brake) slow the vehicle. Keep brakes cool and ready for emergency stopping.

**VOLVO ENGINE BRAKE (VEB)**

On vehicles equipped with the Volvo Engine Brake (VEB), the engine brake mode is by default, set to the AUTO mode (A) at vehicle start-up.

When running in AUTO (A) mode, the engine brake is gradually applied to 100% of the braking power when the driver **pushes the brake pedal**. Since AUTO (A) mode will not reduce vehicle momentum unless the brakes are applied, it will have no impact on fuel consumption.

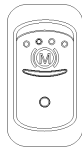
The driver can also choose two other modes using the steering wheel switches; Engine brake LOW (1) and engine brake HIGH (2).

When set to the engine brake LOW (1) mode, 50% of the engine brake power will be applied when the driver **releases the accelerator pedal**. Using engine brake HIGH (2) will apply 100% of the braking power.

It must be noted that since engine brake LOW (1) and engine brake HIGH (2) will reduce vehicle speed upon release of the throttle pedal, they may negatively impact fuel consumption if used for extended periods of time.

On vehicles equipped with an engine brake switch, it is possible to deactivate the engine brake (OFF mode). To do so, the driver must

press the engine brake switch located on the left side of the dashboard.







Engine Brake Switch


**NOTE**  
When using engine brake LOW ① or HIGH ② mode, pressing the steering switch OFF button will switch back to the default AUTO ④ mode.

**NOTE**  
Engine brake is safe to use in any road conditions including adverse conditions.

CRUISE CONTROL AND ENGINE BRAKE

When cruise control is enabled by the driver, the engine brake mode is forced to AUTO ④ mode and the engine brake will progressively engage up to 100% if the selected cruise speed is exceeded by approximately 2 Km/h (1.25 mph). Manually switching to engine brake LOW ① or HIGH ② using the steering switches will deactivate the cruise control.

| ENGINE BRAKE FORCE APPLIED ACCORDING TO SELECTED MODE AND DRIVER PEDAL POSITION |   |                    |
|---|---|--------------------|
| ENGINE BRAKE MODE   | DRIVER PEDALS   | ENGINE BRAKE FORCE |
| (OFF)   | ANY POSITION  | 0%                 |
| (A)   | ACCELERATOR PEDAL RELEASED<br> | 0%                 |
| (A)   | BRAKE PEDAL PUSHED<br>         | 100%               |
| ①   | ACCELERATOR PEDAL RELEASED<br> | 50%                |
| ②   | ACCELERATOR PEDAL RELEASED<br> | 100%               |

| CRUISE CONTROL & SPEED   | ENGINE BRAKE MODE | ENGINE BRAKE FORCE |
|--|-------------------|--------------------|
| <br>+<br>CRUISE SPEED SET<br>+ 2 Km/h | (OFF)             | 0%                 |
|  | (A)               | UP TO 100%         |
|  | ①                 | N/A                |
|  | ②                 | N/A                |

ENGINE BRAKE FORCE APPLIED WITH CRUISE CONTROL

**NOTE**  
On vehicles equipped with the Allison transmission, if cruise control is enabled, the current engine brake mode is saved in the vehicle computer (MCM) memory and the engine brake mode is set to Auto mode ④. When the cruise control is disabled, the engine brake mode changes back to the mode saved in the MCM memory.

## 5-24 Other Features

### ANTILOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS), TRACTION CONTROL SYSTEM (TCS) & ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL (ESC)

#### ANTILOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS)

The purpose of the Antilock Braking System (ABS) is to maintain vehicle stability and control during braking and to minimize the stopping distance in any road condition.

On slippery roads and more generally in emergency situations, over-braking frequently induces wheel locking. Wheel locking greatly increases braking distance on any road surface. Locked wheels also impede directional control and cause severe tire abrasion. An antilock braking system provides maximum braking performance while maintaining adequate control on slippery roads.

The basis of ABS is constant monitoring of wheel parameters during braking. Sensors on each wheel of the front and drive axles constantly measure wheel speed during braking. This information is transmitted to a four-channel electronic processor which senses when any wheel is about to lock. Modulating valves quickly adjust brake pressure (up to 5 times every second) to prevent wheel lock. Each wheel is therefore controlled according to the available grip.

In this way, the vehicle is brought to a stop in the shortest possible time while remaining stable and under the driver's control.



#### WARNING

Vehicles following ABS-equipped vehicles may not be able to brake as fast on slippery roads.

#### TRACTION CONTROL SYSTEM (TCS)

TCS controls wheel spin during vehicle acceleration to improve traction.

- The TCS system will intervene automatically and apply braking pressure to a spinning wheel transferring engine power to the other drive wheel that have better traction. This feature is active only at speeds below 25 mph (40 km/h).

- If all of the drive wheels begin to spin, the TCS system will reduce engine throttle to improve traction at all of the drive wheels.

If drive wheels begin to lose traction during acceleration, TCS will engage automatically to assist the driver in accelerating the vehicle. The TCS/ESC lamp will flash rapidly to let you know whenever TCS is actively functioning.

#### ELECTRONIC STABILITY CONTROL (ESC)

The ESC stability system is an optional feature for ABS-equipped vehicles that reduces the risk of rollovers and loss of control. The ESC system features include the RSP Roll Stability Program and Yaw Control.

The RSP system counteracts the tendency of a vehicle to tip over while changing direction (typically, while turning).

To reduce the risk of rollover, the RSP system detects potential rollover conditions and slows the vehicle both by reducing engine throttle (and hence, engine torque) and by applying service brakes as needed at the appropriate wheels.



#### WARNING

During an RSP system intervention, the vehicle **automatically decelerates**. The RSP system can slow the vehicle with or **without you applying the brake pedal, and even when you are applying the throttle**.

During an RSP system intervention, you can always use your service brake pedal to increase the braking pressure that will be applied. However, if you were to apply less braking pressure than needed or even if you release the brake pedal entirely during an intervention, the RSP system will continue to apply the necessary amount of braking pressure automatically to the appropriate wheels to mitigate a potential rollover.

Yaw Control is a feature that reduces the risk of loss of control. If a vehicle's tires start to slide during a turn, Yaw Control counteracts the tendency of that vehicle to spin (or yaw), thereby reducing the risk of loss of control. Many factors, including road conditions, load distribution and driving behavior, can contribute to the development of a spin.



#### WARNING

In the case where a vehicle equipped with the ESC system pulls a trailer, the latter must be equipped with ABS.



**CAUTION**

Even with ESC-equipped vehicles, the driver remains responsible for ensuring vehicle stability during operation.

**NOTE**

*For further details, consult “ Bendix ABS Operator’s Manual”.*

**DRIVER CONTROLLED DIFFERENTIAL LOCK (DCDL)**

**NOTE**

*The DCDL system is not available on vehicles equipped with a ZF A-132 drive axle.*

By actuating the electric switch, the driver can lock or unlock differential action.

The purpose of the DCDL is to provide maximum vehicle traction and control on unfavorable road surfaces. When the DCDL is actuated, a clutch collar completely locks the differential case, gearing, and axle shafts together. This feature maximizes traction to both wheels. The lock position will also protect against spinout damage to the differential. The DCDL should not be actuated when favorable road conditions exist.

**OPERATION TIPS**

1. The DCDL can be locked or unlocked if the vehicle is standing still or moving at a constant low speed when the wheels are not spinning, slipping, or losing traction.
2. When the DCDL is locked, operate the vehicle at low speeds. DCDL will not engage and will disengage in speed higher than 5 MPH (8 km/h).
3. When the DCDL is locked, the vehicle’s turning radius will increase. This condition is called “understeer.” The driver must use caution, good judgment and drive at low speeds when operating the vehicle with the DCDL locked.

4. Always unlock the DCDL as soon as the need for maximum traction has passed and the vehicle is traveling on a good road.
5. Do not lock the DCDL when the wheels are slipping or losing traction, or damage to the axle can result.
6. Do not lock the DCDL when the vehicle is traveling down steep grades, or potential loss of vehicle stability could occur.

**LOCKING THE DCDL**

When encountering poor road conditions where maximum traction is needed, follow the recommended procedures:

1. Without the wheels spinning, slipping or losing traction, flip the DCDL control switch to the “LOCK” position while maintaining a constant vehicle speed.
2. Let up momentarily on the accelerator to relieve torque on the gearing, allowing the DCDL to lock.
3. When the DCDL is fully locked, the vehicle will have an “understeer” condition when making turns. Proceed cautiously over poor road conditions.

**UNLOCKING THE DCDL**

When the vehicle can safely operate and driving conditions have improved, disengage the DCDL following the recommended procedures:

1. Flip the control switch to the “UNLOCK” position, when the vehicle is stopped or when traveling at low speed while the wheels are not spinning, slipping or losing traction.
2. Let up momentarily on the accelerator to relieve torque on the gearing, allowing the DCDL to unlock.
3. Resume driving at normal speed using good driving judgment.

**KNEELING SYSTEM**

This system lowers the front end, enabling passengers to get on and off the coach without any difficulty.

**NOTE**

*This coach is equipped with an interlock system which automatically applies the*



## 5-26 Other Features

*parking brake when the kneeling system is activated.*

To operate, stop the coach, set the transmission to neutral (N), then push down the rocker switch located on the dashboard. (Refer to "Controls & Instruments" chapter). The parking brake will be applied automatically and a status line pictogram will appear on the DID to indicate that the front of the coach is being lowered.

To raise the front of the coach to its normal height, push up the rocker switch. The front end will rapidly rise up. The system will release the parking brake and shift the transmission to the previously selected range.

### CAUTION

Avoid parking the coach too close to the sidewalk or to other obstacles which could damage the coach during kneeling.

### NOTE

*Kneeling activation is disabled when the entrance door is open.*

### NOTE

*The kneeling system does not operate when the coach is traveling over 5 mph (8 km/h). Consequently, the driver cannot inadvertently operate the kneeling system at higher speeds.*

## RETRACTABLE TAG AXLE

The standard tag axle retraction system is controlled by a valve located on the right lateral console. The valve can be switched to either the WHEELS UP or WHEELS DOWN position. The axle will be raised or lowered by air pressure according to the valve position. Refer to "Controls & Instruments" chapter.

The tag axle service brakes operate only when the tag axle is in the WHEELS DOWN position. Never lower the tag axle while the coach is moving. When the tag axle is in the WHEELS UP position, the corresponding indicator light will illuminate. The indicator light will start flashing and an audible alarm will sound to warn the driver if the vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h) with tag axle raised. The tag axle can be raised in tight maneuvering areas like in a parking lot or to make it easier to turn a short corner. The tag axle shortens the wheelbase and allows tighter turning. Raising the tag axle

transfers extra weight and additional traction to the drive wheels providing improved control on slippery roads.

### CAUTION

Do not use tag axle in raised position for an extended period. Raising tag axle increases load on the drive axle, suspension and tires.

Do not drive vehicle with tag axle raised when speed is exceeding 12 mph (20 km/h).

In order to prevent damage to the suspension, always raise the tag axle before lifting the coach.

## TAG AXLE AUTOMATIC UNLOAD

To reduce the turning radius, the air springs pressure will be automatically reduced by 75% when the coach is moving at speed lower than 5 mph (8 km/h) and with more than 1½ turn from the steering.

## IN-STATION LIGHTING

The in-station lighting system circuit is linked with the optional battery charger: When the charger is connected to an external power source, the in-station lighting circuit can be energized without depleting the batteries.

The receptacle used for the battery charger is located on the main power compartment door.

## ENGINE COOLANT HEATER

This optional auxiliary heating system is used for preheating and retaining the heat of water-cooled engines. It can be used before startup to ease starting and to provide rapid operation of the interior heating system. It can also be used with the engine running to maintain coolant heat and interior temperature.

The heater operates independently of the engine. It is connected to the cooling system, heating circuits and to the vehicle's fuel and electrical system.

### WARNING

The coolant heating system uses the same

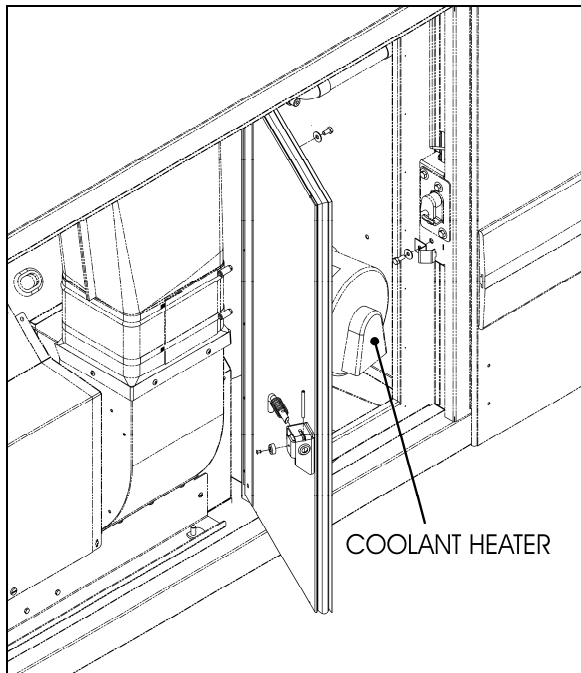
fuel as the engine. Do not operate in a closed building or while refueling. Operate only in a well ventilated area.

### SWITCHING THE HEATER ON

The timer light illuminates when the heater is switched *ON*. Air is forced in to flush out the combustion chamber of residual gases and the water circulation pump begins operating. The fuel metering pump delivers fuel in precise amounts to the combustion chamber, where fuel and combustion air form a combustible mixture which is ignited by the ignition unit.

Once the flame sensor has signaled to the control unit that combustion has taken place, the ignition unit is switched *OFF*.

Hot combustion gases are diverted at the end of the flame pipe and are then forced through the indirect heating surfaces of the heat exchanger. The heat exchanger transfers the heat to the coolant water passing through the heat exchanger.



LOCATION OF PREHEATER

18607

The heater is thermostatically controlled and operates intermittently (i.e., the switched-on time of the burner varies depending on the heat requirement). The water temperature is controlled by the built-in water thermostat.

The water circulation pump remains in operation as long as the heater is operating, even during

the regulated intervals and during the delayed cut-out of the heater. The pump can also be operated independently of the heater by means of an appropriate circuit. The heater can be switched *ON* at any time (i.e., during the delayed cut-out period). Ignition takes place after the delayed cut-out time expires.

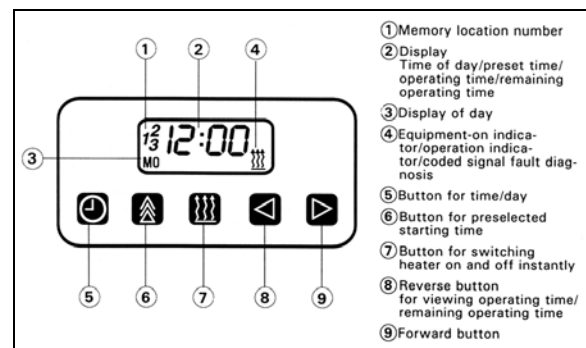
### SWITCHING THE HEATER OFF

The fuel supply is interrupted when the heater is switched *OFF*. This causes the flame to go out and a delayed cut-out of 2.5 minutes begins. The circulating combustion air flushes the remaining combustion gases out of the chamber and cools off the heated parts on the exhaust side of the heat exchanger. The water circulation pump continues to transfer the latent heat present in the heat exchanger, thus preventing hot spots. Once the delayed cut-out time expires, both the combustion air blower and the water circulation pump switch *OFF* automatically. A cut-out will automatically take place in case of heater failure. Refer to Technical Information chapter for additional information.

### COOLANT HEATER TIMER

The timer, located on L.H. lateral console is used to program the starting and stopping time of the preheating system and to give Fault Codes. The system indicator light, located on the timer, illuminates when the system is functional. Your vehicle is equipped with timer A or timer B.

### TIMER A: OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS



TIMER

22223

These instructions refer to the Spheros timer illustrated above.

## 5-28 Other Features

### Remaining Operating Time

The remaining operating time refers to the period of time the heater still continues to remain in operation. It may be changed while the heater is in operation.

### Setting the Digital Timer

After the power has been connected, all symbols on the digital display are flashing. The time of the day and the day of the week must be set.

All flashing symbols of the timer can be set by means of the Forward (9) or Reverse (8) buttons.

When buttons (8) and (9) are pressed for more than 2 seconds, the quick digit advance mode is activated.

### Setting the Time and Day of the Week

1. Press button (5) for more than 2 seconds (time display flashes).
2. Press (8) or (9) button to set the time of day.
3. Wait 5 seconds. The time of day is stored (day of week flashes).
4. Press (8) or (9) button to set the correct day of week.
5. Wait 5 seconds. The day of week is stored.

### Viewing the Time (Ignition ON)

Continuous display of current time and day of the week.

### Viewing the Time (Ignition OFF)

Briefly press button (5) to display current time and day for 5 seconds.

### Switching Heater ON (Instant Heating) With Ignition ON

Press button (7). Heater is switched on (continuous operation) and continues to operate until button (7) is pressed again or ignition is switched off.

**NOTE**

*If the ignition is switched off while heater is in operation, the remaining operating time of 15 minutes flashes on the display and the heater will continue to operate for this period of time.*

### Switching Heater ON (Instant Heating) With Ignition OFF

Press button (7). Heater is switched on for preset operating time (the factory-set heater operating duration is 60 minutes)

### Switching Heater OFF

Press button (7). The heater starts its after-run cycle and switches off thereafter.

### Presetting Starting Time

1. Press button (6). Memory location number flashes.

**NOTE**

*By repeatedly pressing button (6), starting time 2 or 3 can be preset.*

2. Press button (8) or (9) until correct startup time is set.
3. Wait 5 seconds. Preset starting time is stored and day of week flashes.
4. Press button (8) or (9) to select the correct startup day of week.
5. Wait 5 seconds. The startup day of week is stored.

The number of memory location remains on the display. The timer is now in the programmed mode and will switch the heater on at the preset time.

**NOTE**

*We recommend that memory locations 1 and 2 be used for presetting times within 24 hours of setting the timer. Memory location 3 can be used for a starting time within the next 7 days of setting the timer.*

### Recalling Preset Times

Press (6) repeatedly until the desired memory location number and preset time are displayed.

Canceling Preset Time

Press button (6) repeatedly until no more memory location number is visible on the display.

Setting Operating Time

1. With heater off, press button (8). Operating time flashes.
2. Press button (8) or (9) to set the operating time (between 1 and 120 minutes)
3. Wait 5 seconds. Operating time is stored.

The heater remains in operation for the preset time (except for continuous operation).

Setting the Remaining Operating Time



1. With heater in operation, press button (8). Remaining operating time flashes.
2. Set remaining time with button (8) or (9).
3. Wait 5 seconds. Remaining operating time is stored.

|                   |          |
|-------------------|----------|
| 6. Selection DOWN | F. Error |
| 7. Display        | G. Time  |
|                   | H. Day   |

These instructions refer to the timer illustrated in Figure 1. They are the same instructions provided in the Spheros instruction booklet, provided with your vehicle.

Set Time And Day

Select 12h or 24h mode

6. Push menu-button (2) to show menu row at the top of the display (1). 
7. Push selection button (3) or (6) until setting sign (D) is blinking. 
8. Push enter button (5) to open hour mode options.
9. Push selection button (3) or (6) to switch between 12h and 24h modes. The display shows **HH 12** or **HH 24**.
10. Push enter button (5) to confirm mode.

TIMER B: OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS

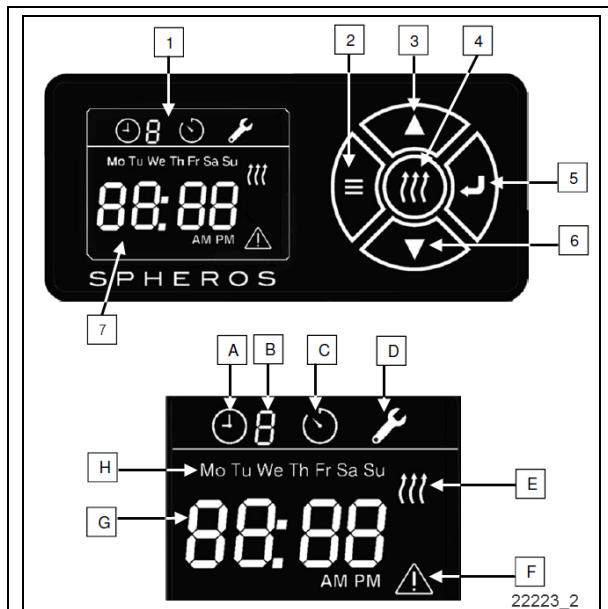

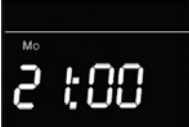



FIGURE 1: PREHEATER TIMER

|                    |                               |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Menu row        | A. Preselection time          |
| 2. Menu-button     | B. Active/deactivate starting |
| 3. Selection UP    | C. Operating time             |
| 4. Instant heating | D. Setting sign               |
| 5. Enter           | E. Preheater on               |

Set Time And Day With 24h Mode Selected

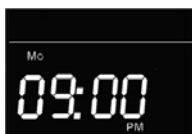
1. Display shows. 
2. Push selection button (3) or (6) until you get the right day of the week.
3. Push enter button (5) to confirm day.
4. Push selection button (3) or (6) to adjust hours.
5. Push enter button (5) to confirm hours.
6. Push selection button (3) or (6) to adjust minutes.
7. Push enter button (5) to confirm minutes and to return to standard display. 

Set Time And Day With 12h Mode Selected

1. Display shows. 



## 5-30 Other Features

2. Push selection button (3) or (6) until you get the right day of the week.
3. Push enter button (5) to confirm day.
4. Push selection button (3) or (6) to adjust hours.
5. Push enter button (5) to confirm hours.
6. Push selection button (3) or (6) to adjust minutes.
7. Push enter button (5) to confirm minutes: Display shows **AM**.
8. Push selection button (3) or (6) to switch between **AM** and **PM**.
9. Push enter button (5) to confirm and return to standard display.



### ADJUST OPERATING TIME

The operating time is the period, when the preheater is ON through pushing the instant heating button or after activating a starting time.

1. Push menu-button (2) to show menu row at the top of the display (1). 
2. Push selection button (3) or (6) until setting sign (C) is blinking. 
3. Push enter button (5) to show the adjusted operating time.
4. Push selection button (3) or (6) to adjust the operating time.
5. Push enter button (5) to confirm the operating time and to show standard display.

### ADJUST REMAINING TIME

The remaining time is the period, when the preheater remains ON after ignition is switched OFF.




If the ignition is switched OFF while the preheater is ON, the remaining time can be adjusted.

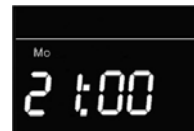
1. Push selection button (3) or (6) to adjust remaining time.
2. Push enter button (5) to confirm.

Preheater stops automatically after remaining time is over. The remaining time will not be

saved. It has to be adjusted and confirmed every further time. If the remaining time is not confirmed within 10 seconds, the preheater stops.

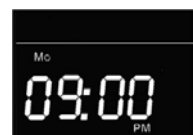
### SET A STARTING TIME

1. Push menu-button (2) to show menu row at the top of the display (1). 
2. Push selection button (3) or (6) until setting sign (A) is blinking. 
3. Push enter button (5) to make starting time number to appear. 
4. Push selection button (3) or (6) to browse the starting time numbers.
5. Push enter button (5) to choose the starting time you wish to setup: display shows day and time and next step day can be adjusted.
6. Push selection button (3) or (6) to adjust day.
7. Push enter button (5) to confirm day.
8. Push selection button (3) or (6) to adjust hours.
9. Push enter button (5) to confirm hours.
10. Push selection button (3) or (6) to adjust minutes.
11. Push enter button (5) to confirm minutes: standard display appears.



Only in 12h-mode after adjustment of time:

12. Push selection button (3) or (6) to switch between AM and PM.
13. Push enter button (5) to confirm: standard display appears.





### *NOTE*

Seven starting times are available for a period of seven days, but only one starting time can be active.

For safety reasons a starting time can only be activated for the same or next day.





Activation for Sunday and Monday is possible on Friday; activation for Monday is possible on Saturday.

**ACTIVATE STARTING TIME**



1. Push menu-button (2) to show menu row at the top of the display (1). 
2. Push selection button (3) or (6) until activate start sign (B) is blinking. 
3. Push enter button (5) to confirm.
4. Push selection button (3) or (6) to browse starting times (programmed days and times appear in the display according to the starting time number).
5. Push enter button (5) to activate the chosen starting time: activated starting time and the chosen number appear in the display.



**DEACTIVATE STARTING TIME**


1. Push menu-button (2) to show menu row at the top of the display (1). 
2. Push selection button (3) or (6) until deactivate start sign (B) is blinking. 
3. Push enter button (5) to confirm.
4. Push selection button (3) or (6) until sign  and sign  appear in the display.
5. Push enter button (5) to confirm.

**START/STOP INSTANT HEATING**

1. To start preheater, push instant heating button (4) when ignition is ON; sign is blinking. 
2. If the preheater runs well, the sign stops blinking and appears permanently in the display.
3. To stop preheater, push instant heating button (4). 

**OPERATING TIME WITH INSTANT HEATING**

1. Push instant heating button (4) when ignition is OFF: operating time value appears in the display.

2. Push selection button (3) or (6) to adjust operating time.
3. Push enter button (5) to confirm: Sign  appears and the preheater will operate for the adjusted time.

**NOTE**  
Date and time have to be adjusted in the settings before using instant heating.

**Operational Failure Symptoms via Fault/Flash code**


On preheaters equipped with a fault diagnosis system using coded light signals, the equipment-on indicator/operation indicator flashes. Refer to the following table.


**PREHEATER TROUBLESHOOTING AND MAINTENANCE**


Refer to the Spheros manual for more information.

**NOTE**  
If there are no preheater faults, the preheater will go through a normal start cycle and regulate based on thermostat setting.

**NOTE**  
Switch on the preheating system briefly about once a month, even during the warm season.

 **CAUTION**  
When welding on the vehicle, disconnect the preheater module connector in order to protect this system from voltage surges.

 **CAUTION**  
To avoid running down the batteries, do not turn on the preheating system for more than one hour before starting the engine.

 **WARNING**  
The preheating system uses the same fuel as the engine. Do not operate in a building or

## 5-32 Other Features

while refueling. Operate only in a well-ventilated area.

### NOTE

*If there are no heater faults, the heater will go through a normal start cycle and regulate based on thermostat setting.*

## WHEELCHAIR LIFT SYSTEM

Read and understand the RICON Service/Owner Manual before attempting to use the wheelchair lift. The instructions below are a quick reference and serve to complement the information provided by RICON.



### WARNING

To operate the optional wheelchair lift, the coach must be parked on a flat and level surface, with the parking brake applied.

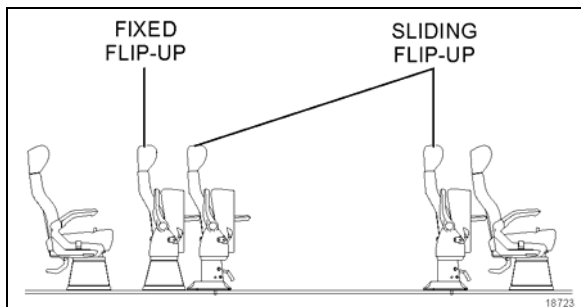
Activate the lift mechanism circuit by pressing down on the wheelchair rocker switch on the dashboard.

### NOTE

*Vehicle flashers will activate when pressing the WCL power switch.*

## INTERIOR APPOINTMENTS

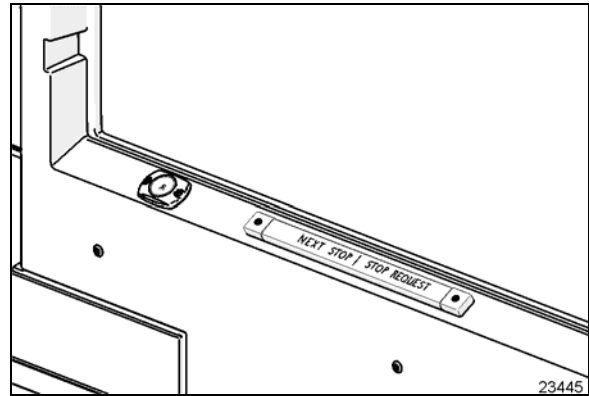
To accommodate a wheelchair, one row of seats must be folded and two rows must be folded and slid away. Seats may be folded on both sides of the coach to make room for a second wheelchair.



POSSIBLE SEATING ARRANGEMENT

Electrical wheelchair or tri-wheeler may require moving the sliding seats on both sides of the coach to allow enough turnaround space.

Wheelchair occupants have access to a stop request switch and a reading light switch on the window sill of the wheelchair area door.



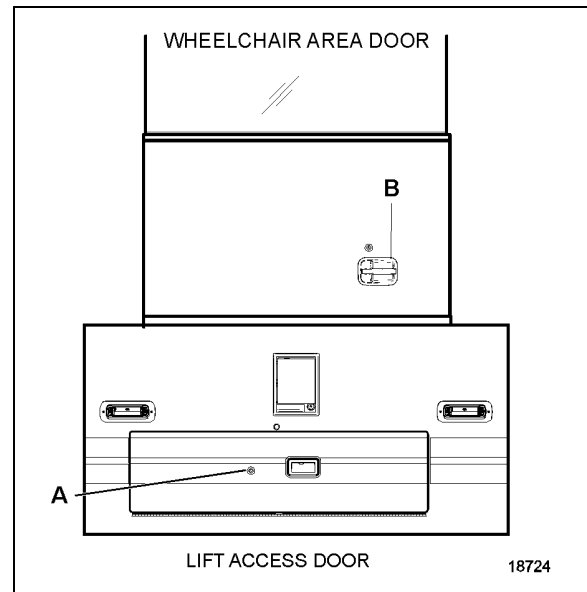
READING LIGHT AND STOP REQUEST SWITCHES

### NOTE

*Refer to "Coach Interior" section for additional information.*

## WHEELCHAIR LIFT SYSTEM DOORS

To open the wheelchair lift system doors, the coach must be parked on a flat and level surface with the parking brake applied and transmission in neutral gear.



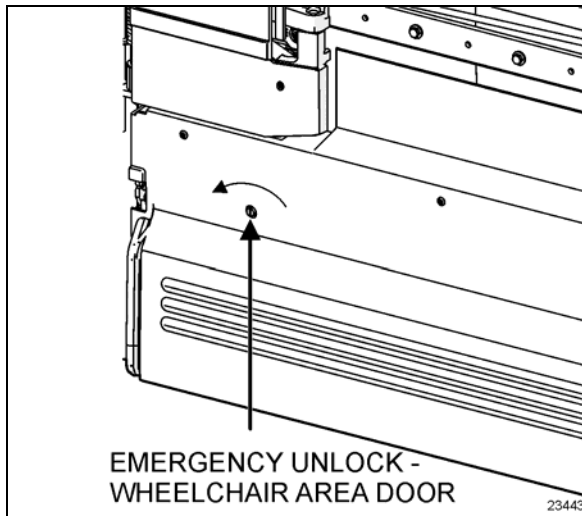
WHEELCHAIR LIFT SYSTEM DOORS

Unlock the lift access door (A). Open the lift mechanism access door and carefully lower. Pull the wheelchair access door operating handle in the left section of the lift mechanism compartment and swing the door until locked.

open. If the parking brake is not activated, a switch in the door will activate the parking brake when it detects the door is open.

The wheelchair area door is fitted with an electric lock and will unlock when the lift reaches intermediate height.

In the event of a power loss, unlocking the door is possible from inside the vehicle. Release door lock by turning the slotted emergency unlock mechanism.



EMERGENCY UNLOCK ON WHEELCHAIR AREA DOOR

To close the wheelchair area door, pull on the handle (B) to release the locking mechanism and slide back the door in closed position.

A light inside the vehicle illuminates the doorway when the wheelchair access door is open.

A pictogram appears on the DID when the lift mechanism access door or the wheelchair access door is open. Refer to Controls and Instruments section.

When either the lift mechanism access door or the wheelchair access door is open, the parking brake cannot be released and the transmission gear selector will not register any gear selection.

**NOTE**  
The activation switch must be in the ON position for this interlock feature to be in effect.

If in motion and the access door opens, a telltale light will illuminate and an audible alert will sound.

OPERATING THE WHEELCHAIR LIFT

**WARNING**

Inspect the lift before each use as described in the RICON Owner's manual. If any unsafe condition exists, or if unusual noises or movements are noticed, DO NOT use and contact an authorized RICON dealer for repair.

**WARNING**

Read and comply with all warning labels and symbols affixed to the wheelchair lift.

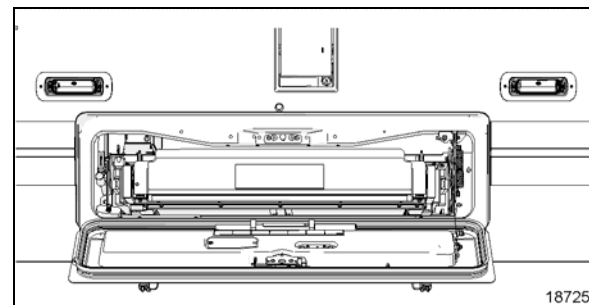
**WARNING**

Do not operate with a load in excess of 800 lbs (362 Kg).

**WARNING**

Use extreme care when rolling on or off the platform and lock the wheelchair brakes while stationary on the platform. Make sure the wheelchair fits safely on the platform. Keep arms and legs away from moving parts.

- Before operating lift, be certain vehicle is safely parked on a level area away from traffic. Provide at least 10 feet (3 meters) space for lift operation and passenger boarding.
- The lift operator must take special care to ensure that area is clear before deploying platform. Be certain there are no obstacles beneath platform.
- Open lift access door completely.



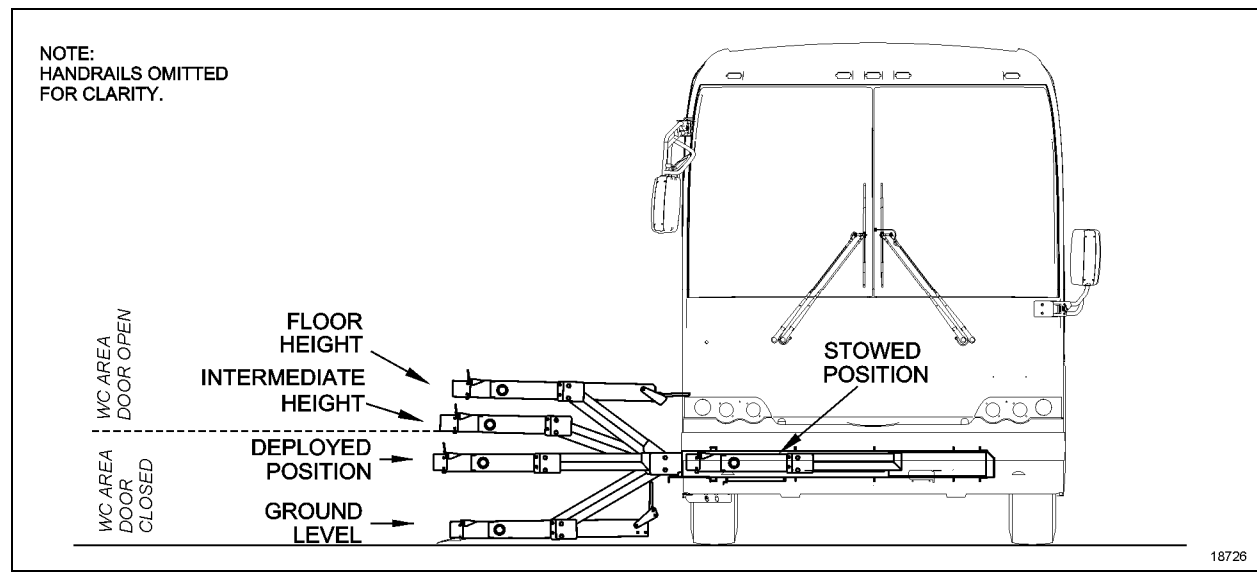
LIFT ACCESS DOOR OPEN



## 5-34 Other Features

- The vehicle and lift are equipped with a safety interlock system (i.e. transmission into neutral, parking brake applied). Be certain that it is in the proper mode before attempting to operate lift. The lift will not operate until this feature has been properly engaged.
- Turn on wheelchair lift power switch located on the dashboard.
- Enable lift control pendant by turning on POWER switch located on pendant.
- A person that uses the wheelchair lift while standing (does not require mobility aid equipment) is referred to in this manual as a Standee.

### CONTROL PENDANT



WHEELCHAIR LIFT POSITIONS

Normal Lift Operation – To Enter Vehicle

1. **ACTIVATE INTERLOCK:** Make sure parking brake is set and transmission is in neutral. Read “Before operating the wheelchair lift” guide above.
2. **DEPLOY PLATFORM:** Buckle safety belt. Press and hold DEPLOY button until platform is fully deployed. NOTE: Platform cannot be moved up or down unless platform is fully extended.
3. **RAISE HANDRAILS:** Lift right handrail to vertical and push firmly down into its socket. Repeat for left handrail. Verify that both handrails are latched in place by attempting to pull upward on them.
4. **LOWER PLATFORM:** Press and hold DOWN button until platform stops at ground level and rollstop opens completely.
5. **BOARD PLATFORM:** Position wheelchair in center of platform, facing outward if possible, and advise occupant to lock wheelchair brakes. Power should be turned off on electric-powered wheelchairs. Standee must stand near the center of the platform, facing in the direction of travel (into vehicle), and firmly grasp handrails. Do not stand on bridgeplate.
6. **BUCKLE SAFETY BELT.** Pull safety belt from retractor on left handrail and fasten to other handrail.
7. **PARTIALLY RAISE PLATFORM:** Press and hold UP button until platform stops at intermediate height. The wheelchair area door should unlock automatically.
8. **OPEN WHEELCHAIR AREA DOOR:** Fully open vehicle sliding door located above lift. The lift operator, or attendant should do this.
9. **RAISE PLATFORM:** Press and hold UP button until platform stops at floor height and bridgeplate lowers onto vehicle floor.
10. **EXIT PLATFORM:** Advise passenger to carefully enter vehicle.
11. **LOWER HANDRAILS:** Press release button at base of handrail and lift the left handrail

upward out of its socket. Lower handrail to platform. Repeat for right handrail. Buckle safety belt.

12. **STOW PLATFORM:** Press and hold STOW button. Close wheelchair area door at intermediate height. Press and hold STOW button until platform reaches STOW height and then fully retracts into vehicle.
13. **CLOSE DOOR.** Close the lift access door.

NOTE: Do not use DOWN button to lower platform partway prior to stowing, and then complete the stowing process by using IN button. This method may not properly stow platform.

Normal Lift Operation – To Exit Vehicle

1. **ACTIVATE INTERLOCK:** Make sure parking brake is set and transmission is in neutral. Heed “Before operating the wheelchair lift” guide above.
2. **DEPLOY PLATFORM:** Press and hold DEPLOY button until platform is fully deployed.
3. **RAISE HANDRAILS:** Lift right handrail to vertical and push firmly down into its socket. Repeat for left handrail. Verify that both handrails are latched in place by attempting to pull upward on them.
4. **BUCKLE SAFETY BELT.** Pull safety belt from retractor on left handrail and fasten to other handrail.
5. **PARTIALLY RAISE PLATFORM:** Press and hold UP button until platform stops at intermediate height. The wheelchair area door should unlock automatically.
6. **OPEN VEHICLE DOOR:** Fully open vehicle sliding door located above lift. The lift operator, or attendant should do this.
7. **RAISE PLATFORM:** Press and hold UP button until platform stops at floor height and bridgeplate lowers onto vehicle floor.
8. **BOARD PLATFORM:** Position wheelchair in center of platform, facing outward if possible, and advise occupant to lock wheelchair brakes. Power should be turned off on electric-powered wheelchairs. Standee must stand near the center of the platform, facing in the direction of travel (out

## 5-36 Other Features

of vehicle), and firmly grasp handrails. Do not stand on bridgeplate.

9. LOWER PLATFORM: Press and hold DOWN button until platform stops at ground level and rollstop opens completely.
10. UNBUCKLE SAFETY BELT.
11. EXIT PLATFORM: Carefully assist passenger off of platform.
12. LOWER HANDRAILS: Press release button at base of handrail and lift the left handrail upward out of its socket. Lower handrail to platform. Repeat for right handrail. Buckle safety belt.
13. STOW PLATFORM: Press and hold STOW button. Close wheelchair area door at intermediate height. Press and hold STOW button until platform reaches STOW height and then fully retracts into vehicle.
14. CLOSE DOOR. Close the lift access door.



### WARNING

Inspect the lift before each use as described in the RICON Owner's manual. If any unsafe condition exists, or if unusual noises or movements are noticed, DO NOT use and contact an authorized RICON dealer for repair.



### WARNING

Read and comply with all warning labels and symbols affixed to the wheelchair lift.



### WARNING

Do not operate with a load in excess of 660 lbs (300 Kg).

### NOTE

*The restraint belt acts as a safety device and it prevents raising or lowering the lift when not buckled.*



### WARNING

Use extreme care when rolling on or off the platform and lock the wheelchair brakes while stationary on the platform. Make sure the wheelchair fits safely on the platform. Keep arms and legs away from moving parts.

### NOTE

*The indicator light on the control device illuminates when power is supplied (when the lift electrical circuit is activated by the power switch on the dashboard).*

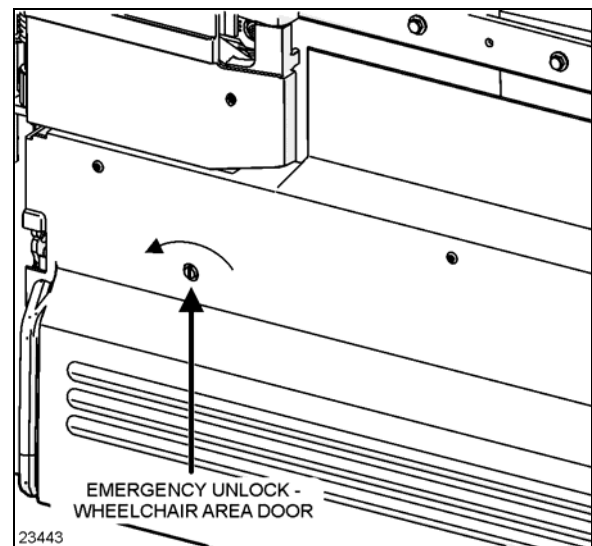
## EMERGENCY OPERATION

In the event of electrical power loss, manual operation of the lift is possible as explained below. It is recommended that manual operation be used only to exit from vehicle, not to enter vehicle.

### Wheelchair Area Sliding Door Emergency Unlock

In the event of a power loss, the wheelchair area door can be unlocked from the inside of the vehicle.

Unlock by turning the slotted knob with a quarter or a similar flat object.

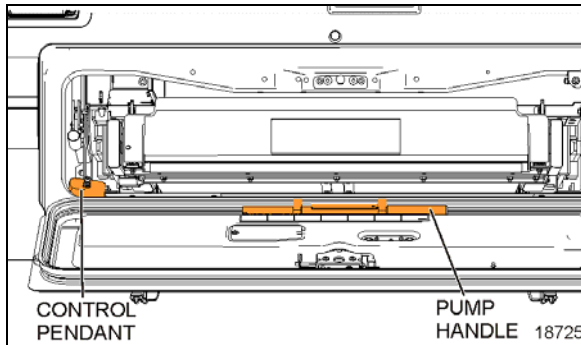


EMERGENCY UNLOCK ON WHEELCHAIR AREA DOOR

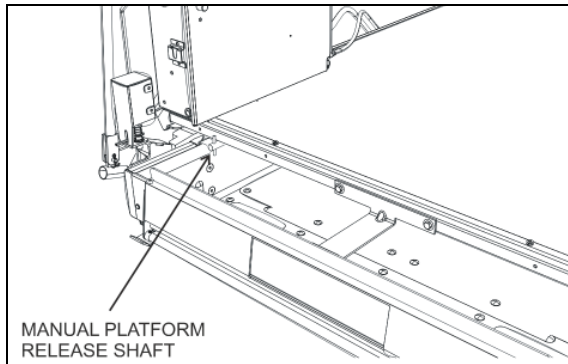
To Manually Deploy The Platform

Allow enough space for lift operation and passenger boarding. If a break down situation exists and the vehicle cannot be moved so that the lift system can be operated safely, the operator must summon emergency assistance to move the vehicle before operating the lift.

1. Fully open wheelchair access and lift doors. Ensure that there are no obstacles in the path of the lift.



WHEELCHAIR LIFT MANUAL OPERATION

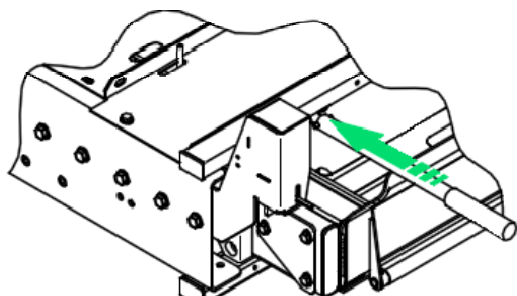


MANUAL PLATFORM RELEASE SHAFT 23334

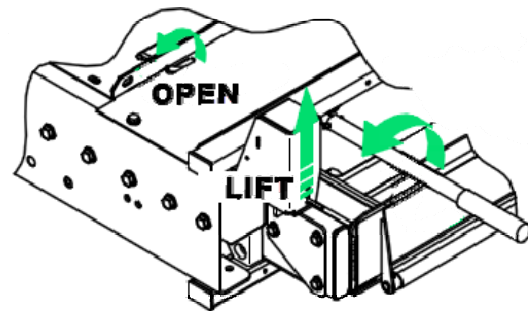
2. Take the manual backup pump handle attached to the inner side of the lift mechanism access door.

**NOTE**

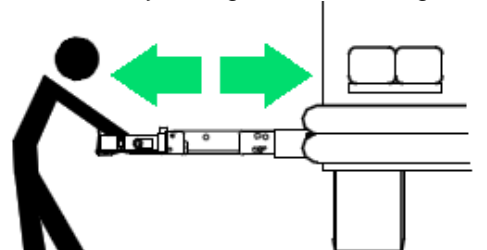
*A second manual backup pump handle is secured inside the manual pump box .*



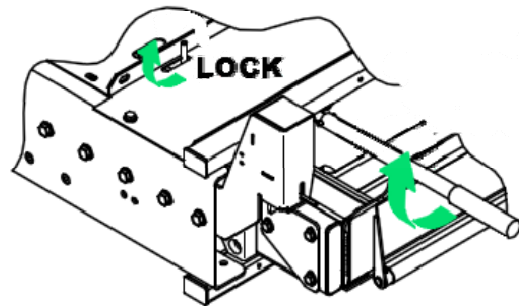
3. Turn the manual platform release shafts counterclockwise using manual backup pump handle extension to disengage the platform and then lift the stowlock mechanical catch.



4. Grasp the platform and pull firmly until the lift is all the way out against the carriage stops.



5. Turn the manual platform release shafts using pump handle extension back to previous position to lock the platform.

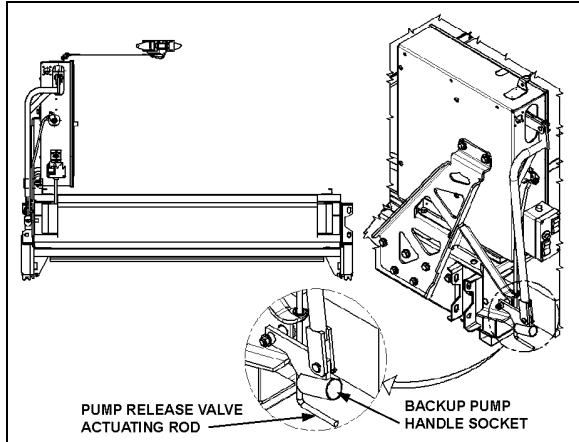


6. Lift right handrail to vertical and push firmly down into its socket. Repeat for left Handrail.

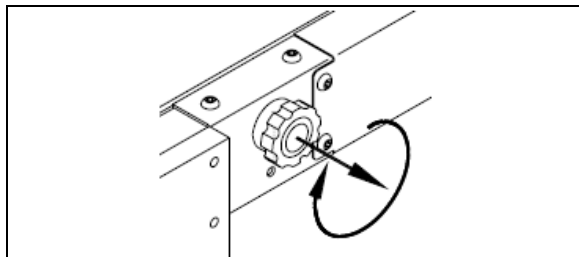
## 5-38 Other Features

### To Manually Raise The Platform

1. Take the manual backup pump handle attached to the inner side of the lift mechanism access door.
2. Close the manual backup pump release valve by pushing the actuating rod DOWN (pumping the handle raises the platform when the release valve is closed).



WHEELCHAIR LIFT MANUAL BACKUP PUMP



CLOCKWISE ROTATION CLOSSES ROLLSTOP

23275

3. Verify that rollstop is up (closed). Pull rollstop control knob out and rotate fully clockwise, if it isn't up.
4. Insert handle extension into manual backup pump handle socket and pump to raise the platform to the vehicle floor level.



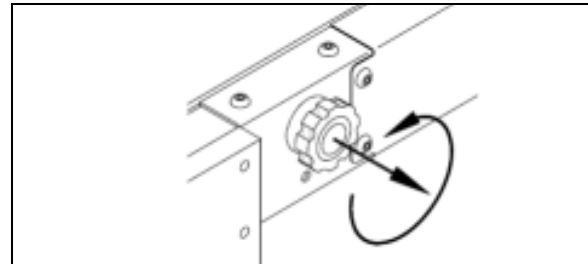
### CAUTION

During manual rising of the lift, do not raise the platform more than 1-1/2 inches above the vehicle floor level. Any excessive travel will make it difficult to enter the platform and/or damage the lift bridge plate actuator. The outer edge of the bridge plate must rest squarely on the vehicle floor.

5. The lift passenger and attendant must follow the instructions to ENTER or EXIT the vehicle, as previously described.

### To Manually Lower The Platform

1. Verify that rollstop is up (closed). Pull rollstop control knob out and rotate clockwise, if it isn't up.
2. Slowly pull the manual backup pump release valve actuating rod UP until the platform begins to lower (opening the release valve lowers platform).
3. Allow the platform to reach ground level.
4. Push the manual backup pump release valve actuating rod back DOWN until lightly-snug.
5. Using the rollstop manual control knob, OPEN the rollstop. Pull rollstop control knob out and rotate fully counterclockwise. Rollstop must lie flat on ground.



COUNTERCLOCKWISE ROTATION OPENS ROLLSTOP

6. The attendant and lift passenger should follow the instructions to ENTER or EXIT the vehicle, as described previously.

### To manually stow the platform

In the unlikely event of a hydraulic system failure and the manual backup pump is inoperative, the lift may be stowed as follows by **two or more able-bodied people**.




### WARNING

The platform is heavy and should be lifted using caution and proper lifting technique: Always lift with legs and not the back when attempting to lift heavy objects.

1. Detach the restraint belt, lift each handrail up to unlock and fold handrails. Re-fasten restraint belt.

2. Raise or lower the platform to the deploy/stow position; the platform frame must be parallel to the side of the lift enclosure. If the exact position cannot be obtained, slightly low is preferred to slightly high.
3. Using the rollstop manual control knob and one hand one the rollstop, close the rollstop until it latches.
4. Turn the manual platform release shafts using manual backup pump handle extension to disengage the platform.
5. Use one person on each side of the lift to prevent mechanical binding.
6. With fingers up and palms forward, push the platform forcefully to start the lift moving inward. As the lift begins to move inward, maintain a constant pushing motion until the lift comes to rest completely inside the lift enclosure.

|  |                  |
|--|------------------|
|   | <h2>WARNING</h2> |
| <p>When re-inserting platform into compartment, make sure that carriage wheels are properly aligned over the L. H. side triangular rail.</p> |                  |

7. Push firmly and make sure that the platform manual release shafts have turned to lock the platform.

### THRESHOLD WARNING SYSTEM (TWS) ADJUSTMENT

There are three verifications to perform; 1) Adjust Aiming of Acoustic Sensor Beam, 2) Test Aim of Acoustic Sensor Beam, and 3) Adjust Acoustic Sensor Timing.

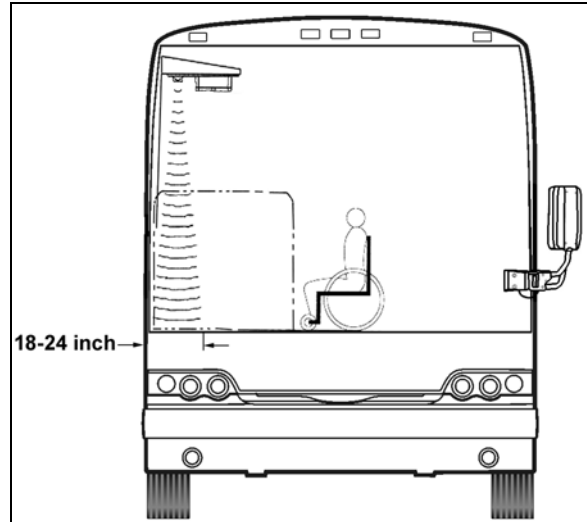
Adjustment of the sensor timing is done at the factory and should not need to be repeated in the field. Readjustment should only be considered if the sensor aiming could not be adjusted to ignore both the wheelchair in the aisle and the platform during its normal movement.

#### Adjust Aiming Of Acoustic Sensor Beam

1. Place wheelchair with passenger in center aisle of coach, pointed at doorway where Threshold Warning System (TWS) is

installed. The TWS should not detect a wheelchair and passenger when they are located this far from doorway.

2. Turn power to lift on (LED on TWS module will light steady) and indicator light on the control device illuminates. If wheelchair and passenger are detected by acoustic sensors the LED will flash, the buzzer will sound and the module red light will flash. If this occurs it is necessary to adjust aiming of sensors.

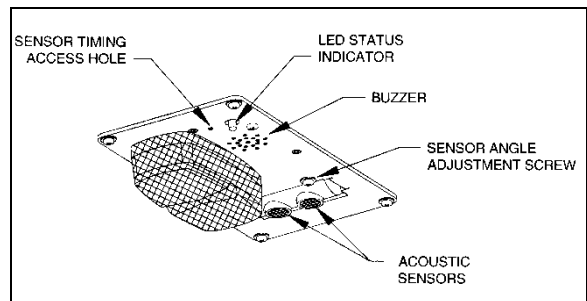


TWS AREA 23371

3. Turn sensor angle adjustment screw clockwise to move direction of beam away from center aisle and towards doorway. Stop adjustment when LED ceases to flash.

|  |
|--|
| <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p><i>Only in rare instances will adjustment be needed in the counterclockwise direction.</i></p> |
|--|

4. Move centerline of small wheels of wheelchair (with passenger) to within 24 inches of doorway and repeat aiming procedure in previous step.



TWS MODULE DETAIL 23368

## 5-40 Other Features

### Test Aim of Acoustic Sensor Beam

1. Move wheelchair and passenger slowly towards doorway. TWS should detect wheelchair and passenger (LED will flash, buzzer will sound and the module red light will flash) when centerline of front wheels is between 18 and 24 inches from doorway.
2. Open vehicle access door above lift. Lower platform to ground and place wheelchair and passenger at rear of platform. Bridgeplate should be up. Raise platform to floor level. This normal platform motion with wheelchair and passenger aboard should not actuate TWS. If LED does flash (buzzer will also sound and module red light will flash), turn sensor adjustment screw slightly counterclockwise.

#### **NOTE**

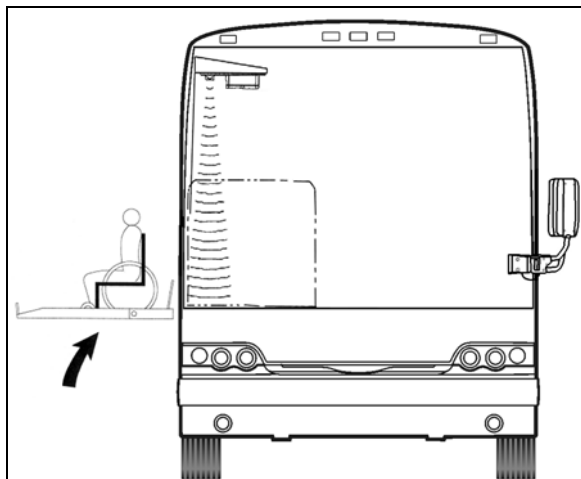
*If an adjustment is made, repeat the previous step where wheelchair is between 18 and 24 inches from doorway.*

### Adjust acoustic sensor timing

1. Support a flat sheet of cardboard or similar material, directly beneath TWS module at a distance of 4½ feet below module. Sheet must be facing sensors.

#### **NOTE**

*Before proceeding, visually inspect sensors to verify that they are pointing directly at floor, or nearly, and are not pointing off at an extreme angle.*



CHECKING NORMAL PLATFORM POSITION

23372

2. Note the sensor timing access hole. This hole provides access to a plunger-actuated

switch that sets the sensor timing. Insert a 1/16-inch diameter wire-like object into the access hole and press the plunger inward. The LED will flash momentarily while the module establishes the distance and then remain on steady. Release the plunger when the LED ceases to flash.

#### **NOTE**

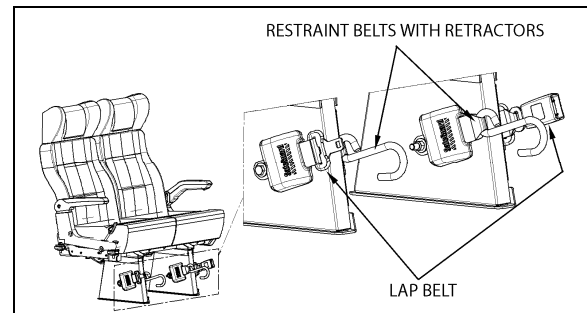
*It is important that objects, such as your body, tools, seats, etc., do not interfere with the beam while the adjustment is being made.*

## WHEELCHAIR RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

### 4-POINT SECUREMENT WITH ANCHORAGE TO PASSENGERS SEAT PEDESTALS

This securement system includes:

- Two (2) sets of four (4) wheelchair restraint belts and retractors with anchorage to passengers seat pedestals.
- Occupant securements: lap and shoulder belt.



### WHEELCHAIR AND OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEM

To secure the wheelchair, four restraint belts must be used (at all four corners). Hook one wheelchair restraint belt to each corner of the wheelchair frame (**not the wheels**) and allow the retractors to tension the belts.

To remove the restraint belts, push down on the tension release lever found on the retractor. Unhook the wheelchair and allow the belts to retract. Guide the belts in, making sure they remain untwisted as they retract.

Wheelchair Occupant Restraint

Secure the wheelchair occupant in the following manner:

Fasten and adjust the lap belts so it sits snug across the hips. Make sure that you place the lap belt buckle on the center aisle side. Fasten the shoulder belt by inserting the lap belt tab into the shoulder belt buckle. A retractor adjusts shoulder belt length automatically.

**WARNING**

A snug fit with the lap belt positioned low on the hips is necessary to maximize safety. The belt should not be worn or twisted. Avoid pinching the belt and/or hardware. Do not wear over rigid or breakable objects such as eyeglasses, pens or keys as these may cause injuries.

**CAUTION**

The safety belt buckle provided with the red release button must always be located on the center aisle side.

To unfasten the belts, press the red release button on the shoulder belt buckle first and then unfasten the lap belt by pressing the red release button on the lap belt buckle.

WHEELCHAIR LIFT REMOVAL FOR STORING OR MAINTENANCE PURPOSES

Disconnect WCL system connector located at compartment ceiling.

Remove 4 fixing bolts located inside compartment, on each side of platform.

Grasp the platform and pull firmly, sustaining a constant pull so that the platform slides onto the rails until the carriage come in contact with the stops.

Pull the platform until the rear carriage hit against the stops.

Remove platform completely.

**WARNING**

For better stability, keep the platform at minimum height when moving.

**WARNING**

Before moving platform, make sure that floor is level and free of obstacles.

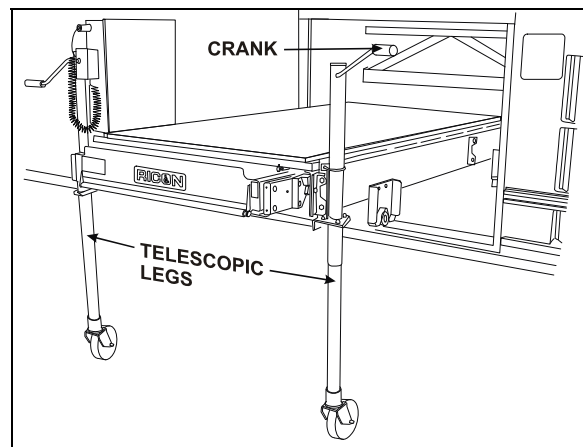
WHEELCHAIR LIFT REMOVAL FOR STORING OR MAINTENANCE PURPOSES

Secure the first two telescopic legs onto the platform.

**NOTE**

*There are two telescopic legs for each platform side. The proper side is indicated onto the telescopic leg.*

Turn telescopic leg crank to raise the carriage to be able to clear the stops.



INSTALLATION OF TELESCOPIC LEGS 23333

Pull the platform until the rear carriage hit against the stops.

Secure the two rear telescopic legs onto the platform then turn telescopic leg crank to be able to clear the stops.

Remove platform completely.

Lower the platform to minimum height using the telescopic leg cranks before moving it.

**WARNING**

For better stability, keep the platform at minimum height when moving.

**WARNING**



## 5-42 Other Features

---

Never deploy the platform from enclosure while standing on the telescopic legs.



### WARNING

Telescopic legs were designed to support and move the platform only, do not use as a work table.



### WARNING

Before moving platform, make sure that floor is level and free of obstacles.

Secure the 4 fixing bolts located inside compartment, on each side of platform. **Apply a torque of 60 lbf-ft.**

Reconnect connector located at compartment ceiling.



### WARNING

When re-inserting platform into compartment, make sure that carriage wheels are properly aligned over the L. H. side triangular rail before removing telescopic legs.

### WHEELCHAIR LIFT INSTALLATION

Lower the front of the platform.

Push firmly and make sure that the platform manual release shafts have turned to lock the platform.

Secure the 4 fixing bolts located inside compartment, on each side of platform. **Apply a torque of 60 lbf-ft.**

Reconnect connector located at compartment ceiling.

### WHEELCHAIR LIFT INSTALLATION

Raise the platform to proper level.

Insert the platform so that the rear carriage clears the stops.

Turn telescopic leg crank until the carriage comes in contact with the rails.

Remove the two rear telescopic legs from the platform.

Insert the platform until the front carriage clears the stops.

Lower the front of the platform.

Remove the two front telescopic legs from the platform.

Push firmly and make sure that the platform manual release shafts have turned to lock the platform.

**STARTING THE ENGINE..... 2**

    STARTING FROM THE DRIVER’S SEAT .....2

    STOPPING THE ENGINE .....2

    STARTING FROM THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT.....2

    STOPPING THE ENGINE .....3

    COLD WEATHER STARTING .....3

    JUMP STARTING.....3

**ENGINE PROTECTION SYSTEM ..... 5**

    AUTOMATIC ENGINE SHUTDOWN .....5

**IDLE SHUTDOWN TIMER ..... 5**

**ENGINE BLOCK HEATER ..... 6**

**ENGINE WARM-UP..... 6**

**ALLISON TRANSMISSION WARM-UP..... 6**


**STARTING THE VEHICLE AFTER A FIRE ALARM..... 6**


### STARTING THE ENGINE


In normal circumstances, the engine should be started from the driver's seat. However, a rear-start panel in the engine compartment permits starting the engine from that location, mainly for maintenance purposes.

#### STARTING FROM THE DRIVER'S SEAT

- Make sure the starter selector switch located in the engine compartment is set to the *ENABLE* position and that the battery master switch (master cut-out) located on the rear electrical panel is set to the *ON* position.
- Apply the spring-loaded parking brake by pulling the parking brake control button all the way up;
- Place transmission in neutral;
- Turn ignition key to *START* position (refer to Controls and Instruments chapter), release the key after the engine starts.
- Brake pedal must be applied when selecting Drive (D) otherwise the transmission will stay in neutral (N).

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
|   | <b>CAUTION</b> |
| Do not engage starter for more than 15 seconds at a time. If engine does not start within 15 seconds, release ignition key and let starter cool for one minute before attempting to restart. |                |

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
|   | <b>CAUTION</b> |
| Do not press accelerator pedal before starting. This could result in an electronic control unit fault and degrade the fuel system control. |                |


|  |                |
|--|----------------|
|   | <b>CAUTION</b> |
| Special precautions are necessary with turbocharged engines to avoid possible turbine damage. After starting, run the engine at normal idle for two minutes to allow lubricating oil to reach the turbocharger then run the engine at fast idle. Let oil pressure reach normal operating range before driving. |                |


|   |
|---|
| <i>NOTE</i>   |
| <i>If engine does not start, return key to OFF position before attempting to restart.</i> |

|   |
|---|
| <i>NOTE</i>   |
| <i>If the accelerator pedal is depressed before starting, release and wait 30 seconds before attempting to restart.</i> |

#### STOPPING THE ENGINE


- Apply parking brake and place transmission in neutral (N);
- Allow engine to idle for at least two minutes before shutting engine *OFF*. This insures that the turbine speed drops and allows time for the engine exhaust gas temperature to drop to about 300°F (150°C);
- Shut off all electrical loads;
- Turn the ignition key to the *OFF* position.

|   |                |
|---|----------------|
|  | <b>CAUTION</b> |
| Do not shut <i>OFF</i> engine when running above normal idle.                       |                |

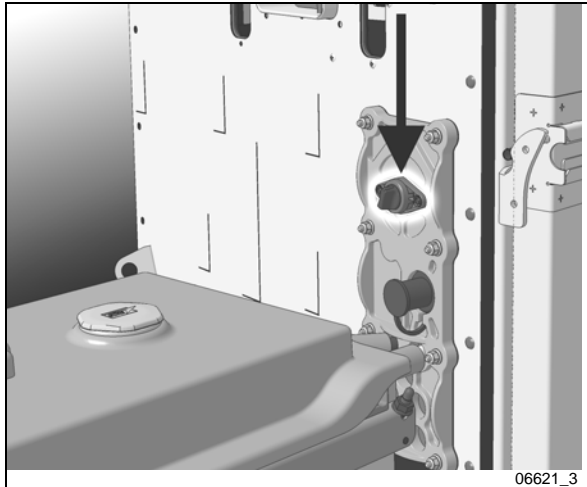
|  |                |
|--|----------------|
|   | <b>CAUTION</b> |
| Set the battery master switch (master cut-out) to the <i>OFF</i> position after parking and when left unattended for an extended period of time. |                |

#### STARTING FROM THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Switches to start and stop the engine from inside the engine compartment are mounted on a small panel above the air filter.

|  |               |
|--|---------------|
|                                   | <b>DANGER</b> |
| Apply parking brake and place transmission in neutral (N) before starting engine from inside the engine compartment. |               |

Set the battery master switch and ignition to the ON position;



BATTERY MASTER SWITCH

**DANGER**

Do not wear loose clothing when working near engine. Stand clear of rotating components.

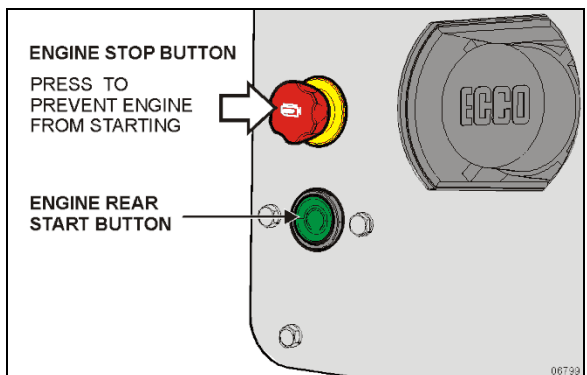
Press the rear start button to start engine from engine compartment

When servicing the engine, push the engine STOP button to prevent the engine from being started from the dashboard ignition key or the rear start button.

Once servicing is done, pull or twist the button to allow normal engine start.

**CAUTION**

Refer to cautions in “Starting From The Driver’s Seat” in this chapter



REAR START PANEL

**DANGER**

Rotating shafts can be dangerous. You can snag cloths, skin, hair, hands, etc. This can cause a serious injury or death. Do not work on a shaft (with or without a guard) when the engine is running.

**STOPPING THE ENGINE**

Press the red engine STOP button while the engine is running to stop the engine.

**CAUTION**

Do not stop engine by any other method.

**COLD WEATHER STARTING**

When starting a cold engine, the intake air should be warmed up by using the intake air preheater. Turn the ignition switch to the ON position. The preheater will not engage at coolant temperature above 54°F (12°C). If the coolant temperature is below 54°F (12°C), the preheater will engage and will light the preheater telltale between 0 and 50 seconds, depending on the engine coolant temperature. Wait before the preheater telltale has turned off before starting the engine.

If necessary, once the engine has started, the preheater will reengage (post heating) for the same length of time as the preheat time.

**WARNING**

Do not use ether or other combustibile starting aid fluid on any engine equipped with an intake air preheater. If the engine is equipped with a preheater, introduction of ether or similar starting aids could cause a fire or explosion resulting in severe property damage, serious personal injury or death.

Engines not equipped with an intake air preheater may, depending on coolant temperature, take longer to start. If this should happen, DO NOT release the ignition key until the engine has started (while still observing the 15 second maximum cranking time).

**JUMP STARTING**

In order to avoid damage to solid-state electrical components, it is important that jumper (booster)

## 6-4 Starting and Stopping Procedures

cables be used correctly and only in emergencies. To jump start, use another 24 volt DC, negative grounded, power source. Use only jumper cables rated at 500 cranking amperes.



### DANGER

Injury, explosion, battery acid damage or charging system overload may result if these jump starting procedures are not precisely followed.



### WARNING

Wear eye protection and remove rings, metal jewelry and watches with metal bands.



### DANGER

The gases given off by batteries while jump starting are explosive. Do not smoke near batteries.



### DANGER

The battery could rupture or explode if jump started when the run-down battery fluid is frozen or if the battery fluid level is low. Check condition of run-down battery before attempting to jump start.



### CAUTION

Do not let the two vehicles touch. Keep a walk-through distance between the two vehicles. Make sure positive (red) and negative (black) jumper cable clamps do not touch.



### CAUTION

Never connect the jumper cable to the negative terminal post of the run-down battery.



### WARNING

Before attempting to jump start, make sure the parking brake is applied and the transmission is in neutral (N). Turn off all lights, heaters and other electrical accessories.

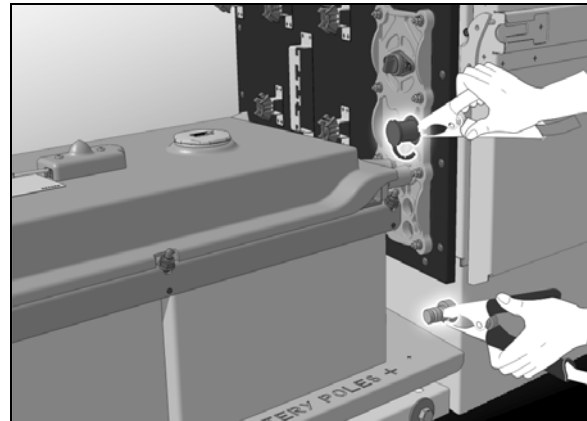


### CAUTION

Choose a booster vehicle which produces comparable amperage as your vehicle.

To jump start, proceed as follows:

1. Remove the protective cap from the booster block terminal located in the R.H. side engine compartment;
2. Connect one end of the red jumper cable to the positive (+) post of the booster power source. If the good battery is in another vehicle, that vehicle's engine must be shut **OFF** before connecting;
3. Connect the other end of the same red jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on the booster block;
4. Connect one end of the black jumper cable to the negative (-) post on the booster power source;
5. Connect the other end of the same black jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal on the booster block; If the good battery is in another vehicle, start that vehicle's engine;



**BOOSTER BLOCK LOCATION**

06623

6. Let the engine run for a few minutes, then start the vehicle with the run-down battery;
7. Disconnect the jumper cables in reverse order given in steps 2 through 5;
8. Install protective cap on the booster block terminal.

### NOTE

*Jumper cables must be rated at 500 cranking amperes. If jumper cable length is 20 feet (6 m) or less, use 2/0 (AWG) gauge wires. If cable length is between 20 to 30 feet (6 to 9 m), use 3/0 (AWG) gauge wires.*

## ENGINE PROTECTION SYSTEM

The engine protection will automatically derate or stop the engine when certain engine conditions reach a critical stage.

In the event of a serious fault, the red STOP telltale light comes on and an audible alarm will sound if the engine is running.



An illuminated STOP telltale light indicates a serious problem has been detected, and the driver must respond immediately to the problem. The vehicle must be safely pulled off the road and stopped. In some instances, the engine must be switched off immediately.

## AUTOMATIC ENGINE SHUTDOWN

Prior to an actual automatic shutdown, the engine will automatically derate, go to idle, and then stop as the vehicle speed gets below 2 mph (3 km/h).

The engine shutdown protection will automatically derate and stop the engine when one or more of the conditions listed below reaches a critical point:

- High engine coolant temperature
- High engine oil temperature
- Low engine oil pressure
- High crankcase pressure (rate of change)

After the automatic engine shutdown sequence, the engine may be restarted. To do so, turn the ignition switch to the OFF position during 7 seconds and then turn it back to ON. However, it will only operate for 30 seconds unless the problem is resolved.

Use this function sparingly and in order to move the vehicle to a safe parking place only. Excessive use may result in severe engine damage.

## IDLE SHUTDOWN TIMER

The optional idle shutdown timer is programmed to shut down the engine after a specific engine idling time. The idling time cannot be changed by the driver but can be changed with the use of a laptop computer and Premium Tech Tool. In this case, the engine idling time can be set from 30 seconds up to 1 hour.

The engine will shut down at the set time under the following conditions:

- Vehicle speed is 0;
- Engine is running at normal idle speed;
- Engine coolant temperature above 120°F (49°C);
- Temperature inside vehicle is between 59°F (15°C) and 81°F (27°C);
- Parking brake applied;
- Transmission into neutral (N);
- Wheelchair lift system not in use;

Pressing the fuel pedal will prevent engine shutdown and restart countdown.

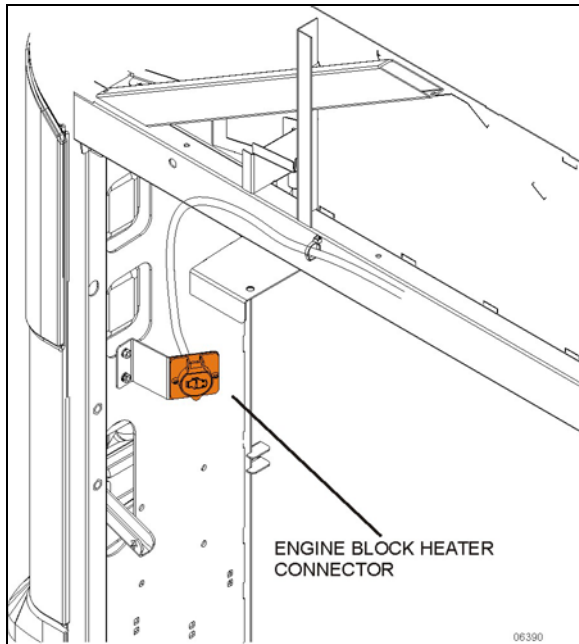


### WARNING

Failure to take necessary action when the STOP telltale light is on can ultimately result in automatic engine derate and shutdown.

### ENGINE BLOCK HEATER

The vehicle may be equipped with an engine immersion-type electric block heater to assist cold weather starting. Using an extension cord, connect to a 110 - 120 VAC outlet.



**BLOCK HEATER 120 VOLT CONNECTOR**



### CAUTION

Connect only to a 110-120 VAC power source. Use only grounded (three prongs) extension cords with a minimum rated capacity of 15 amps. Disconnect the extension cord before starting. Before driving, make sure the extension cord is disconnected and the engine compartment door is closed.

### ENGINE WARM-UP

After starting the engine, keep the parking brake applied and let the engine run at normal idle for two minutes to allow lubricating oil to reach the turbocharger. Increase engine speed to fast idle, using the FAST IDLE switch located on the dashboard for five minutes, without loading the engine. Monitor the gauges and indicator lights to make sure all conditions are normal. If an abnormal condition is observed, stop the engine immediately and have the condition corrected.



### DANGER

Never let the engine run in an enclosed, non-ventilated area. Engine exhaust fumes contain dangerous gases which can be fatal if inhaled. Before warming up the engine, open the door(s) or move the vehicle outside.

### NOTE

*The engine will reach normal operating temperature shortly after driving. Avoid driving at full throttle until engine coolant temperature reaches 140°F (60°C).*

### ALLISON TRANSMISSION WARM-UP

When the transmission temperature falls below -20°F (-29°C), the CHECK TRANS telltale light illuminates after the engine is started, and a reminder tone will sound. In this case, the transmission will be locked in neutral (N) until the transmission temperature rises above -20°F (-29°C) and the CHECK TRANS telltale light goes out. The transmission will only operate in first or reverse gears until it reaches normal operating temperature.

### STARTING THE VEHICLE AFTER A FIRE ALARM

The vehicle may be started after a fire alarm without resetting the system. Refer to section 7 SAFETY FEATURES AND EQUIPMENT under "Fire suppression system (AFSS)" for the complete procedure.

# Safety Features and Equipment 7-1

---

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>EMERGENCY EXITS</b> .....  | <b>2</b>  |
| SIDE WINDOWS .....  | 2         |
| VENTILATION / EMERGENCY EGRESS HATCH .....  | 2         |
| EMERGENCY ENTRANCE DOOR OPENING .....   | 3         |
| <b>EMERGENCY EQUIPMENT</b> .....  | <b>4</b>  |
| FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEM (AFSS) .....  | 4         |
| STARTING THE VEHICLE AFTER A FIRE ALARM.....  | 5         |
| TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) .....  | 6         |
| 20 LBS FIRE EXTINGUISHER.....   | 9         |
| WARNING REFLECTORS .....  | 9         |
| SPARE PARTS KIT.....  | 9         |
| “LIMP-HOME” BELT .....  | 9         |
| <b>SPARE WHEEL</b> .....  | <b>10</b> |
| CHANGING A WHEEL .....  | 10        |
| <b>JACKING POINTS</b> .....   | <b>11</b> |
| HYDRAULIC JACK.....   | 12        |
| LIFTING AND TOWING .....  | 12        |
| TOWING WITHOUT LIFTING.....   | 14        |
| <b>DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS</b> .....   | <b>14</b> |
| <b>FOG LIGHTS</b> .....   | <b>15</b> |
| <b>COMPARTMENT LIGHTING</b> .....   | <b>15</b> |
| <b>MUD FLAPS AND SPLASH GUARDS</b> .....  | <b>15</b> |
| <b>BACK-UP CAMERA</b> .....   | <b>15</b> |
| <b>BACK-UP ALARM</b> .....  | <b>15</b> |
| <b>ESSENTIAL FUNCTIONS TO OPERATE THE VEHICLE (BASIC LIMP-HOME FUNCTIONS)</b> ..... | <b>15</b> |
| AVAILABLE FUNCTIONS.....  | 15        |

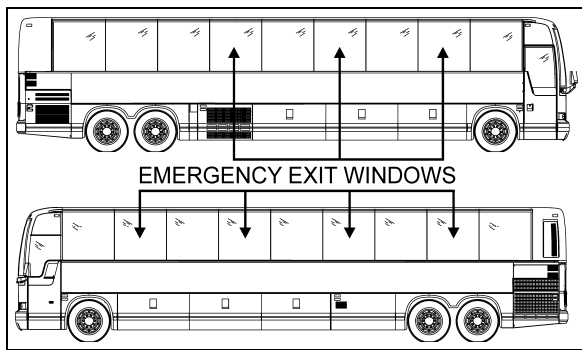


**EMERGENCY EXITS**

Locate and learn how to use all possible emergency exits. It is good practice to inform passengers of the location of exits and how to use them in case of an emergency.

**SIDE WINDOWS**

Some side windows can be opened from the inside for emergency exit. A decal located on the bottom of each passenger window indicates the location of the nearest emergency exit. Also, blue lights close to the wall in the overhead storage compartments illuminate the emergency exit decals. These lights illuminate when the general lighting switch is on.

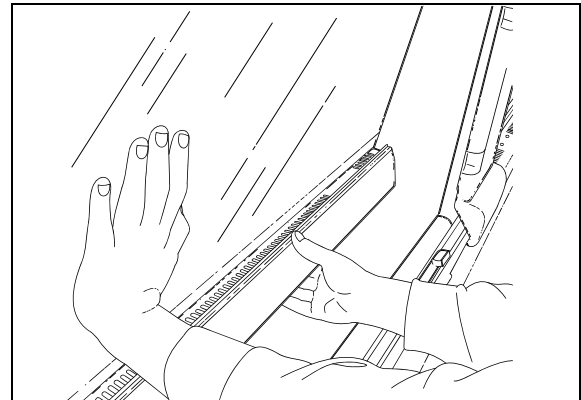


**EMERGENCY EXIT WINDOWS (X3-45)** 18617

To open a side window emergency exit, tilt up the release bar and push the bottom of the window outwards, as illustrated below. The window is hinged from the top and will not fall out.

A telltale light on the dashboard illuminates when a window is opened. Refer to Controls and Instruments chapter for more information.

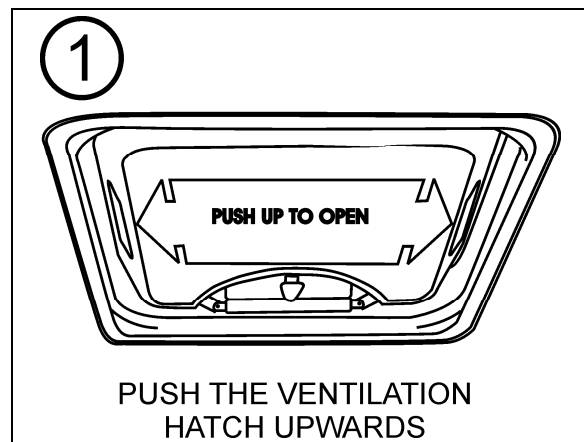
To close the window, tilt up the release bar and pull the window back. Push down the release bar to lock shut.

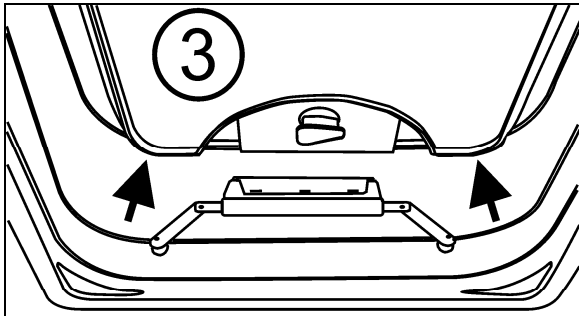


**SIDE WINDOW EMERGENCY EXIT** 18391

**VENTILATION / EMERGENCY EGRESS HATCH**

Roof ventilation/emergency egress hatches, designed to be opened by occupants are installed in the ceiling at the front and the rear of the vehicle. The hatches can serve as emergency exits. In case of an emergency, push the ventilation hatch upwards (1). Turn knob ¼ turn (arrow pointing "TO EXIT") and then push knob to release the hatch (2). Push the escape hatch outwards (3). A decal with operating instructions is located on the hatch.





**PUSH THE ESCAPE HATCH OUTWARDS**

**ROOF VENTILATION / EMERGENCY EGRESS**

**NOTE**

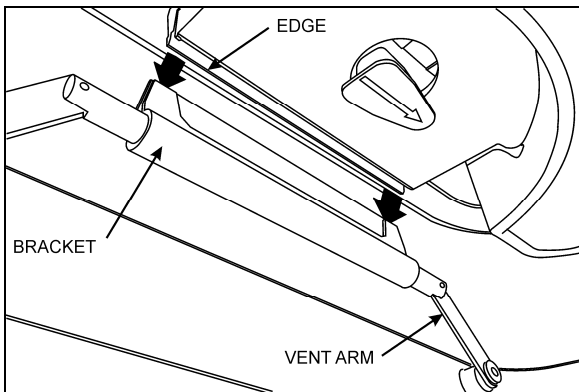
*In the event of ventilation blower motor failure, the roof hatch may be used to aid ventilation by pushing the hatch upwards.*



**CAUTION**

Be aware of reduced vehicle overhead clearance when driving under overpasses with the roof hatch open.

To latch escape hatch after use, vent arms must be pushed upright in FULL OPEN VENT position. Insert edge firmly between the two sections of the bracket and then return knob to original position (arrow pointing "LATCHED") to lock the hatch. Finally, pull the hatch in to closed position, one side at a time.



**ROOF ESCAPE LATCHING**

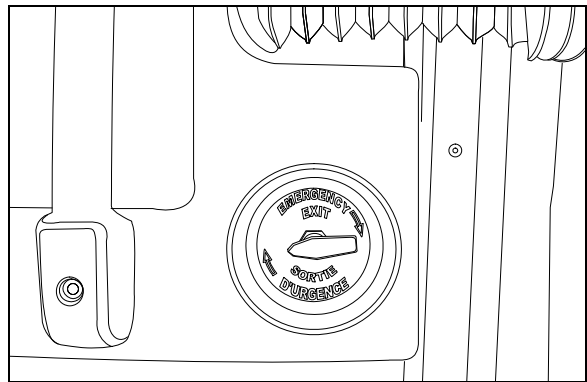
**EMERGENCY ENTRANCE DOOR OPENING**

An unlatch air valve located on the front wall, close to the entrance door allows emergency depletion of the door and latching cylinders. Another unlatch valve is located in the front

service compartment and allows opening the door from the outside. To open the door in an emergency situation, first turn the unlatch valve in the direction of the arrows and push (or pull) the door open. To close the door after emergency opening, return the valve to its initial position, open the door using the door cylinder, then close the door normally.

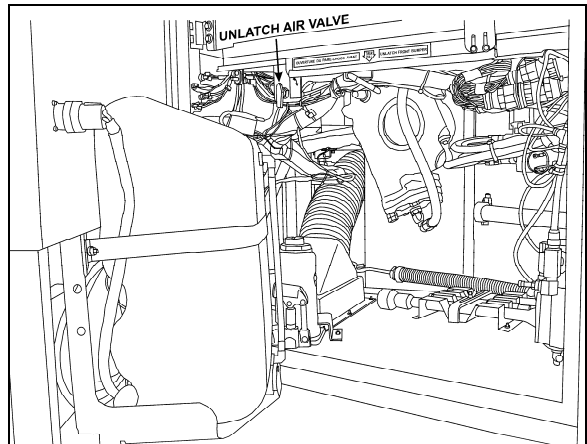
**NOTE**

*To be able to open the entrance door in an emergency situation, the entrance door must first be unlocked using the key or locking lever before unlatching the door from the outside or the inside.*



**INTERIOR UNLATCH AIR VALVE**

12164



**UNLATCH AIR VALVE LOCATION**

12209

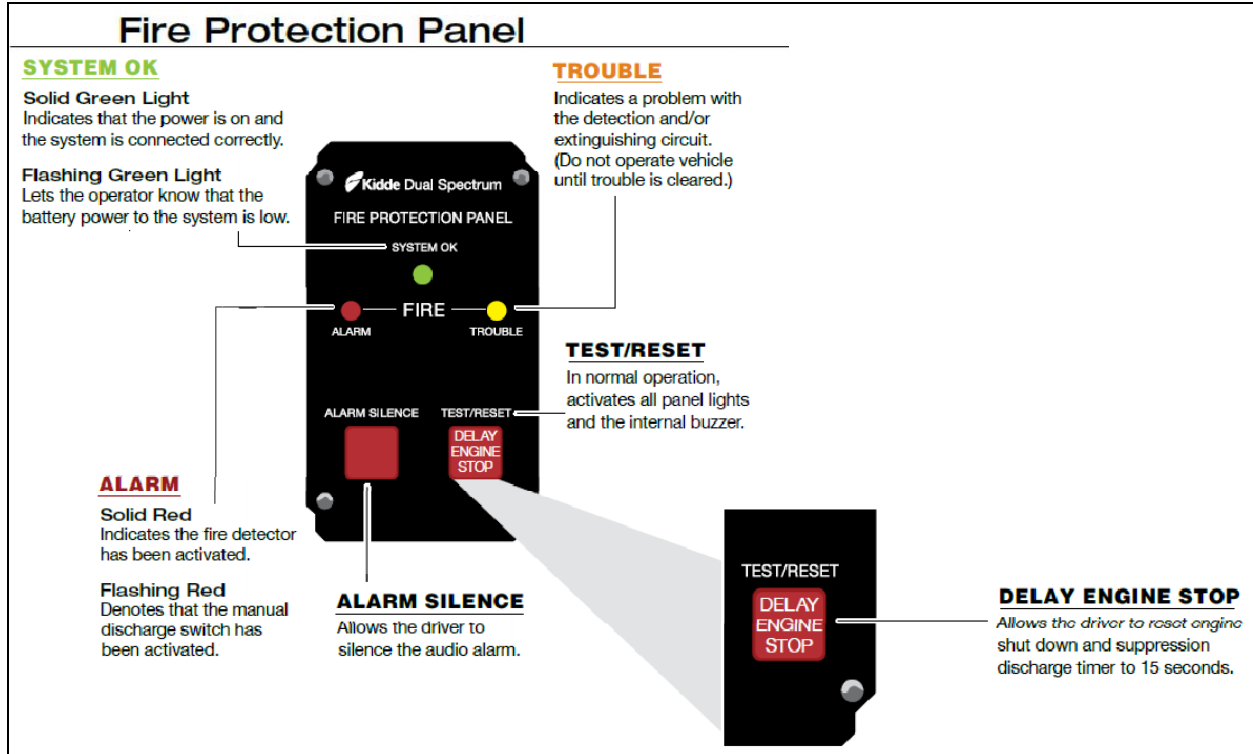
## 7-4 Safety Features and Equipment

### EMERGENCY EQUIPMENT

#### FIRE SUPPRESSION SYSTEM (AFSS)

The coach is equipped with the Automatic Fire Detection and Suppression System (AFSS).






See below, a brief description of the system, the visual information provided and how it should be operated if a fire is detected.



### System Operation

The protection panel and manual discharge is located in the operator's area and displays a number of lights which indicate the status of the system.

**If a FIRE is detected:**

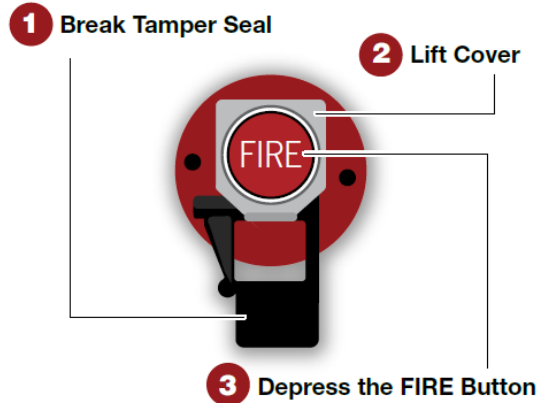
-  ALARM light illuminates
-  The internal buzzer sounds
-  15 second count down begins for engine shut down and suppression discharge
-  Upon expiration of timer, engine shuts down
-  Suppression agent will discharge

**NOTE:** Activation of the manual discharge button will shut down the engine and immediately discharge the suppression system.

KIDDE IMAGES

### Manual Discharge Button

To immediately discharge:



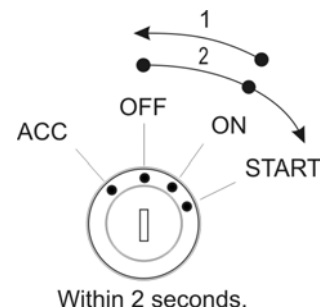
**CAUTION:** The extinguisher discharge may cause an obscuring cloud behind and near the vehicle.

### STARTING THE VEHICLE AFTER A FIRE ALARM

The vehicle may be started after a fire alarm without resetting the system. Refer to ignition switch sequence below. This will not reset the system, rather it will instruct the vehicle's multiplex system to ignore vehicle interface outputs from the Protection Panel. This feature is intended to be used only in emergency situations that require the vehicle to be restarted and moved a short distance prior to system reset. It should not be performed if the cause of the fire has not been clearly identified and corrected.

To start the vehicle, perform this ignition switch (key) sequence.

- From the **ON** position,
- Turn to **OFF**, return to **ON** and **START** vehicle within 2 seconds.



## 7-6 Safety Features and Equipment

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

The coach may be equipped with the optional Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

#### Description

System includes the following elements:

- Special tire valves;
- RF sensor inside each tire, fixed to the valve;
- 3 antennas to receive the sensors RF signal (one in the front spare tire compartment, one above the L.H. side rear wheels and one above the R.H. side rear wheels);
- A TPMS receiver connected to the antennas and located in the front electrical compartment, above the CECM;
- A TPMS display built in the L.H. dashboard panel;
- A "FLAT TIRE" telltale panel indicator.

The section of the special tire valves located inside the tire is dome-shaped to allow fixing the sensor.

Sensors provide continuous tire pressure and temperature reading.

The normal sensor battery lifespan is 5 years. The remaining lifespan is displayed as a percentage in the TPMS display.

#### **NOTE**

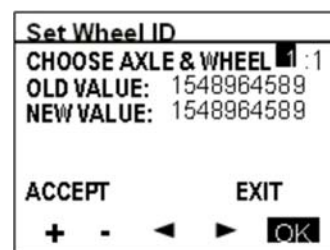
*It is recommended to check the remaining battery lifespan when changing the tires in order to replace the sensors at the same time if they are due for replacement before the next change.*

The sensor's fixation screw to the valve can only be used once because the threads are powder-coated to lock the sensor in place and prevent unfastening.

The telltale panel indicator illuminates for 3 seconds when the ignition switch is turned ON to check the display operation and the communication between the display and the vehicle multiplex system. This confirms the communication between the TPMS display and CECM.

#### Settings Menu

- Set Wheel ID



- ◀ ▶ Navigate
- +/- Increase, decrease digits
- OK Navigate forward
- ACCEPT & OK Overwrite "OLD VALUE"; with changes in "NEW VALUE" (sets current)
- EXIT & OK Cancel changes in Progress and exit menu

- Learn Wheel ID

This menu allows learning new wheel sensors ID. The user can learn only one wheel, several wheels or all wheels of the vehicle. The sequence automatically jumps to the next wheel such that a user can initiate all wheels without having to come back to the display between each wheel.

The display uses a pressure change as the criteria to recognize which wheel sensor the operator wants to get assigned to a given location. The amount of pressure change required is established at 2 PSI.

A pressure change of about 3 PSI is needed to wake up a sensor and then an extra amount of pressure change of 2 PSI is needed to trigger the display. The operator has to create a pressure change by at least 6 PSI and then wait for the display to recognize the pressure change. The wait time correspond to the sensor sampling rate.

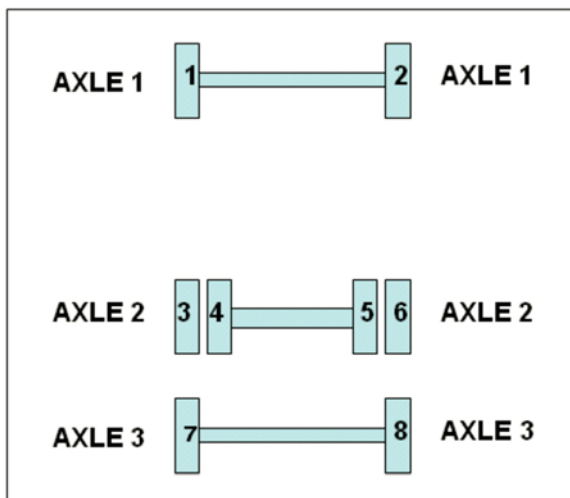
When entering the menu, the axle 1, wheel 1 is selected by default as a starting point for the learning. The user can select another axle with +/-, move the cursor to the wheel number with the right arrow and select another wheel with the

+/- or move the cursor down to the start learning button.

After the start learning button is selected, the display stores the first transmission it gets from each sensor ID into the “initial pressure” for that sensor ID. Then it compares each subsequent pressures received for that sensor ID with the initial one and when the comparison shows a delta pressure exceeding the defined level required, this sensor ID is assigned to the selected tire location.

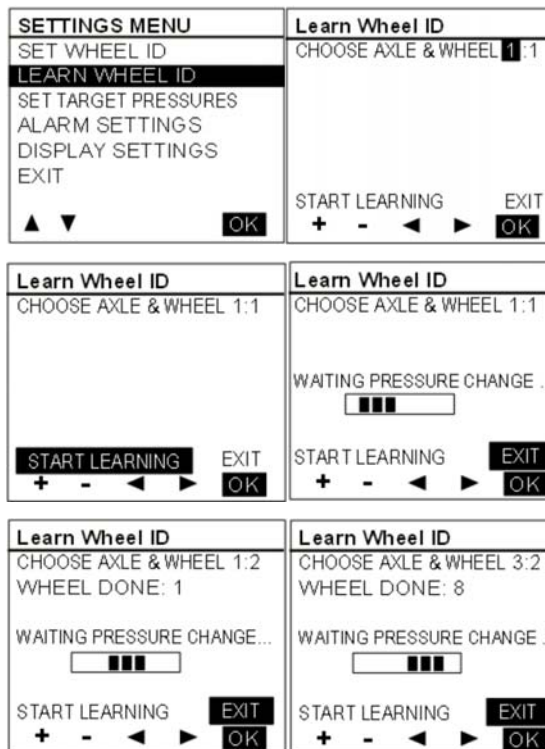
Once a wheel ID has been assigned, the display increments the number of wheels done and it moves to the next axle/wheel in the sequence, waiting for another sensor to come up with a pressure change. Within one learning session, the display remembers which sensor has been assigned and it will not assign it twice.

The sequence increments the display of the next wheel on the same axle, counting wheels from left to right, and then moves to the next axle, counting axles from front to rear.



It activates the next wheel parameter each time a wheel is done. This setting is integrated with the vehicle electronic, activating an audible signal on the vehicle, thus providing a feedback to the user that he can move on to the next wheel.

The spare Tire can be done by selecting the axle/wheel “spare” which is internally encoded to 15:1.



- Set Target Pressures

This menu allows the end user to fine tune the target pressure setting, taking account for the specific operating conditions (cold weather operation or unloaded operation). The end user can readjust the target pressure within +30% and -20% of the factory set target pressure but not outside this range.

The factory set target pressure is always kept in permanent memory into the TPMS display and cannot be edited by the end user.

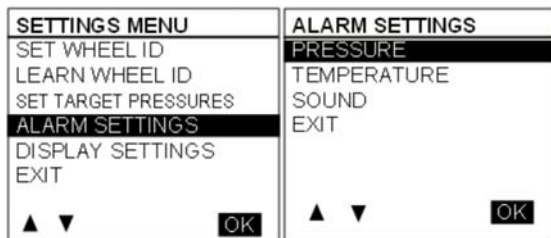
When the user sets a new target value, the selection can't be made outside the valid range.



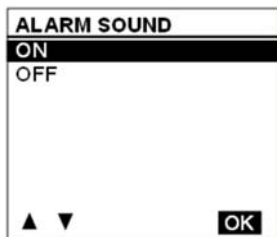
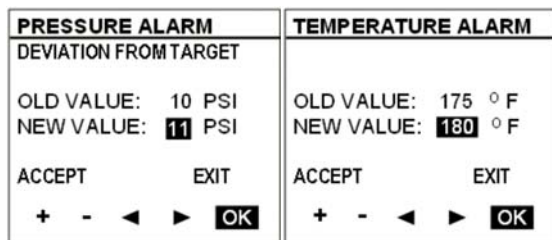
- Alarm Settings

When selecting the *Alarm Settings* Menu, a sub menu containing Pressure Alarm and Temperature Alarm appears.

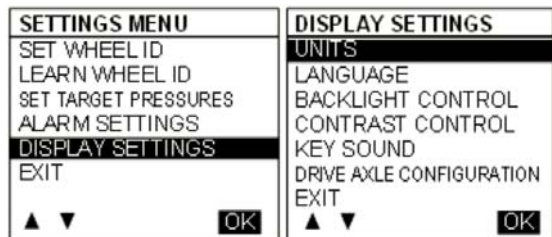
## 7-8 Safety Features and Equipment



When selecting *Pressure*, the following pressure alarm screen appears. A similar screen is displayed for temperature settings. The cursor can be moved to highlight the data beside “NEW VALUE” and the “ACCEPT / EXIT” option. +/- allows increasing or decreasing the “NEW VALUE” data. Pressure alarm changes are done by steps of 1 PSI, in the range from 5 to 20 PSI. Temperature alarm is done by steps of 5°F (2°C) in the range from 150 to 180 °F (64 to 82 °C). Pressing OK with “ACCEPT” highlighted applies changes and exits to the previous menu, while pressing OK while the “EXIT” option is highlighted exits without changes.

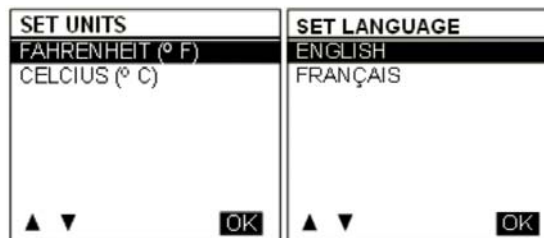


- Display Settings

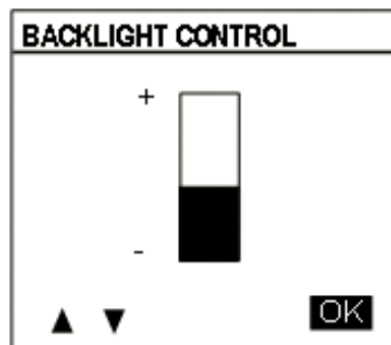


- Units

- Language

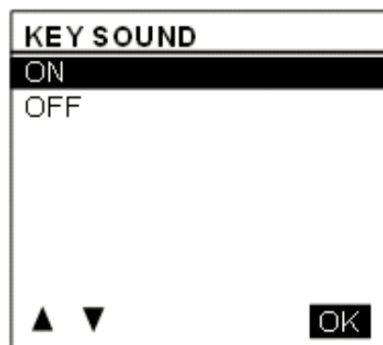


- Backlight Intensity



- Key Sound

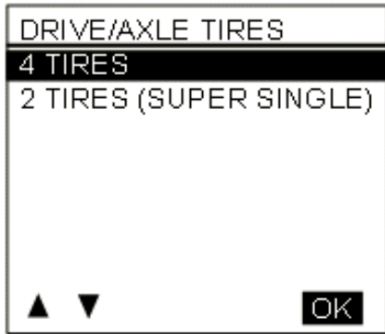
Turns ON/OFF the sound of keys each time they are pressed.



- Tire / Axle Configuration

Pressing the up / down arrows allows to select the option of 2 or 4 tires, which are the choices for the drive axle on the vehicle.





Refer to “Appendix G” for Troubleshooting Guide on Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

**20 LBS FIRE EXTINGUISHER**

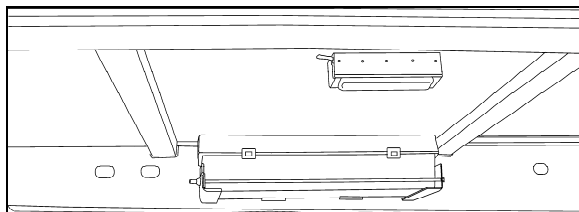
A 20 lbs fire extinguisher is located on the under the first R.H. side passenger seat. side. Instructions for use are found on the extinguishers.



**20 LBS FIRE EXTINGUISHER**

**WARNING REFLECTORS**

A kit containing three triangular reflectors is provided to warn other drivers on the road in case of a breakdown. The kit is located at the ceiling of the first baggage compartment, on the R.H. side. The reflectors provide visible warning of an emergency situation. The three reflectors should be placed as indicated on the box cover. These reflectors comply with FMVSS 125 (Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards).



**WARNING REFLECTORS LOCATION**

23376

**SPARE PARTS KIT**

The vehicle may be equipped with a spare parts kit (optional). The kit contains parts such as bulbs, circuit breakers, belts, etc. The spare parts kit is stored in the first baggage compartment.

**“LIMP-HOME” BELT**

In case of malfunction of the lower alternator, install the limp-home belt on the upper alternator. The installation of the belt allows the coach to be driven to a repair facility after only minor manipulations.

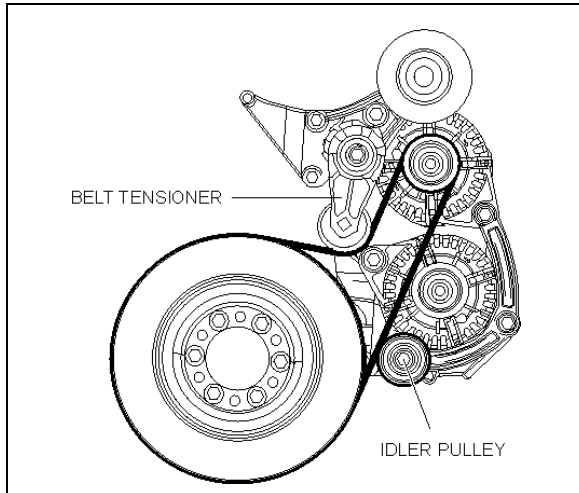
**Lower alternator failure:**

1. Raise the belt tensioner. Use a breaker bar with a 3/4 inch drive to rotate the tensioner pulley upward and relieve alternator belt tension. Remove belt;
2. Install the limp-home drive belt on the drive and top alternator pulleys first;
3. Complete installation of the limp-home belt as shown hereafter;
4. Slide the belt on the idler pulley;
5. Gently release the belt tensioner.

**NOTE**  
*To prevent the batteries from discharging, the HVAC system is turned OFF when running on a single alternator.*



## 7-10 Safety Features and Equipment



LIMP-HOME BELT ON TOP ALTERNATOR

01194

### SPARE WHEEL

The spare wheel and tire is located in a compartment behind the reclining front bumper.

In case of a flat tire:

- Turn ON the hazard flashers;
- Bring the coach to a stop on the side of the road;
- Apply the parking brake;
- Make sure the coach is parked safely away from traffic;
- Set up the triangular reflectors in accordance with applicable highway regulations.

### CHANGING A WHEEL

To access the spare wheel compartment, lower the front reclining bumper. To do so, pull on the release handle located in the front electrical and service compartment.

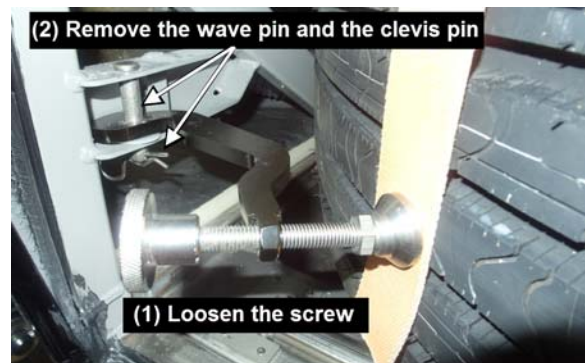
The bumper will lower gradually. When closing the compartment, be sure the bumper is firmly in place.

#### **NOTE**

*The bumper is equipped with spring hinges to allow handling by one person.*

**To remove the spare wheel from the compartment:**

1. Loosen the screw holding the tire in place (see image).
2. Remove the wave pin and the clevis pin.
3. Pull the spare wheel out of the compartment using the strap.



REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL

13038

### Installation of the spare wheel

#### **NOTE**

*The jack and tools are located in the first baggage compartment.*

1. Loosen the wheel nuts about one turn;
2. Raise the vehicle by the closest jacking point (See "Jacking points" in this section);
3. Remove the wheel nuts and remove the wheel;
4. Mount the spare wheel over the studs, being careful not to damage the stud threads;
5. Screw in the wheel nuts according to the sequence shown in the following figure and tighten slightly more and repeat the sequence a few times to position the wheel correctly. Once tightening induces wheel spin, lower the coach for final tightening;
6. Tighten the nuts progressively in the sequence shown. Final tightening should be done using a torque wrench. Dry tightening torque is 450 – 500 lbf-ft (610 – 680 Nm) for steel as well as for aluminum wheels.



TIGHTENING SEQUENCE 13018

**NOTE**

Periodically check the spare tire inflation pressure. Tire pressure should be the maximum pressure specified in the chart.

**NOTE**

Periodically check that the spare is securely fastened in its compartment.



**CAUTION**

Before driving, be sure the flat tire, track, jack and tools are securely reinstalled in their respective compartments.

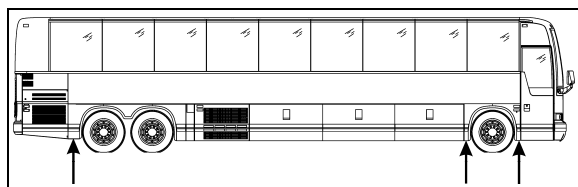


**CAUTION**

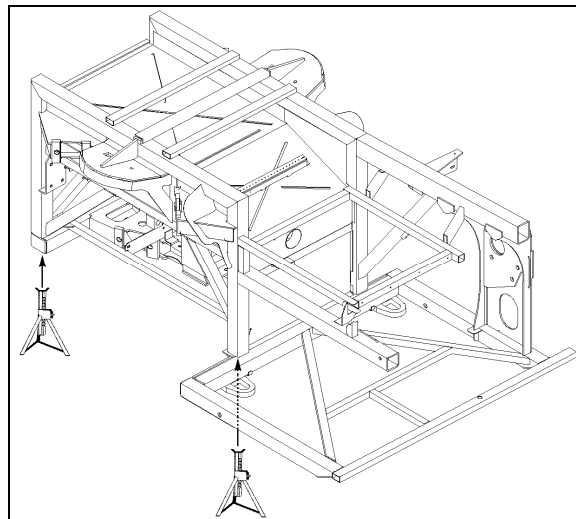
Check that the bumper is securely closed shut before driving.

**JACKING POINTS**

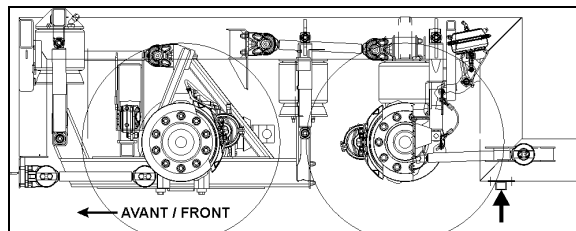
Twelve jacking points are located on the vehicle; three are located on each side of the frame and two are located under each axle. Refer to the following illustrations for the location of jacking points.



JACKING POINTS ON FRAME 18618



FRONT END JACKING POINTS 18592

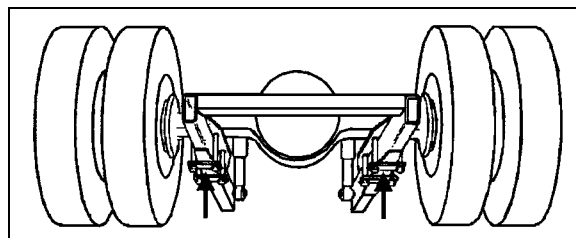


REAR END JACKING POINTS 18593

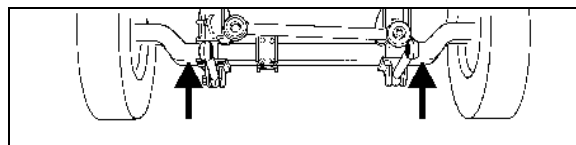


**WARNING**

The suspension of the vehicle must be in the normal ride position before jacking.

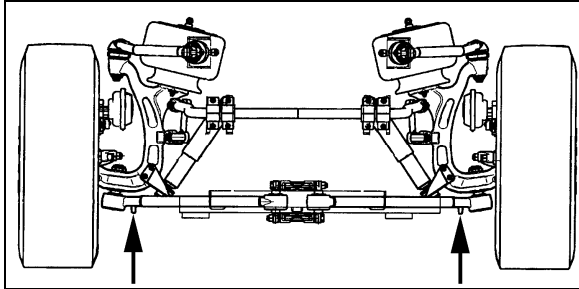


JACKING POINTS ON DRIVE AXLE 11005



JACKING POINTS ON FRONT AXLE 10005

## 7-12 Safety Features and Equipment

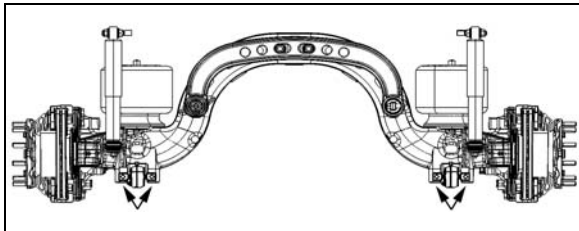


JACKING POINTS ON IND. FRONT SUSPENSION 16139



### WARNING

Always unload or retract the tag axle before jacking the vehicle from the front and drive axle jacking points to prevent damage to suspension components.



JACKING POINTS ON TAG AXLE 11029



### WARNING

The jacking points on the tag axle must be used for raising the tag axle only.

Several kinds of hydraulic jacks can be used. Only jack at the specified jacking points. Jack must support the following capacities:

Front axle: 20,000 lb (9 100 kg);

Drive axle: 40,000 lb (18 200 kg).

### HYDRAULIC JACK

To raise: turn release valve clockwise. Insert handle in socket and raise by pumping.

To lower: remove handle and turn the release valve slowly counterclockwise.

Always keep ram and extension screw retracted when jack is not in use.

Service: Check oil level when jack fails to raise to full height. Lower ram completely with release valve open and jack in upright position, remove filler plug and refill to level of filler hole with hydraulic jack oil. **Never use brake fluid.**



### DANGER

Jack is intended for lifting only. Do not get under the vehicle or load for any reason unless it is properly supported with safety stands and securely blocked.



### DANGER

Do not load jack above rated capacity. Prevent "side loading", make sure load is centered on ram. Do not push or tilt load off jack.

### LIFTING AND TOWING

The towed vehicle must be lifted from the front end only. The tow truck must be equipped with the proper lifting equipment to reach under the front axle or the front tow eyes since no other lifting points are recommended. Lifting and towing from any other point are unauthorized as it may cause serious damage to the structure. Do not unload or raise the tag axle when lifting and towing to prevent overloading the drive axle.

1. Remove both drive axle shafts to prevent damage to the transmission. Plug axle tube to prevent oil loss. Refer to Rockwell's "Maintenance manual no.5" annexed at the end of Section 11: Rear Axle of the maintenance manual.



### CAUTION

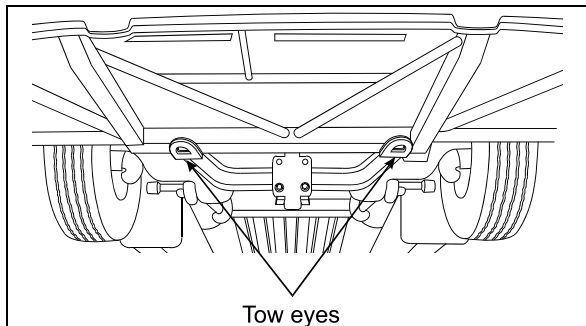
Transmission lubrication is inadequate when towing. With automatic, semi-automatic or manual transmission, the axle shafts or driveshaft must be disconnected to avoid serious damage to the transmission. Do not attempt to push or pull-start the coach.

2. If required, raise the front of the coach then install wooden blocks underneath front tires to allow lifting equipment to reach under the front axle.



Tow eyes as lifting point

- a) Use the tow eyes fixed to the vehicle frame between the front axle and the front bumper.



TOW EYES UNDER VEHICLE 18401

- b) Install axle forks onto tow bar, position axle forks around beam and into tow eyes.



ADEQUATELY SECURE THE TOW EYES TO THE TOW TRUCK LIFTING ATTACHMENT WITH CHAINS



**AXLE FORK**

Front axle as lifting point

- a) Use axle forks and lift the vehicle from under the front axle, and adequately secure the axle onto the tow truck lifting attachment with chains.



LIFTING FROM UNDER THE FRONT AXLE

- 3. Operate the engine when towing to maintain brake system air pressure. If the engine cannot be operated, connect an external air pressure line from the tow truck to the emergency fill valve in the engine R.H. side compartment. The emergency fill valve in the front service compartment does not supply air pressure to the brake system. The air pressure must be a minimum of 75 psi (520 kPa), and the line should be attached to the air line with a clip-on chuck.
- 4. Observe safety precautions when towing.

**CAUTION**

Do not tow the vehicle without external air pressure applied to the emergency fill valve if the engine does not operate. Without brake system air pressure, the brakes may apply automatically if system air drops below 40 psi (275 kPa). If failure prevents releasing the parking brakes with air pressure, disengage the parking brakes mechanically.

**CAUTION**

Make sure a safe distance is kept between the front of the coach and the tow truck. This space ensures that coach does not suffer damages when being towed.

## 7-14 Safety Features and Equipment



### CAUTION

Make sure axle shafts or driveshaft are installed correctly after towing. Tighten axle shaft and driveshaft nuts to the correct torque settings. Do not invert shafts.

### TOWING WITHOUT LIFTING



### CAUTION

When towing vehicle without lifting, use only a tow truck with a solid link tow bar and related equipment. All other means of towing are unauthorized. Tow only from the front of the vehicle.

1. Remove both drive axle shafts to prevent damage to the transmission. Plug axle tube to prevent oil loss. Refer to Rockwell's "Maintenance manual no.5" annexed at the end of Section 11: Rear Axle of the maintenance manual.



### CAUTION

Transmission lubrication is inadequate when towing. With automatic, semi-automatic or manual transmission, the axle shafts or driveshaft must be disconnected to avoid serious damage to the transmission. Do not attempt to push or pull-start the coach.

2. Operate the engine when towing to maintain brake system air pressure. If the engine cannot be operated, connect an external air pressure line from the tow truck to the emergency fill valve in the engine R.H. side compartment. The emergency fill valve in

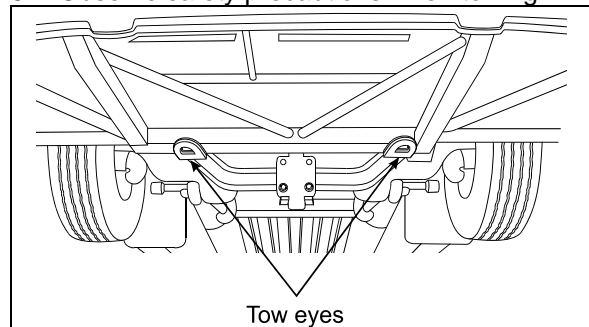
the front service compartment does not supply air pressure to the brake system. The air pressure must be a minimum of 75 psi (520 kPa), and the line should be attached to the air line with a clip-on chuck.



### CAUTION

Do not tow the vehicle without external air pressure applied to the emergency fill valve if the engine does not operate. Without brake system air pressure, the brakes may apply automatically if system air drops below 40 psi (275 kPa). If failure prevents releasing the parking brakes with air pressure, disengage the parking brakes mechanically.

3. Position the tow truck so that the tow bar contacts the front bumper of the vehicle.
4. Attach the tow truck chains only in the tow eyes of the vehicle and take up all the slack.
5. Use a safety chain as applicable.
6. Observe safety precautions when towing.



Tow eyes

TOW EYES UNDER VEHICLE

18401



### CAUTION

Make sure axle shafts or driveshaft are installed correctly after towing. Tighten axle shaft and driveshaft nuts to the correct torque settings. Do not invert shafts.

- A. *Vehicle must be towed FORWARD only*


### DAYTIME RUNNING LIGHTS

The inner lamps only also called high beams illuminate automatically when the engine is started and the parking brake is released to serve as daytime running lights. The daytime running lights provide added safety by making the traveling vehicle more visible to other drivers during the day.



The daytime running lights system turns the headlights on when:

- Engine is running;
- Parking brake is released;
- The exterior lighting switch is set to the OFF position or pressed to the first position.

|  |
|--|
|  <b>WARNING</b>   |
| <p>Do not drive with only the daytime running lights at night because the tail and marker lights are not turned on in that situation and the high beams can blind other drivers. For night driving, turn ON the headlights by depressing the exterior lighting rocker switch to the second position.</p> |

**FOG LIGHTS**

Optional halogen fog lights are available. They provide better visibility in fog and precipitation. They improve visibility immediately in front of the vehicle. They also provide added safety.

|   |
|---|
| <p><i><b>NOTE</b></i></p> <p><i>Some states or provinces may restrict the use of fog lights. Verify local state or provincial regulations before using.</i></p> |
|---|

**COMPARTMENT LIGHTING**

Baggage compartments and front service compartment lights are automatically turned ON when the corresponding compartment door is opened. A pictogram will appear on the status bar of the Driver Information Display (DID) when the baggage compartment door is open.

**MUD FLAPS AND SPLASH GUARDS**

Mud flaps are installed behind each front and tag axle wheel in order to minimize dirt on the lower panels of the vehicle and prevent stones and debris from being thrown at vehicles traveling behind the vehicle. Mud flaps are also installed on front of each front axle wheel to reduce water splash on rear-view mirrors. Splash guards may be installed behind each dual wheel of the drive axle to prevent stone

projectiles from being thrown at the tag axle wheels.

**BACK-UP CAMERA**

An optional back-up camera is available which provides the driver with visual assistance when backing-up. The monitor may be mounted on the left side pillar. It switches ON automatically when the transmission is in the reverse (R) range.

**BACK-UP ALARM**

The back-up alarm alerts pedestrians and other drivers when the vehicle is being backed-up. Take extra precautions whenever backing-up. If necessary, use a guide to provide directions when backing-up. Both the alarm and optional camera are automatically activated when the transmission is put in the reverse (R) range.

**ESSENTIAL FUNCTIONS TO OPERATE THE VEHICLE (BASIC LIMP-HOME FUNCTIONS)**

Even with a defective CECM (Chassis Electronic Control Module) or a CAN network problem, essential base functions are maintained to rear start the vehicle from the engine compartment and drive in a secure manner.

**AVAILABLE FUNCTIONS**

- Startup: Turn on the ignition in the driver's area and rear start the vehicle from the engine compartment,
- Opening the door: Functions normally,
- Closing the door: Manually pull on the door and it will lock automatically,
- Windshield wipers: Wipers functions at 1st speed only,
- Headlights: Low beams only,
- Directional signals: Rear and front only,
- Stoplights: 2 upper stoplights + high-mounted stoplight are functional,
- HVAC: Functional with set point fixed at 70°F (22°C), evaporator and condenser fixed at speed 1, defroster fixed at speed 4.



### CAUTION

The following directives must be followed.

- Never connect a battery charger when the ignition is at the ON position on a vehicle with a CAN defective or certain functions will start up by themselves,
- Disconnect the charger before starting the vehicle, if not the default functions will not activate,
- If the default mode does not activate, try to turn the ignition OFF while ensuring that no charger is connected and then restart the vehicle.

**CLEANING .....3**

- SEAT UPHOLSTERY .....3
- PLASTIC AND VINYL.....4
- WINDOWS.....4
- STAINLESS STEEL .....4
- HIGH PRESSURE LAMINATE .....4
- CARPET .....4
- RUBBER COMPONENTS.....4
- FLOOR CLEANING .....4
- EXTERIOR SURFACES .....4
- WINDSHIELD .....5

**LAVATORY MAINTENANCE .....5**

- FILLING THE SUMP TANK .....5
- DRAINING THE SUMP TANK .....5

**FLUID LEVEL VERIFICATION .....6**

- ENGINE OIL LEVEL .....6
- TRANSMISSION OIL LEVEL.....6
- POWER STEERING FLUID LEVEL .....8
- DRIVE AXLE WHEEL BEARING OIL LEVEL.....8
- FRONT AND TAG AXLE WHEEL HUBS.....8
- COOLANT FLUID LEVEL.....8
- WINDSHIELD WASHER & HEADLIGHTS WASHER RESERVOIRS .....9

**OTHER VERIFICATIONS .....9**

- AIR TANK PURGE.....9
- FIRE EXTINGUISHER (S) .....9
- PRIMARY FUEL FILTER .....10
- A/C COMPRESSOR BELTS .....10
- ALTERNATOR DRIVE BELTS .....11
- BACK-UP CAMERA.....11
- AIR FILTER RESTRICTION INDICATOR.....11
- A/C AND HEATING SYSTEM AIR FILTERS .....11
- HOSE INSPECTION .....12
- LUBRICATION .....13
- WHEELS AND TIRES.....13
- WHEEL BEARINGS .....13



## 8-2 Care and Maintenance

---

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| SERVICE BRAKE TEST .....                                | 14        |
| PARKING BRAKE TEST.....                                 | 14        |
| EXTERIOR LIGHTING VERIFICATION .....                    | 14        |
| <b>FIRST SERVICE ON NEW VEHICLE .....</b>               | <b>16</b> |
| ENGINE OIL.....   | 16        |
| COOLANT SYSTEM FILTER .....                             | 16        |
| <b>GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS .....</b>                    | <b>16</b> |
| <b>WALK-AROUND INSPECTION (BEFORE EVERY TRIP) .....</b> | <b>19</b> |

**CLEANING**

The cleaning information provided in this section is regarded as recommended cleaning practices. Cleaning results may vary depending on the condition of the stain. Always clean stains promptly for best results.

**NOTE**  
 Use only approved cleaning products such as Prevost A.P.C., all purpose cleaner (Prevost # 683664). Never use stain protection products on new fabrics. To prevent permanent staining of fabrics, clean stains soon after they occur. Incorrect treatment of stains can worsen them. Get help from a cleaning specialist to remove stubborn stains.

**CAUTION**  
 Custom fabrics and materials may require different cleaning and maintenance practices. Consult your supplier.

**SEAT UPHOLSTERY**

Firmly beat the fabric with a blunt object, such as a wooden paddle, to release dust and dirt. Vacuum the seat fabric in the direction of the stitching using an upholstery nozzle.

**NOTE**  
 The abrasive nature of dirt and grit will reduce upholstery life expectancy. Vacuum regularly.

**Removal Of Stains And Marks**

Depending on the nature of the stain, apply one of the two methods explained below to remove stains and marks on wool plush.

Method One:

1. Apply a nonflammable solvent to stained area with a clean, white absorbent rag;
2. Clean stain by starting at the outer edges of the stain and working in toward the center;
3. Blot affected area frequently with a clean, dry absorbent cloth to prevent stain rings caused by excess solvent.

**WARNING**  
 Use solvents in a well ventilated area. Open all windows and doors.

Method Two

1. Wet the stain with a solution of household detergent and lukewarm water. Do not soak the stain;
2. Rub the stain with a damp cloth;
3. Rinse cloth after each application.

**CAUTION**  
 Do not use soap, soap powder, ammonia, soda, bleach or cleaning products containing any of these compounds.

**Beverage Stains**

Remove beverage stains by following method one. If stain persists, repeat method one using methylated spirits instead of solvent.

**Alcoholic Beverage Stains**

Remove alcoholic beverage stains by wetting the stain with water, then cleaning following method two.

**Burns**

Scrape burnt area using a knife or razor blade then clean following method two. Consult an upholstery specialist when dealing with extensive burns.

**Cosmetic Stains**

Remove stains left by cosmetics by following method one then method two.

**Ink Stains**

Remove ink stains following method two. If stain persists, apply a warm oxalic acid solution. Rinse with water.

**Blood, Urine Or Vomit Stains**

Remove such stains by following method two.

**Copying Ink - Ball-Point Pen Ink**

Treat with methylated spirits, blotting frequently to avoid spreading stain, followed by method two.

## 8-4 Care and Maintenance

---

### Marking Ink (Felt-tip Pens)

Treat with Methyl-Ethyl-Ketone (MEK) followed by method two.

### Oil, Grease And Paint

Remove excess using a knife. Treat with method one followed by method two. If stain persists, repeat procedure.

### Rust Stains

Remove rust stains by following method two. Apply a warm oxalic acid solution to stained area. Rinse with water.

### Tar

Soften tar with benzene, then treat using method one followed by method two.

### Chewing Gum

Soften gum with cyclohexane. Carefully scrape off stains using a sharp knife or razor blade.

### PLASTIC AND VINYL

Clean plastic and vinyl trim using a clean damp cloth or sponge. For vinyl trim marks, use a lukewarm all purpose cleaner or a mild saddle soap. Remove water spots and soap traces using a clean damp cloth or sponge. Dry with a clean soft cloth.

Remove grease, tar or oil stains with a clean cloth or sponge and an all purpose or solvent-type vinyl cleaner.

Apply a colorless vinyl or leather protective product to maintain the luster and pliability of the plastic or vinyl surface.

### WINDOWS

Clean the inside of the windows with a solution of one part vinegar to ten parts water.

### STAINLESS STEEL

Use a stainless steel cleaner and follow the manufacturer's instructions. Stainless steel cleaning solution may be ordered from Prevost Car Inc. quoting part number 68-0356.

### HIGH PRESSURE LAMINATE

Remove stains on laminated surfaces with a household detergent, methylated spirits or

mineral turps. Clean with a mild liquid abrasive and water solution if stain persists.

### CARPET

Vacuum carpets regularly to prolong carpet life.

### RUBBER COMPONENTS

Use only pure water or glycerin to clean stains on rubber components.



### CAUTION

Never use solvents on rubber components.

### FLOOR CLEANING

Clean vinyl floors with a quality nonionic detergent cleaner. Follow the manufacturer's recommendations for cleaning.

Remove any excess detergent solution using a wet/dry vacuum or mop. Rinse floor with a solution of one part Clorox to ten parts warm water.

Polish dry floor using a high-speed buffer and a smooth red 3-M polishing pad.

Mop floor periodically with a solution of 5 per cent Clorox in warm water.

### NOTE


*For custom or special floor covering materials, consult the manufacturer or your converter for information on how to clean and maintain these types of floors.*


### EXTERIOR SURFACES

Frequent washing and waxing of the vehicle exterior will help protect the finish and luster. The paint finish is attacked by the abrasive effects of airborne particles and corrosive pollutants.

Before washing the exterior of the vehicle, close the fresh air dampers using the "REC" button located on HVAC control panel and on the air intake duct in the evaporator compartment. Install keyhole protectors to prevent water from penetrating. Rinse vehicle with water to remove all loose dirt. Wash vehicle using a quality brand car wash soap. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for cleaning. Rinse well with water.

The vehicle exterior should be cleaned, waxed and buffed when water droplets no longer form on the painted surfaces.

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
|  | <h3>CAUTION</h3> |
| <p>Hot water can damage paint. Keep water cool or lukewarm.</p>                   |                  |

|   |                  |
|---|------------------|
|    | <h3>CAUTION</h3> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure cleaning solutions are not harmful to painted surfaces. Read the manufacturer's instructions before using.</li> <li>• Do not spray water jet directly into fresh air inlet dampers.</li> </ul> |                  |

To prevent corrosion, remove caked-on dirt and road salt from the vehicle underbody using a high pressure water jet. Clean wheel housings, bumpers, muffler, tailpipe and brackets.

Carry out corrosion prevention cleaning at least twice a year. Spray underneath of the vehicle and let soak before cleaning. Let engine and exhaust system cool down before cleaning.

**Tar Or Oil**

Remove tar or oil as soon as possible with an approved automotive tar and oil remover or turpentine. Thoroughly clean area with car wash soap and water. Let dry, then wax.

**Insects**

Remove insect stains as soon as possible with lukewarm soap and water or insect remover.

**Tree Sap**

Remove tree sap or bird droppings with lukewarm soap and water. Do not allow to harden.

**WINDSHIELD**

To prevent windshield wiper streaking, keep silicone sprays away from windshield. Remove road film and wax build-up from windows with lukewarm soap and water or with an alcohol-based cleaning agent. If a chamois is used to dry and polish glass, use it exclusively for that purpose.

**Wiper Blades**

To avoid tearing frozen wiper blades, loosen them before removing. Remove and clean wiper blades periodically with an alcohol-based cleaning solution. Clean wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth.

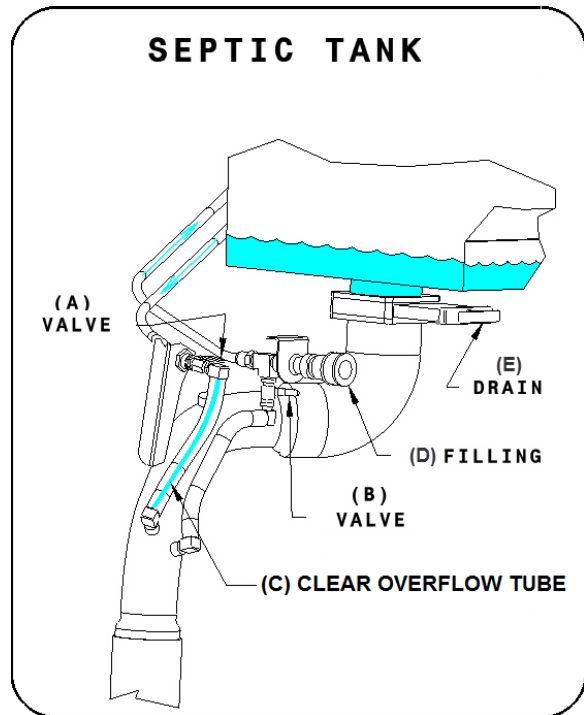
**LAVATORY MAINTENANCE**

Flush water in the lavatory is recirculated from the sump tank. When the sump tank water is too soiled to be recirculated, the driver can dump it into a suitable dump location.

Routine draining and filling of lavatory tanks should be performed by maintenance personnel only, and should be done before parking the coach overnight in freezing temperature.

**FILLING THE SUMP TANK**

Open the sump tank overflow valve (A) and connect a water supply hose to the toilet sump tank fill connection (D). The sump tank is full when water starts flowing through the clear overflow tube (C). Close sump tank overflow valve (A) when the tank is full and drain water fill tube using drain valve (B) to avoid ice damage during cold weather operation.



**DRAINING THE SUMP TANK**

When recirculating water in the toilet is soiled, drain sump tank. Pull the drain slide valve lever (E) and allow contents to drain. Flush tank with

## 8-6 Care and Maintenance

clean water. To close, push the slide valve (E) back into closed position.



### CAUTION

Lavatory tanks should be serviced only at suitably equipped stations.

### NOTE

*It is unlawful to dump sump tank contents in any location other than those designated as such.*

When a thorough tank draining is required, clean sump tank by repeating the draining and filling operations several times. Close valves and drop in a packet of commercial toilet deodorant (Prevost part #900329) in toilet before starting final filling of the sump tank.



### WARNING

The toilet deodorant contains compounds which can be very irritating to skin. Use rubber gloves when handling and then clean toilet seat.



### CAUTION

When cold weather is expected, sump tank must be drained if the coach is parked overnight or for an extended period of time.

### NOTE

*Due to the heat it produces, there is less risk of freezing in the tanks when the engine is operating.*

### NOTE

*New coaches are delivered with the sump tank empty. Fill with water before putting the coach in service.*

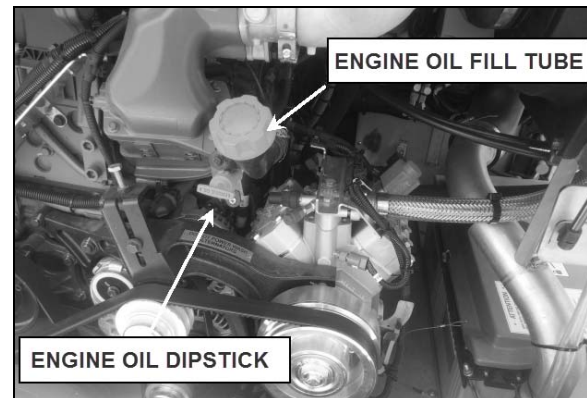
## FLUID LEVEL VERIFICATION

Periodic inspection of oil and fluids levels is the most economical and easiest way to help your vehicle perform at its best. Rigorous oil level inspection and replacement will greatly help minimize expensive and unscheduled repairs.

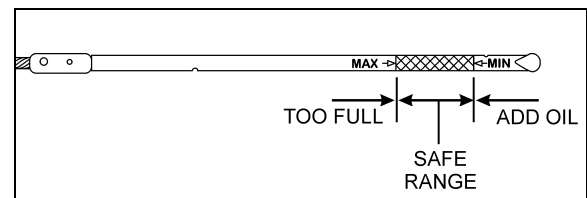
## ENGINE OIL LEVEL

Check engine oil level when engine is still warm and with vehicle parked on a level surface. Shut **OFF** engine and wait at least 10 minutes for oil to drain into oil pan before checking. Check engine oil level daily or before each trip. Add oil as required. Do not overfill. Remove dipstick, wipe clean and fully reinsert to ensure an accurate reading. Remove dipstick and check engine oil level.

**Do not** let the oil level fall below the marking on the dipstick. **Do not** overfill so the level is above the upper marking on the dipstick. Add oil through the oil filler pipe as required in order to maintain level within the safe range



ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - VOLVO D13 ENGINE 01192\_2



VOLVO D13 ENGINE OIL LEVEL DIPSTICK 01195

## TRANSMISSION OIL LEVEL



### DANGER

To prevent personal injury, do not service transmission wearing loose clothing. Stand clear of the engine and rotating components while checking the oil level.



### CAUTION

Do not mix fluid types or brands because of possible incompatibility.



**CAUTION**

Use clean fluid and containers when filling transmission. Never use containers that have contained water or anti-freeze (Glycol).

**Allison Automatic Transmission Oil Level**

Transmission fluid level may be checked using dipstick or transmission control pad display. For more information on how to use the shift selector display to check the transmission oil level, refer to Appendix C under "Allison transmission oil level check using the pushbutton shift selector" in this manual.

The transmission fluid level dipstick is accessible through the engine compartment rear door and is located on the left side of the engine.

To check the transmission fluid level, a "cold check" and a "hot check" must be performed. A cold check must be made when the transmission fluid is between 60°F and 120°F (16°C and 50°C).

**NOTE**

*Perform the cold check first to verify the transmission fluid level before performing the hot check.*

To prevent dirt and foreign matter from entering the transmission, clean the end of the oil fill tube before removing dipstick. To remove dipstick, unscrew filler cap approximately three turns and pull out dipstick.



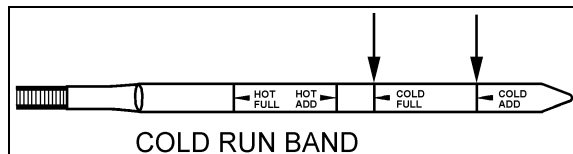
ENGINE L. H. SIDE

01189\_2

• **Cold Check**

Run the engine until the transmission fluid temperature is between 60°F and 120°F (16°C and 50°C). With the engine idling, make sure

the parking brake is applied and the transmission is in neutral (N). Remove and wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth. Check oil level. If the oil level is within the COLD RUN band, the oil level is correct and a hot check can be performed. If the oil level is on or below the lower line of the COLD RUN band, add oil until the level lies within the COLD RUN band. If the oil level is above the COLD RUN band, drain oil until the level is within the band.



TRANSMISSION FLUID LEVEL DIPSTICK (TYPICAL) 07050

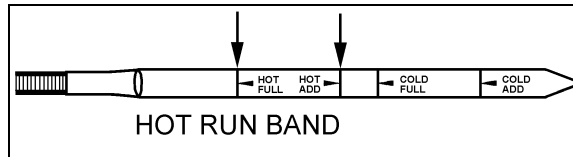


**CAUTION**

The oil level rises as oil temperature rises. Do not add oil above the "cold run" band before the transmission reaches 180°F to 220°F (82°C to 104°C).

• **Hot Check**

Make sure the transmission fluid temperature is between 180°F and 220°F (82°C and 104°C) before performing the hot check. Run the engine between 1,000 and 1,200 RPM for approximately one minute to purge air from the system. With the engine idling and the parking brake applied, shift transmission from forward (D) to reverse (R) and back into neutral (N) to fill clutch cavities with oil. Remove and clean dipstick, then check oil level. If the oil level is on or under the lower HOT RUN line, add just enough oil to bring up the level to the middle of the HOT RUN band.



TRANSMISSION FLUID LEVEL DIPSTICK (TYPICAL) 07049

Replace dipstick and tighten the filler tube cap until the rubber seal is correctly seated.



**CAUTION**

Do not overfill transmission fluid reservoir. Severe damage may result.

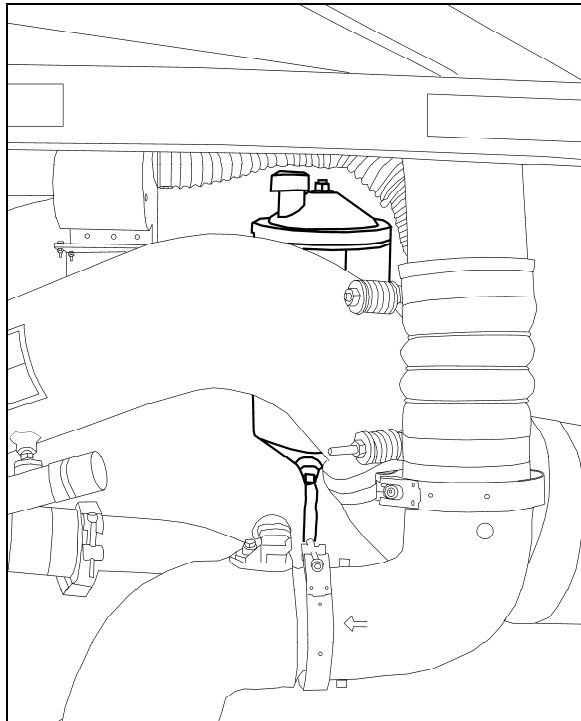
## 8-8 Care and Maintenance

### POWER STEERING FLUID LEVEL

The coach is equipped with a power steering system. The hydraulic fluid tank is located in the engine compartment behind the engine air intake pipe and above the alternators.

Check fluid level as follows:

1. Stop engine, open engine compartment doors and place rear start switch to *OFF* position;
2. Unscrew and remove the dipstick located on top of the fluid tank and wipe with a clean rag;
3. Replace dipstick in tank, then remove to check fluid level;
4. Add hydraulic fluid until it reaches the **FULL** mark on the dipstick;
5. Replace and tighten dipstick;
6. Place engine rear start switch to *NORMAL* position. Close engine compartment doors.



ENGINE COMPARTMENT

14059

### DRIVE AXLE WHEEL BEARING OIL LEVEL

Drive axle wheel bearings are lubricated by the differential oil. Maintain differential oil at correct level to ensure adequate lubrication of drive axle wheel bearings at all times.

### FRONT AND TAG AXLE WHEEL HUBS

The unitized hub bearings used on the NDS range of axles, are non-serviceable items. Bearings are pre-adjusted, lubricated and have seals fitted as part of the manufacturing process. The bearings are greased for life and there is no need or facility for re-lubrication.

### COOLANT FLUID LEVEL

Check the coolant level when the engine is cold (room or ambient temperature).

- If the coolant level has reached the bottom of the sight glass, add coolant up to the middle of the sight glass.

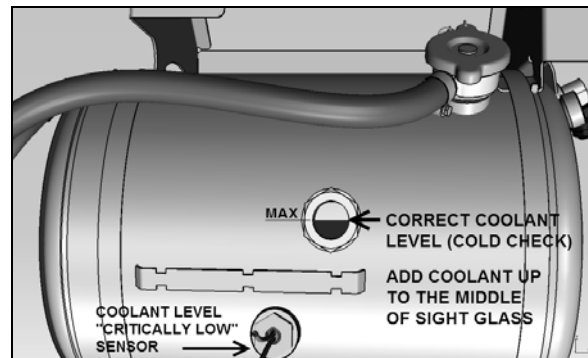
Fill the tank as required with the same 50/50 water-antifreeze mixture already in the cooling system. **Do not** mix two different types of coolant. Refer to the Maintenance Manual for proper coolant type specifications or see the label affixed near the coolant surge tank on the vehicle.



### CAUTION

On Volvo D13 engine, use **only** Extended Life Coolant (ELC). **Do not** add supplemental coolant additives (SCA) to extended life coolant. **Do not** use a coolant filter containing Supplemental Coolant Additives (SCA).

When the coolant level reaches the coolant surge tank level sensor, the STOP telltale light illuminates, a beeping tone rings and "ENGINE COOLANT LEVEL CRITICALLY LOW" message appears in the DID. Stop the vehicle in a safe location and add coolant to the cooling system surge tank as soon as possible.



COOLANT LEVEL SIGHT GLASS

05094

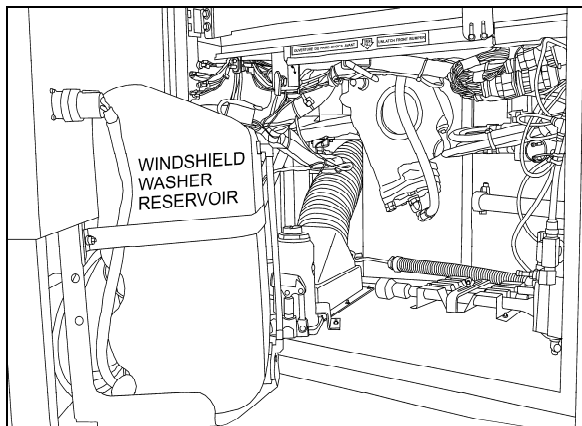


**⚠ WARNING**

Hot engine coolant is under high pressure. Allow engine to cool down before adding coolant.

**WINDSHIELD WASHER & HEADLIGHTS WASHER RESERVOIRS**

The windshield washer reservoir and headlights washer reservoir are located in the front service compartment door. The windshield washer reservoir has a capacity of 5.3 US gallons (20 liters) while the headlights washer reservoir has a capacity of 2.6 US gallons (10 liters). Check fluid level regularly.



**WINDSHIELD WASHER RESERVOIR** 18619

The windshield spray jets are located on the windshield wipers and are angled to spray towards the center of the windshield.

Adjust the headlights washer nozzles according to the instructions found in section 23 of the maintenance manual. You may use water or windshield washer fluid as well.

**⚠ CAUTION**

During cold weather days, use windshield washer fluid suitable for freezing temperature only.

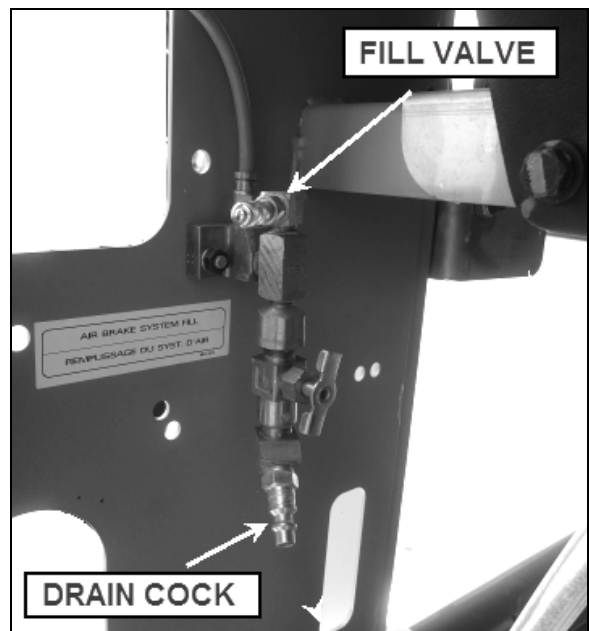
**OTHER VERIFICATIONS**

It is good practice to regularly inspect the vehicle for signs of component wear and to perform safety and maintenance routines.

**AIR TANK PURGE**

The vehicle is equipped with many air tanks. Purge accessory and wet air tanks before each

trip. The primary, secondary and optional air tanks must be purged at every oil change or at least every 12,500 miles (20 000 km).

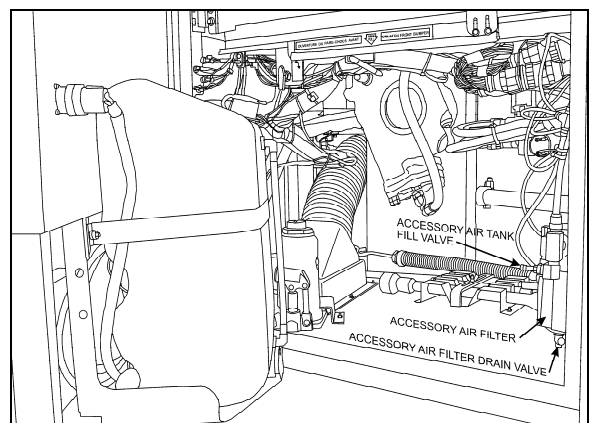


**ENGINE COMPARTMENT R. H. SIDE** 12211\_3

The accessory air tank drain cock is accessible from the front service compartment.

The wet air tank drain cock is accessible from the engine compartment. All air tanks are equipped with a drain cock underneath the tank. Refer to the "Lubrication and Service Check Point Chart" in this chapter for tank locations.

Drain tanks by turning cocks counterclockwise.



**FRONT SERVICE COMPARTMENT** 12210

**FIRE EXTINGUISHER (S)**

Inspect fire extinguishers monthly to insure operation in emergency situations.

On extinguishers with a pressure gauge, the needle should be in the green or *NORMAL*



## 8-10 Care and Maintenance

range. Refill or replace extinguisher if pressure is below normal;

Check that seal on handle is intact;

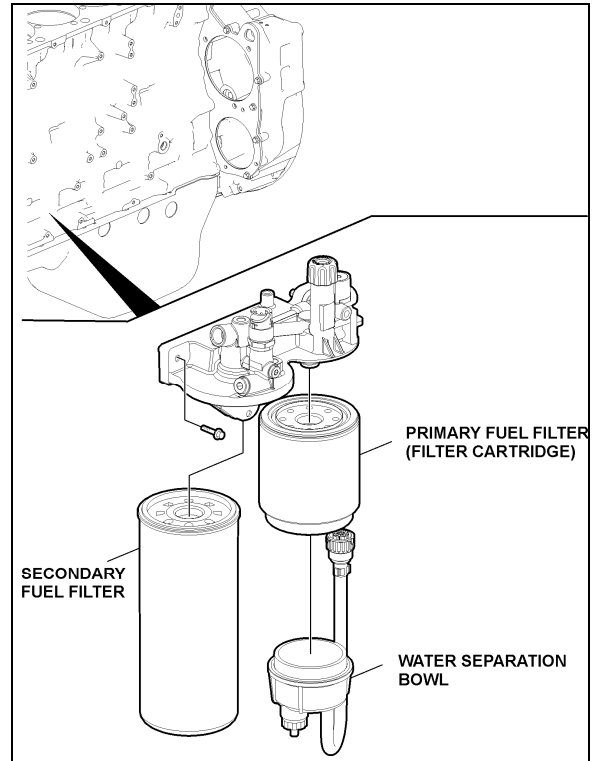
Check that hose nozzle is in good condition and the nozzle is free of obstructions;

Keep fire extinguishers clean.

### PRIMARY FUEL FILTER

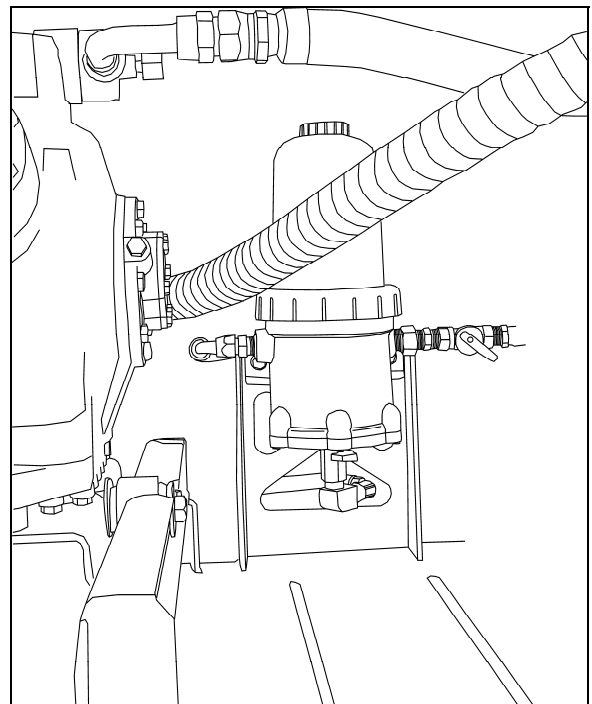
A primary fuel filter is installed on the engine. This filter may consist of a filter cartridge with a drain valve at the bottom, or a filter cartridge, a water separation bowl and may have a fuel heater built in. It is used to prevent water from entering the fuel system. The primary fuel filter should be drained periodically or when the telltale light on the dashboard illuminates if equipped with this system. To drain water, loosen the drain valve below the separator. Close the drain valve when finished.

The optional Fuel Pro 382 diesel fuel filter system consists of a permanently mounted fuel processor, a replaceable filter element, a filter element cover and collar and a fluid filter base assembly. This system is installed between the fuel tank and the fuel pump and replaces the primary fuel filter. The filter serves as a water separator as well as a fuel filter. To drain, turn  $\frac{1}{4}$  turn the drain valve below filter, close when water has been flushed out.



FUEL FILTERS WITH VOLVO D13 ENGINE

03085

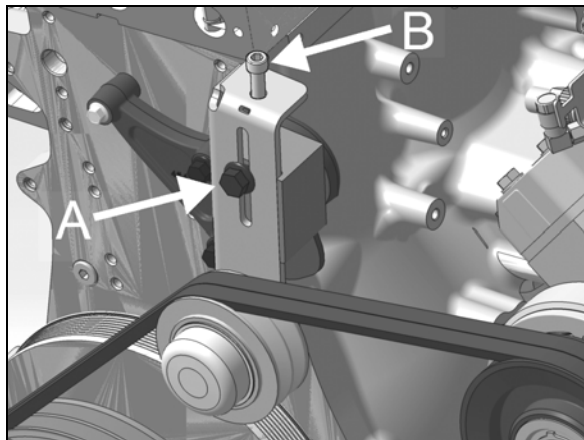


DAVCO FUEL PRO 382 INSTALLATION

03062

### A/C COMPRESSOR BELTS

The air conditioning compressor is driven by two V-belts.



**BELT TENSIONER**

Belt tensioning is applied through the tensioner adjustment screw B. Loosen lock bolt A prior adjustment. Tighten lock bolt A to 43 lbf-ft once completed.

Belt tension should be within the following values:

New belts: 90-100 lbs.

Used belts: 75-85 lbs.

Check belt tension using a belt strand tension gauge.


- Once adjustment completed, allow the engine to run for about ten minutes. Check belt tension and adjust if needed.
- Do not treat belts with any compounds. Keep belts dry.
- Periodically inspect belt and pulleys for wear or damage;

**ALTERNATOR DRIVE BELTS**


These belts have automatic belt tensioner to keep the correct tension without adjustment.

**BACK-UP CAMERA**

The optional back-up camera is located on the rear cap. To clean the camera's protective glass, spray with soapy water. Wipe with a clean damp rag or wiper blade.

|  |
|--|
|  <b>WARNING</b> |
| To avoid injury, do not clean camera with transmission in reverse (R). Shut off engine             |

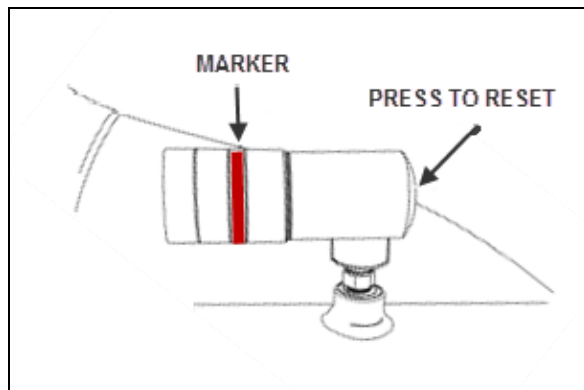
|  |
|--|
| and apply parking brake before cleaning. |
|--|

|  |
|--|
|  <b>CAUTION</b>     |
| To prevent scratches to the camera protective glass, do not wipe with dry rag. Use a clean damp rag. |

**AIR FILTER RESTRICTION INDICATOR**

A filter restriction indicator (optional) is used to monitor the vacuum level between the air filter and engine. A red marker is displayed when the air filter is clogged. Replace the air filter when a red marker is displayed or after a maximum of two years. Reset by pressing on the indicator's extremity.


The filter restriction indicator is located on the engine air intake duct



**AIR FILTER RESTRICTION INDICATOR** 01052\_2

**A/C AND HEATING SYSTEM AIR FILTERS**

For maximum air conditioning and heating system efficiency, air filters should be inspected and cleaned as required in maintenance schedule to ensure proper ventilation of the evaporator and heating radiator cores. To clean filters, back flush with water, then dry with air.

|  |
|--|
|  <b>CAUTION</b> |
| Do not use high pressure water jet to avoid damaging filter.                                       |

|  |
|--|
|  <b>CAUTION</b> |
| Be sure not to reverse filter upon installation.   |

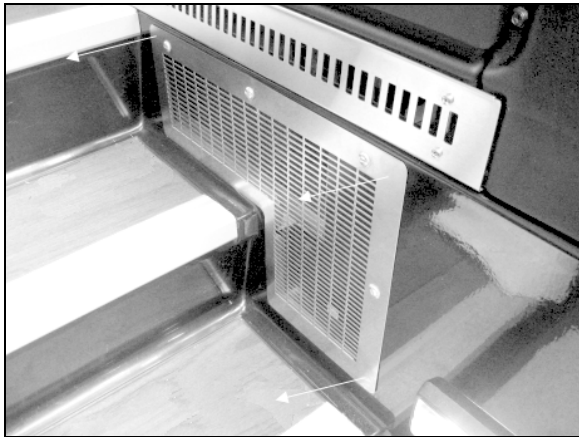
## 8-12 Care and Maintenance

### Driver's Area Air Filter

The driver HVAC system's air filter is located behind the dashboard R.H. side and it can be removed for cleaning or replacement. To gain access to the A/C filter, unscrew the grill located at the top step of the entrance door steps, remove the plastic cover holding the filter and slide out the air filter.

#### **NOTE**

*If the windshield is continuously fogged, check that the driver's air filter is not clogged.*



DRIVER'S AREA AIR FILTER GRILL REMOVAL



REMOVING DRIVER'S SECTION AIR FILTER

### PASSENGERS AREA AIR FILTER

The central HVAC system's air filter is located in the evaporator compartment on driver's side of the vehicle. To access, open the evaporator compartment. An access panel labeled "AIR FILTER" is located above the evaporator and heating coils. It is held shut by quarter-turn screws. Slide out the filters for maintenance purposes.



PASSENGERS AREA AIR FILTER REMOVAL

22306

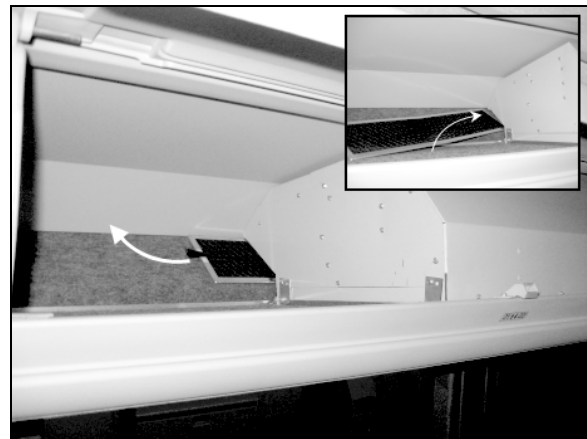


#### **CAUTION**

Be sure not to install filter in inverted position.

### Air Filters in the Overhead Compartments

Remove, clean or replace the air filter located behind each overhead baggage compartment fan. Slide the filter in and out using the tab fixed on the side of the filter.




OVERHEAD COMPARTMENT FAN AIR FILTER

### HOSE INSPECTION

Inspect hoses for leaks regularly to ensure efficient, economical and safe operation of the engine and related equipment. Carefully inspect all fittings, clamps and ties. To prevent chafing, make sure hoses are not touching shafts, couplings, heated surfaces, sharp edges or other parts. Since hose clamps and ties can vibrate loose or fail over time, inspect frequently and tighten or replace as necessary.

Correct leaking hoses immediately. Failure to correct leaks can cause severe damage to the equipment, as well as increase operating costs

due to lost fluids. Treat fuel and oil leaks as an immediate fire hazard.

|  |
|--|
|  <b>WARNING</b> |
| Personal injury and property damage may result from fire caused by leaking flammable fluids.     |

**Hose Service Life**

Hoses have a limited service life. Thoroughly inspect hoses annually. Look for surface damage or indications of twisted, worn, crimped, cracked or leaking lines. Replace damaged hoses immediately.

Hoses should be replaced during major overhaul or after a maximum of seven years service. Be certain replacement hoses match the original equipment manufacturer's specifications.

**LUBRICATION**


Grease all lubrication points during scheduled maintenance. For heavy loads or extended use, lubricate more often. Refer to the Maintenance Manual, section 24 for information on lubrication.

**WHEELS AND TIRES**

Check for loose wheel nuts. Inspect all types of rims for cracks. Cracks can appear in many places but typically radiate out from where a load is applied. Both aluminum alloy and steel wheel nuts should be tightened to 450 to 500 foot-pounds (610 to 680 N.m.) torque.

Keep the tires inflated to the recommended inflation pressure to prolong tire life and for safety.

|   |
|---|
| <p><i><b>NOTE</b></i></p> <p>Recommended tire inflation pressures are given in the "Coach Final Record", placed in the technical publications package supplied with the vehicle. The cold tire inflation pressures are on the Department of Transport certification plate located on the L.H. console besides the driver's seat. When special tires are installed by Prevost on a new vehicle, a special tire inflation chart is added next to the certification plate.</p> |
|---|

|  |
|--|
|  <b>WARNING</b> |
| Do not exceed maximum inflation pressure.  |

|  |
|--|
| Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and could lead to loss of driving control because of reduced road handling. Check tire pressure regularly. |
|--|

- Vehicles equipped with BERU TPMS

On vehicles equipped with the Beru Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), it is better to use the TPMS display as the primary reference to judge when tire pressure need adjustment.

The TPMS presents pressure readings of each tire as a +/- deviation from the wanted target.

If a tire reads within +/- 3 PSI no adjustment is needed.

If a tire reads -4 PSI and below, re-inflate by the marked amount.

If a tire reads +4 PSI and above , deflate by the marked amount.

Relying on the TPMS system is better than relying on a hand gage since the TPMS is temperature compensated and remain accurate no matter if the tires are cold or hot.


Tires take up to 3 hours to get down to ambient temperature after a ride. A common mistake consist of checking pressure while the tires have not fully cooled down which leads into under-inflated tires. Relying on the TPMS eliminate this mistake.

Running tires at optimal pressure reduce tire wear, improve safety and fuel economy.

|   |
|---|
| <p><i><b>NOTE</b></i></p> <p>It is more accurate to use the TPMS display to set the tire pressures than a pressure gauge.</p> |
|---|

**WHEEL BEARINGS**

Check wheel bearing cover for overheating (especially after using the service brakes) during fuel stops by touching the wheel bearing cover.

|  |
|--|
|  <b>WARNING</b>   |
| If replacement tires are different from those described on the certification plate, pressure must be adjusted as requested in the Tire and Rim Association Manual. |

## 8-14 Care and Maintenance

### SERVICE BRAKE TEST

Check for correct pressure build-up. Stop engine and check pressure gauge. Pressure loss should not exceed 3 psi/min (21 kPa/min) with engine stopped and without brake pedal applied. Air loss should not exceed 7 psi/min (48 kPa/min) with engine stopped and brake pedal fully applied.

A convenient way to proceed to the service brake test is with the use of the DID menu “Air Leakage Monitor”. For more information, refer to “Driver Information Display (DID) Menus” in Section 5 *Other Features*.

### PARKING BRAKE TEST

Release parking/emergency brake. Pump service brake pedal until air pressure drops to 65 psi (448 kPa). Make sure the warning buzzer operates and that the emergency brakes apply (the control valve knob lifts up). Allow air pressure to reach 95 psi (655 kPa) before releasing parking brake.

Driving the vehicle while the parking brake is applied should not be possible.

### EXTERIOR LIGHTING VERIFICATION

#### Exterior Lighting Test Mode

This useful function allows quick verification of the vehicle exterior lights.

#### Activating the test mode:

When the vehicle is stationary (parking brake applied), pull up the multi-function lever 3 times within 3 seconds to activate the test mode. This test can be done when the engine is not running providing that the battery charge is sufficient (above 24.0 volts).

The telltale panel alarm emits a sound each second to remind that the test mode is in progress.

#### **NOTE**

*You can also initiate and stop the exterior lighting test mode with the use of the DID menu “Exterior Lamp Inspection”. For more information, refer to “Driver Information Display (DID) Menus” in Section 5 Other Features.*

To stop the test mode, pull up the multi-function lever once or turn the ignition OFF or remove the parking brake.

#### **NOTE**

*The test mode is useful to check the operation of the multiplex outputs and the exterior lights. It doesn't test the functionality of the commands related to the exterior lighting. For a complete testing, the directional signal commands, the headlights commands and the brake pedal have to be checked before. Once these commands tested, activate the test mode to check the exterior lighting.*

#### Using the test mode:

First, test the functionality of the commands related to the exterior lighting:

- Activate the right directional signal and check that the corresponding cluster telltale light illuminates.
- Activate the left directional signal and check that the corresponding cluster telltale light illuminates.
- Activate the hazard warning flashers and check that the corresponding cluster telltale lights illuminate.

#### Stopping the test mode:

- Press the headlights rocker switch in first position and confirm that the instrument panel illuminates. Press the headlights rocker switch in second position and confirm that the headlights illuminate.
- Turn on the high beams and check that the corresponding cluster telltale light illuminates.

Once these commands tested, activate the test mode to check the exterior lighting by pulling up the multi-function lever 3 times within 3 seconds.

Go to the front of the vehicle and check the lights:

- Left and right directional signals.

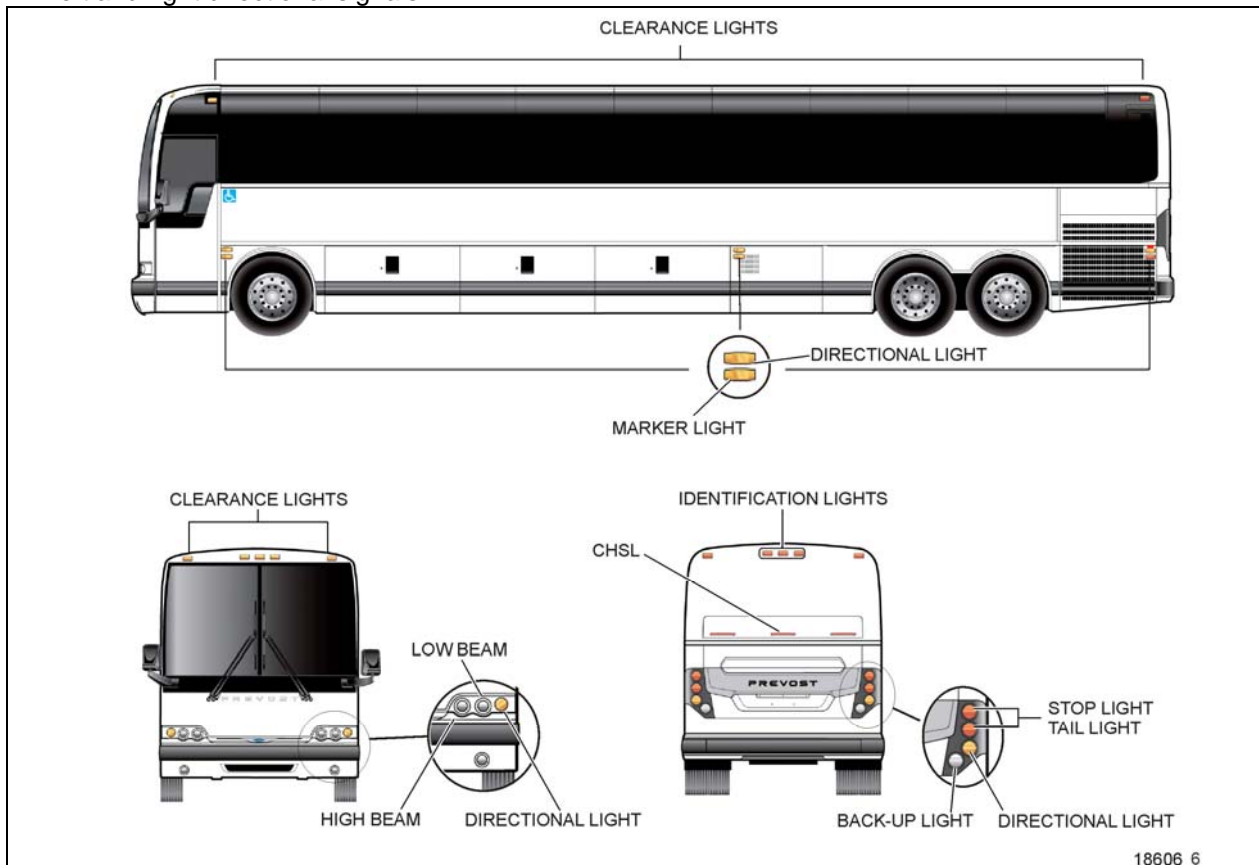
- Identification lights and clearance lights.
- Low beams.
- High beams.

Left side and right side of the vehicle:

- Directional signals.
- Marker lights.

Rear of the vehicle:

- Directional signals.
- Identification lights and clearance lights.
- Stoplights and taillights.
- Back-up lights.



EXTERIOR LIGHTING

## 8-16 Care and Maintenance

### FIRST SERVICE ON NEW VEHICLE

**NOTE**

Refer to Maintenance Manual for precise service schedule.

### ENGINE OIL

Preliminary oil change is not required since the engine has been test-run at the factory. Change oil and filter as specified in Section 24 of the Maintenance Manual.

### COOLANT SYSTEM FILTER

The coolant system filter is designed to recover the soldering residues trapped inside the coolant lines during their initial assembly. Clean filter after first 3,000 miles (5 000 km) and then every 50,000 miles (80 000 km). Refer to the Maintenance Manual under section 05: Cooling System.

**NOTE**

If soldering has been performed on cooling system, clean filter after 3,000 miles (5 000 km).

### GENERAL RECOMMENDATIONS

- Understand basic principles of vehicle operation;
- Always maintain the vehicle in good running condition;
- Do not drive with low fuel. If the fuel tank runs dry, the engine will not start until the air is bled from the fuel system. Refer to "Maintenance Manual" for more information;
- Allow engine to run for at least two minutes at normal idle before shutting *OFF*;
- Engine should be at idle when shifting from neutral (N) to forward (D) or from neutral (N) to reverse (R);
- The automatic transmission does not have a park (P) position. Place transmission in neutral (N) position and apply parking brake when the vehicle is stopped. A warning buzzer will sound if the engine is stopped and the parking brake has not been applied when foot pressure is removed from the brake pedal;

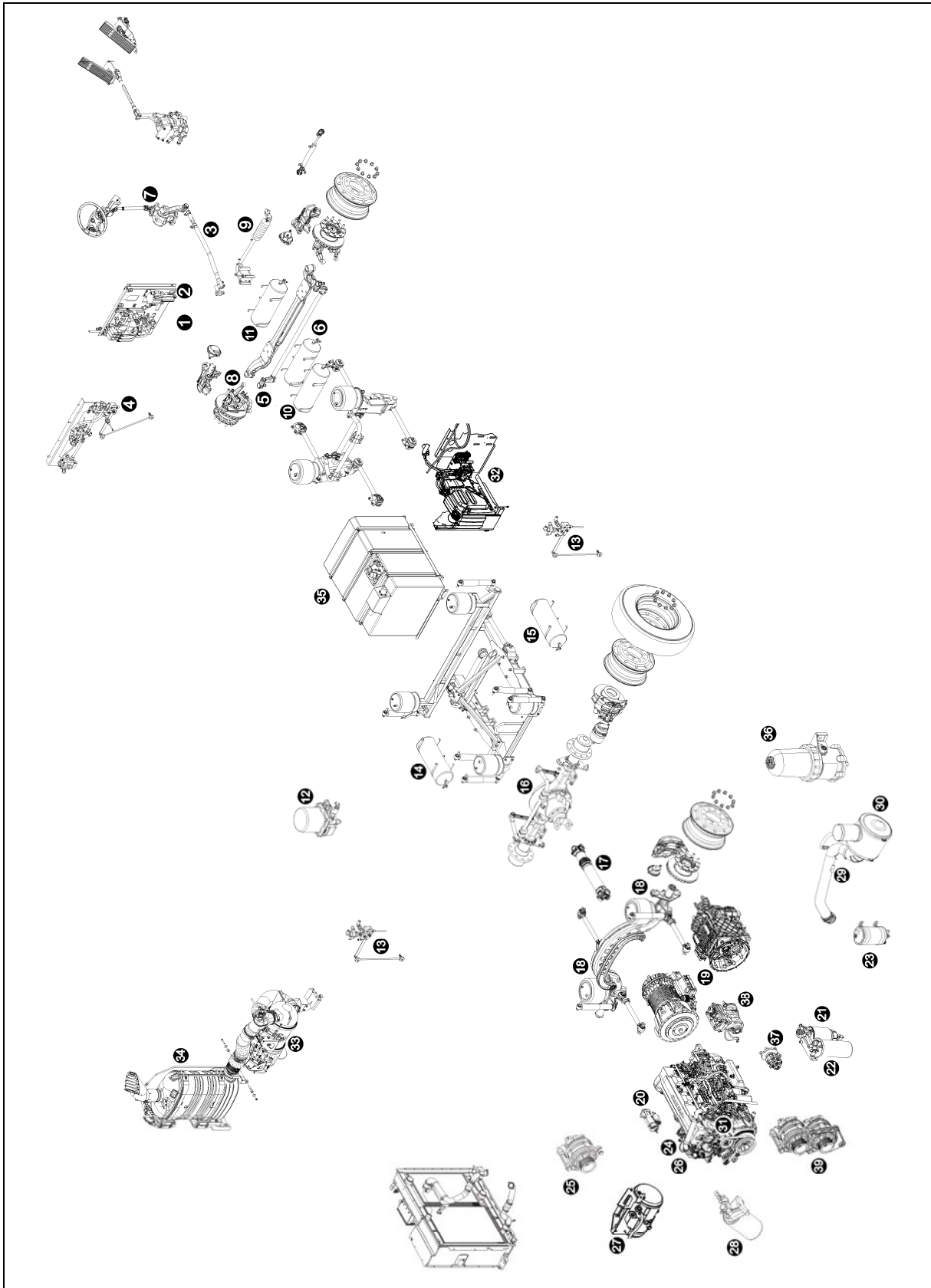
- Always follow the procedures described in this manual;
- Unless stated otherwise, shut *OFF* the engine before performing all servicing, lubrication and maintenance tasks;
- Do not attempt to push or pull-start the coach;
- The vehicle may be damaged if towed with the axle shafts or driveshaft connected;
- Depending of the options selected, two chemical fire extinguishers are under the first row of passenger seats or one extinguisher is in the first curb-side overhead compartment. In case of fire, immediately evacuate all occupants. Occupant safety is the first priority. Do not attempt to extinguish the fire if there is immediate danger or risk for personal injury;
- When driving on ice and snow, accelerate and decelerate gradually;



### WARNING

Report all problems affecting passenger or driver safety to a Prevest service center or an authorized service center. Have problems corrected immediately.





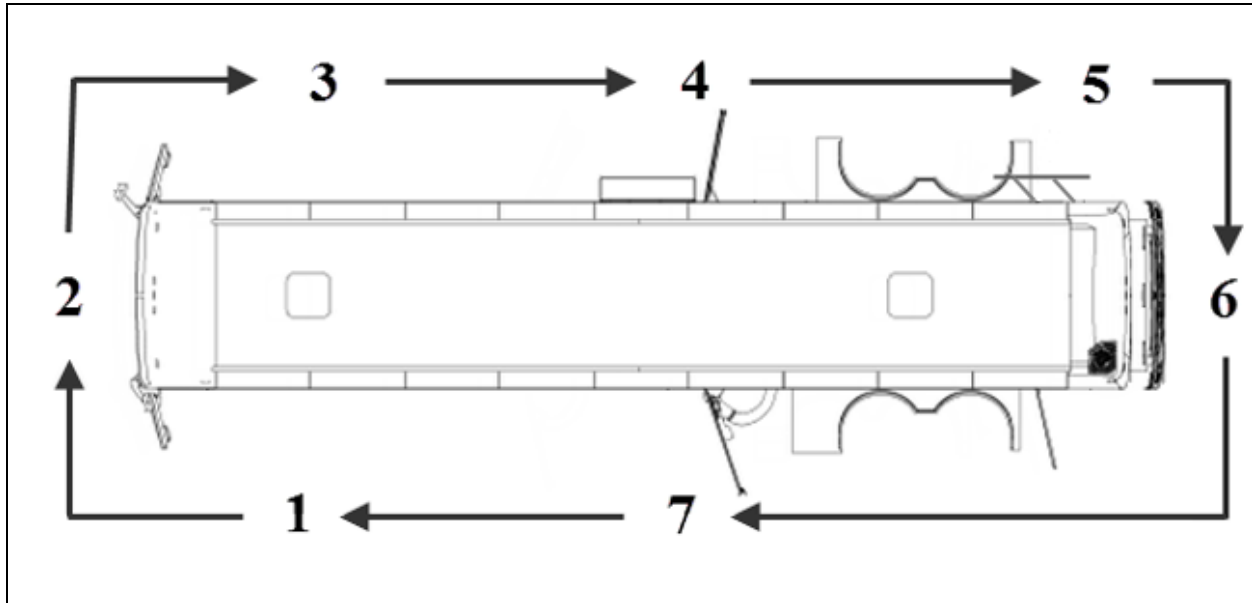
COMPONENTS IDENTIFICATION (COMPONENTS REPRESENTATION MAY DIFFER SLIGHTLY FROM ACTUAL VEHICLE)



## 8-18 Care and Maintenance

---

- |    |                                 |    |   |
|----|---------------------------------|----|---|
| 1  | Accessories air tank drain cock | 21 | Primary fuel filter                     |
| 2  | Accessories air filter          | 22 | Secondary fuel filter                   |
| 3  | Steering drag link              | 23 | Power steering fluid tank               |
| 4  | Height control valve (front)    | 24 | Engine oil filter                       |
| 5  | Steering tie rod                | 25 | Road side alternator                    |
| 6  | Accessories air tank            | 26 | Allison transmission oil dipstick       |
| 7  | Steering column U-joints        | 27 | Engine coolant surge tank               |
| 8  | Steering knuckle pins           | 28 | Coolant filter & conditioner            |
| 9  | Steering damper cylinder        | 29 | Engine air filter restriction indicator |
| 10 | Secondary air tank              | 30 | Engine air filter                       |
| 11 | Kneeling air tank               | 31 | Engine oil dipstick and filler tube     |
| 12 | Air dryer                       | 32 | DEF tank                                |
| 13 | Height control valve (rear)     | 33 | Diesel particulate filter               |
| 14 | Wet air tank                    | 34 | SCR catalytic converter                 |
| 15 | Primary air tank                | 35 | Diesel fuel tank                        |
| 16 | Differential                    | 36 | Davco Fuel Pro 382 fuel filter          |
| 17 | Propeller shaft                 | 37 | Power steering pump                     |
| 18 | Tag axle lever pivot            | 38 | Air compressor                          |
| 19 | Transmission                    | 39 | Curb side alternators                   |
| 20 | Starter                         |    |   |

**WALK-AROUND INSPECTION (BEFORE EVERY TRIP)****NOTE**

Inspect the coach in a circular manner as shown in the illustration.

**Approaching the Coach**

- Check under the coach for oil, fuel, coolant leaks or other signs of damage.
- Check exterior body surfaces for signs of breaks or damage.

**Preparation**

- Drain accumulated water from accessory and wet air tanks.
- Close air tank drain valves.
- Start the engine and let the air pressure build up to normal. Stop engine.
- Switch on hazard warning flashers.
- Make sure parking brakes are applied.

**Step 1: Front Left Side of the Coach**

- Check condition of wheel rim. Especially look for cracks, missing nuts, bent or broken studs.
- Check condition of tire: properly inflated, no serious cuts, bulges, tread wear or any signs of misalignment; valve stem not touching wheel or rim; valve cap in place.

- Check windshield and headlights washer reservoir fluid level and add if necessary.

**Step 2: Front of the Coach**

- Check for damage and clean if dirty.
- Check windshield wiper arms for proper spring tension.
- Check wiper blades for any damage, "dead" rubber and attachment to arm.
- Check to see that there is no mud, snow, ice build-up or other obstruction in front of the ACB radar sensor, if applicable.
- Check clearance and identification lights, they should be clean, operating and of the proper color. Refer to "Exterior Lighting Verification" in Care and Maintenance chapter.
- Turn on headlights. High and low beams should be operating and lenses clean. If equipped, check fog lights. Refer to "Exterior Lighting Verification" in Care and Maintenance chapter.
- Left and right front turn signal lights clean, operating and proper color. Refer

## 8-20 Care and Maintenance

---

to “Exterior Lighting Verification” in Care and Maintenance chapter.

### Step 3: Front Right Side of the Coach

- Check condition of wheel rim. Especially look for cracks, missing nuts, bent or broken studs.
- Check condition of tire: properly inflated, no serious cuts, bulges, tread wear or any signs of misalignment; valve stem not touching wheel or rim; valve cap in place.

### Step 4: Rear Right Side of the Coach

- Check condition of wheels and rims. Especially look for cracks, missing nuts, bent or broken studs.
- Check that baggage and service compartment doors are properly closed.
- Check condition of tires: properly inflated, no serious cuts, bulges, tread wear or any signs of misalignment; valve stems not touching wheels or rims; valve caps in place and no objects stuck between the wheels.

### Step 5: Engine Compartment Right Side Area

- Check engine and surrounding areas for coolant, oil and fuel leaks.
- Check fuel/filter water separator and drain if necessary. Check for leaks.
- Check wiring harness for signs of damage.

### Step 6: Engine Compartment

- Check engine and surrounding areas for coolant, oil and fuel leaks.
- Check wiring harness for signs of damage.
- Check condition of drive belts.
- Check engine crankcase oil level, add if necessary.
- Check Allison transmission fluid level (can also be checked from push-button shift selector), add if necessary.
- Check power steering reservoir fluid level, add if necessary.

- Check coolant surge tank fluid level, add if necessary.
- Check air cleaner restriction indicator, replace air cleaner when red signal locks in full view.
- Check stop light, tail light, directional signal light and back-up light assembly; operating, clean and proper color. Refer to “Exterior Lighting Verification” in Care and Maintenance chapter.

### Step 7: Rear Left Side of the Coach

- Check condition of wheels and rims. Especially look for cracks, missing nuts, bent or broken studs.
- Check that baggage and service compartment doors are properly closed.
- If so equipped, check coolant heater system for fuel leaks.
- Check condition of tires: properly inflated, no serious cuts, bulges, tread wear or any signs of misalignment; valve stems not touching wheels or rims; valve caps in place and no objects stuck between the wheels.

### Inside the Coach

- Check for proper operation of the entrance door.
- Check steps; clean them if there is any substance that makes them slippery, which makes coach entry/exit hazardous.
- Check that emergency exit windows and roof escape hatches can be opened then close all windows and hatches securely.
- Verify proper operation of windshield wiper/washer.
- Adjust and clean mirrors for adequate rear view vision.
- Start engine and check for proper operation of all gauges and indicator lights.
- Check for proper operation of electric and air horns and back-up alarm.

- Perform a brake test. Check both primary and secondary pressure gauges.



**DIMENSIONS AND WEIGHTS** ..... 5

**CAPACITIES** ..... 5

**FUEL TYPE** ..... 5

    BIODIESEL FUELS ..... 5

**WHEELS AND TIRES** ..... 6

    RECOMMENDED TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE AT MAXIMUM COLD LOAD ..... 6

**BELTS**..... 6

**VOLVO D13 ENGINE** ..... 6

**ALLISON TRANSMISSION** ..... 6

**PROPELLER SHAFT** ..... 7

**BRAKES**..... 7

    BRAKE CHAMBER EFFECTIVE AREA ..... 7

**AIR SYSTEM** ..... 7

**ANTILOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS)**..... 7

    TROUBLESHOOTING AND TESTING ..... 7

**AUTOMATIC TRACTION CONTROL (ATC) – ELECTRONIC STABILITY PROGRAM (ESP)** ..... 7

**STEERING**..... 7

**ELECTRICAL SYSTEM**..... 8

**SUSPENSION** ..... 8

    I-BEAM AXLE FRONT SUSPENSION (OPTION) ..... 8

    INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION ..... 8

    DRIVE AXLE (ALL) ..... 8

    TAG AXLE ..... 8

**ALIGNMENT SPECIFICATIONS** ..... 9

**COOLING SYSTEM** ..... 9

**FUEL SYSTEM** ..... 9

**EXHAUST SYSTEM** ..... 10

**HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING** ..... 10

**OIL SPECIFICATIONS** ..... 10

    ENGINE ..... 10

    ALLISON TRANSMISSION ..... 10

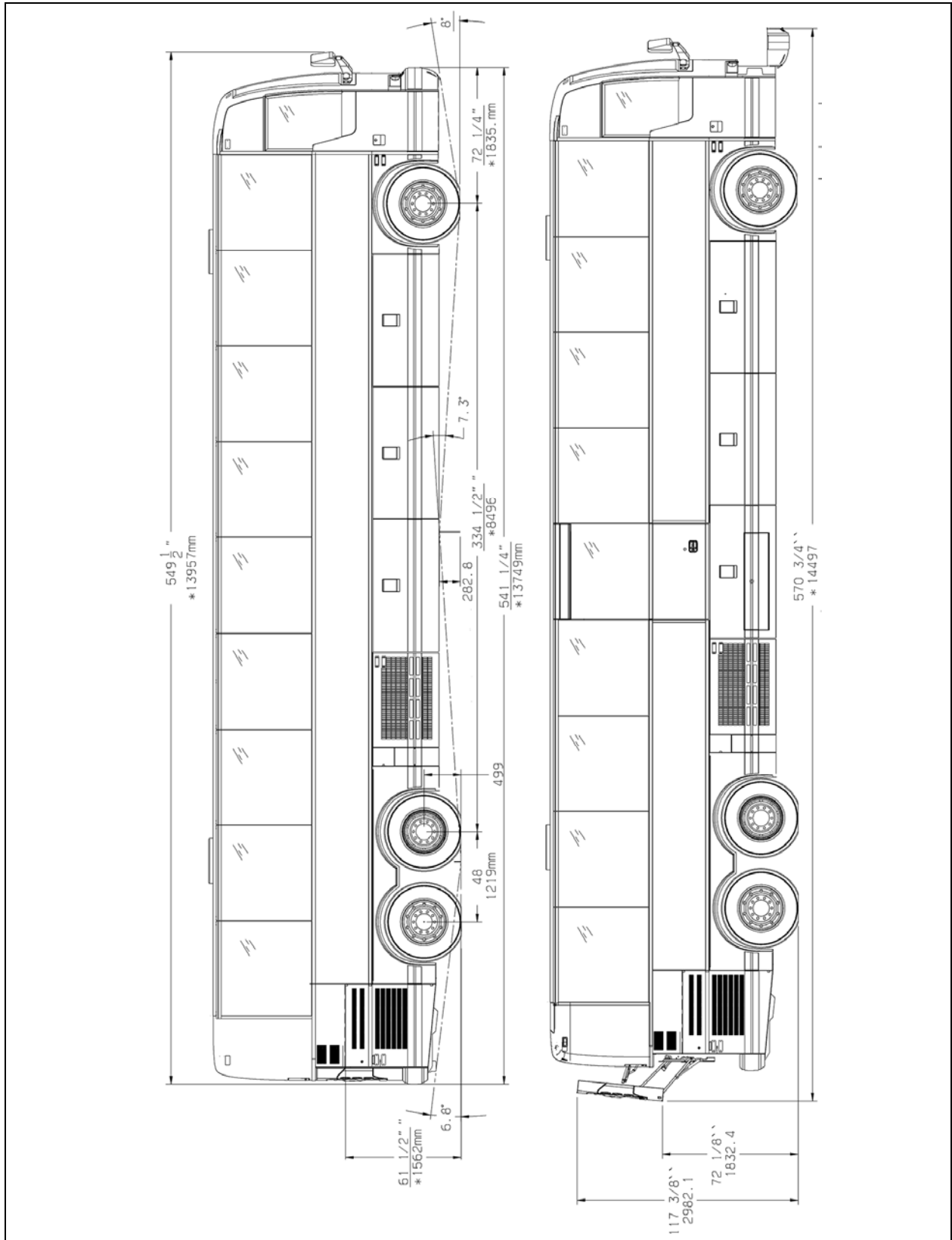
    DIFFERENTIAL..... 10

    POWER STEERING RESERVOIR ..... 11

## 9-2 Technical Information

---

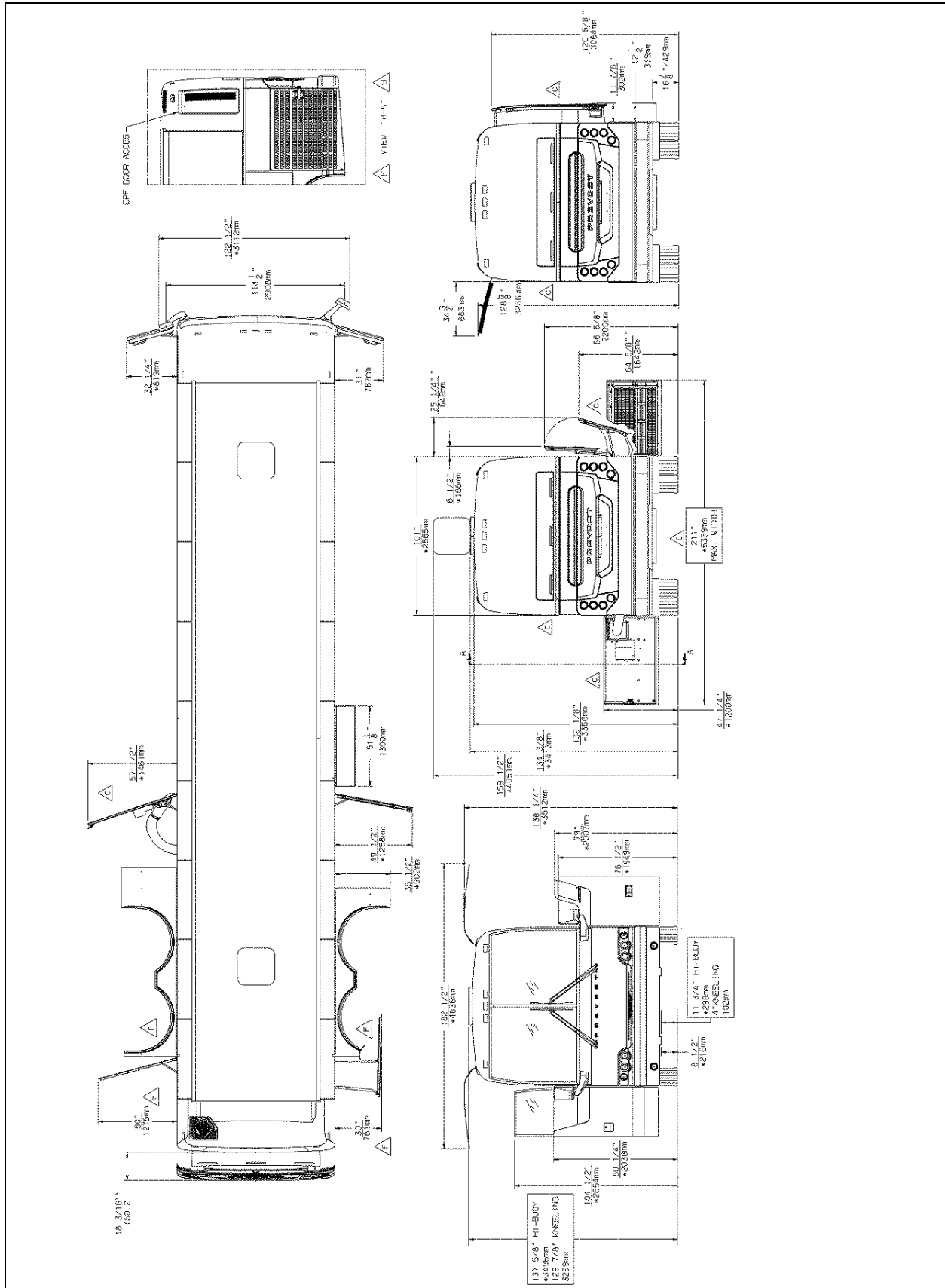
|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>PRE-HEATING SYSTEM.....</b>                  | <b>11</b> |
| <b>PLATES AND CERTIFICATION.....</b>            | <b>11</b> |
| SAFETY CERTIFICATION .....                      | 12        |
| DOT CERTIFICATION PLATE .....                   | 12        |
| <b>VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN).....</b> | <b>12</b> |
| <b>COACH FINAL RECORD .....</b>                 | <b>13</b> |



X3-45 OVERALL DIMENSIONS (SIDE ELEVATION)

18673\_1





X3-45 OVERALL DIMENSIONS (TOP, FRONT AND REAR VIEWS)

| DIMENSIONS AND WEIGHTS                                   | X3-45                 |
|--|-----------------------|
| Overall length (including bumpers)                       | 45' (13,7 m)          |
| Overall width  | 102" (2,59 m)         |
| Overall height (hatch open)                              | 140" (3,56 m)         |
| Wheelbase (center of front axle to center of drive axle) | 334½" (8496 mm)       |
| Floor height from ground                                 | 48 1/2" (1,23 m)      |
| Ground clearance   | 11" (280 mm)          |
| Step height from ground                                  | 15" (380 mm)          |
| Step height (other steps)                                | 7" (178 mm)           |
| Headroom   | 80" (2,03 m)          |
| Entrance door opening width                              | 30" (762 mm)          |
| Front overhang   | 72¼" (1836 mm)        |
| Rear overhang  | 107 1/2" (2.20 m)     |
| Front track  | 85.9" (2,18 m)        |
| Drive track  | 76.7" (1,95 m)        |
| Rear track (Tag axle)                                    | 83.6" (2,12 m)        |
| Turning circle radius (I-Beam Axle)                      | 47'-3" (14.4 m)       |
| Turning circle radius (independent suspension)           | 43'-9" (13.3 m)       |
| Curb weight  | 37 300 lb (16 916 kg) |
| Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (G.V.W.R.)                   | 53 000 lb (24 040 kg) |
| Front axle Gross Axle Weight Rating (G.A.W.R.)           | 16 500 lb (7 500 kg)  |
| Drive axle (G.A.W.R.)                                    | 22 500 lb (10 206 kg) |
| Tag axle (G.A.W.R.)                                      | 14 000 lb (6 350 kg)  |


The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (G.V.W.R.) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (G.A.W.R.) for front drive and tag axles are listed on a certification plate located on the L.H. control panel in driver's section.

| CAPACITIES  | X3-45                 |
|---|-----------------------|
| Volvo D13 Engine oil (refill volume with filter change) | 40 U.S. qrts (38 l)   |
| Fuel tank (legal capacity equal to 95% of volume)       | 203 U.S. gal. (768 l) |

| CAPACITIES   | X3-45   |
|--|---|
| Diesel Exhaust fluid tank (DEF)                                    | 16 gall. U.S. (60 l)  |
| Cooling system (excluding heating syst.)                           | 17.4 U.S. gal. (66 l)   |
| Allison Automatic Transmission (does not include external circuit) | 6 U.S. gallons (23 l)<br>6.9 U.S. gallons (26 l) with retarder        |
| Differential oil   | 20 U.S. qts (18,7 l) Meritor Axle<br>19 U.S. qts (18 l) ZF A-132 Axle |
| Power steering reservoir   | 4.0 U.S. qts (3,8 l)  |
| A/C compressor oil   | 2.6 U.S. qts (2,5 l)  |
| Windshield washer reservoir  | 5.3 U.S. gal. (20 l)  |
| Refrigerant  | 26 lb (11.82 kg)  |
| Toilet sump tank   | 17 US gal. (65 liters)  |

### FUEL TYPE

Diesel engines for 2007 and later model year vehicles are designed to operate only with **Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel** (ULSD) fuel, which can contain no more than 15 ppm sulfur.

|   |                |
|---|----------------|
|    | <b>CAUTION</b> |
| <p>ULSD fuel is necessary to avoid fouling the engine's Exhaust Aftertreatment System. Use of fuel other than ULSD will reduce the efficiency and durability of the engine.</p> |                |

### BIODIESEL FUELS

Biodiesel with up to a maximum of 20% biofuel (B20) may be used and will not affect the manufacturer's mechanical warranty as to engine and emissions system related components. The biofuel used in the various blends must conform to ASTM D6751; therefore B1 to B5 blends conforming to ASTM D975 and B6 to B20 blends conforming to ASTM D7467. Also, any engine performance problem related to the use of biodiesel fuel would not be recognized nor considered as Volvo or Prevest's responsibility.

However, Volvo engines are certified to comply with U.S. EPA and California emissions standards based upon the use of *test fuels* with

## 9-6 Technical Information

specifications established by these regulatory agencies.

Alternative fuels, including biodiesel, that are not substantially similar to the required *test fuels* may adversely affect engine emissions compliance. As a result, Volvo does not warrant the engine will conform to applicable Federal or California emissions limits when operated on biodiesel or other alternative fuels that are not substantially similar to specified test fuels used for certification.

Additional maintenance is required and is covered in the maintenance manual "Fuel system" section.

### WHEELS AND TIRES

Alcoa aluminum forged wheels .....9" X 22½"

Tires ..... 315/80 R22.5 load range "L"

### RECOMMENDED TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE AT MAXIMUM COLD LOAD

The recommended tire inflation pressures are given in the applicable documents supplied with the vehicle. In addition, minimum cold tire inflation pressures are listed on the Department of Transport (DOT) certification plate, affixed on the left wall near the driver's seat.

Vehicle equipped with TPMS: The TPMS target pressures are factory set to equal the prevailing tire pressure at delivery time. When tire pressures are increased to account for higher vehicle weight, the TPMS set point need to be increased accordingly.



### CAUTION

These tire pressures are established in accordance with the maximum allowable load on each axle. A lower pressure is recommended if the axle load is less than the above specifications. Weigh vehicle fully loaded and pressurize according to tire manufacturer's recommendations. For non standard tire and wheel specifications, see Prevost tire pressure tabulation in "Coach Final Record".

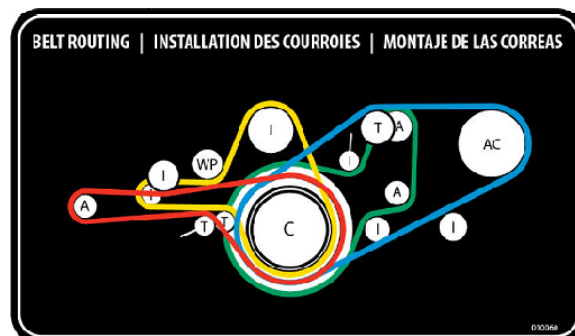


### WARNING

Special tire selection may lower maximum allowable speed limit, even below posted

speed limit. For maximum safety, check with tire manufacturer.

### BELTS



|                      |                       |                           |
|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>A:</b> Alternator | <b>I:</b> Idler       | <b>T:</b> Tensioner       |
| <b>C:</b> Crank      | <b>WP:</b> Water pump | <b>AC:</b> A/C compressor |

| Belt application                   | Type                    | Qty |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|-----|
| A/C system Bitzer 4NFCY compressor | V Belt BX71             | 2   |
| Alternator (twin Bosch, curb side) | Multi-V-8 Rib 8PK1575   | 1   |
| Alternator (emergency)             | Multi-V-8 Rib 8PK1512   | 1   |
| Alternator (single, driver side)   | Multi-V-10 Rib 10PK1695 | 1   |
| Coolant pump                       | Multi-V-10 Rib 10PK1512 | 1   |

### NOTE

*Belts specifications may vary. For proper belt selection, always consult your vehicle Coach Final Record.*

### VOLVO D13 ENGINE

Type: 4 cycles / inline six cylinders  
 Displacement: 12.8 liters, SOHC, 4 valves per cylinder  
 Power ..... 435 HP  
 Torque..... 1700 lbf·ft @ 1100 rpm  
 Recommended cruise speed range 1300-1500rpm  
 Full dress, dry weight 2519 lb

### ALLISON TRANSMISSION

Allison B500 electronically controlled six speed automatic transmissions.

### Gear Ratios

1<sup>st</sup> ..... 3.510  
 2<sup>nd</sup> ..... 1.906  
 3<sup>rd</sup> ..... 1.429

|                                     |       |
|-------------------------------------|-------|
| 4 <sup>th</sup> .....               | 1.000 |
| 5 <sup>th</sup> .....               | 0.737 |
| 6 <sup>th</sup> .....               | 0.639 |
| Reverse.....                        | 4.801 |
| Converter.....                      | 1.9   |
| Differential ratio (optional) ..... | 3.58  |

**PROPELLER SHAFT**

Hayes-Dana SPL250 type tubular shafts, provided with heavy-duty universal joints.

**BRAKES**

The features of the braking system include a dual system where the front and rear circuits are completely independent from each other. The brakes are air operated disc type brakes with automatic slack adjusters on front, drive and tag axles. The emergency/parking brakes are located on the drive and tag axles only.

**BRAKE CHAMBER EFFECTIVE AREA**

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| Front axle ..... | 24 in <sup>2</sup>                          |
| Drive axle ..... | 24/24 in <sup>2</sup> (service / emergency) |
| Tag axle.....    | 14/16 in <sup>2</sup> (service / emergency) |

**AIR SYSTEM**

Compressed air is provided by a twin cylinder, 31.8 cfm Wabco, gear-driven, water-cooled and engine oil lubricated air compressor.

**ANTILOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS)**

The antilock braking system has one Electronic Control Unit (ECU) controlling a four channel system. A wheel slip sensor is mounted at each front axle and drive axle wheel. The Tag axle wheels are slave to the drive axle wheels.

The Electronic Control Module (ECM) is maintenance free. Its operating voltage is 24 ± 6 volts DC. The thermal operating range for the ECM is from -40 to 167°F (-40 to 75°C).

The solenoid control valves are maintenance free. Their operating voltage is 24 (+4.8, -2.4) volts DC. The rated current draw is 1.65 amps. The thermal operating range of the solenoid control valves is from -40 to 176°F (-40 to 80°C).

**TROUBLESHOOTING AND TESTING**

For troubleshooting and testing of the vehicle's anti-lock braking system, refer to Meritor WABCO Maintenance Manual: "Anti-Lock Brake


Systems For Trucks, Tractors and Buses" or use dashboard Driver Information Display (DID).


**AUTOMATIC TRACTION CONTROL (ATC) – ELECTRONIC STABILITY PROGRAM (ESP)**

In addition to the ABS function, vehicle may be equipped with an advanced model of Bendix EC-60 controller to provide an **Automatic Traction Control (ATC)** feature. Bendix ATC can improve vehicle traction during acceleration, and lateral stability while accelerating through curves. ATC utilizes **Engine Torque Limiting (ETL)** where the ECU communicates with the engine's controller and/or **Differential Braking (DB)** where individual wheel brake applications are used to improve vehicle traction.

The EC-60 advanced model controller also provides ABS-based stability features referred to as **ESP® Electronic Stability Program**.

Refer to Maintenance Manual, Section 12: Brake and Air System for more information on this system.

|  |                |
|--|----------------|
|                               | <b>CAUTION</b> |
| Even with ESP-equipped vehicles, the driver remains responsible for ensuring vehicle stability during operation. |                |

|   |               |
|---|---------------|
|    | <b>DANGER</b> |
| <b>ESP may reduce the vehicle speed automatically.</b>  |               |
| ESP can make the vehicle <b>decelerate automatically</b> . ESP can slow the vehicle with or <b>without the operator applying the brake</b> , and <b>even when the throttle is being applied</b> . |               |

**STEERING**

- ZF 8098 integral hydraulic assisted steering gear;
- Variable assistance in function of speed is optional.
- Volvo hydraulic pump gear driven from engine drive.
- Hydraulic reservoir and dipstick accessible from engine compartment.

## 9-8 Technical Information

---

- System pressure: 2175 psi (150 bars).
- Steering wheel diameter 20". Tilt steering wheel and telescopic steering column; pneumatically locked with foot operated switch for adjustment.
- Number of turns: 5¾.
- Outside turning radius: See Dimensions and Weight.

### ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

- 24-volt, negative ground;
- 12-volt exterior lighting;
- Three 28 volts, 150 amp, self-regulated, belt-driven, air-cooled HD 10 Bosch alternators;
- Four 12 Volts, group 31 AGM type batteries connected in series/parallel. Each one has a reserve capacity of 200 minutes and a cold cranking capacity of 800 amps.
- 100 amp battery equalizer.

### SUSPENSION

Goodyear rolling lobe type air springs (bellows) are used throughout.

#### I-BEAM AXLE FRONT SUSPENSION (OPTION)

- 2 Bellows (12"); for a G.A.W.R. of 16,500 lb;
- 2 Shock absorbers;
- 4 Radius rods;
- 1 Transverse radius rod;
- 1 Height control valve.
- 1 sway bar (1¾" diameter).

#### INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION

- 2 Bellows (12") for a G.A.W.R. of 16,500 lb;
- 2 Shock absorbers;
- 2 Upper A-arms;
- 2 Lower A-arms;
- 2 Torque rods;
- 2 Steering Levers;
- 1 Height control valve;
- 1 sway bar (1¾" diameter).

#### DRIVE AXLE (ALL)

- 4 Bellows (11");
- 4 Shock absorbers;
- 3 Radius rods;
- 1 Panhard rod;
- 2 Height control valves.

#### TAG AXLE

- 2 Bellows (11");
- 2 Shock absorbers;
- 3 Radius rods;
- 1 Panhard rod.

### ALIGNMENT SPECIFICATIONS

Use static wheel alignment systems which work with angle measurements only, such as Josam or Hunter systems. Static alignment specifications are listed in the following tables:

| I-BEAM AXLE FRONT AXLE |               |               |               |
|------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
|                        | Minimum value | Nominal value | Maximum value |
| Right camber           | -0.25°        | 0.125°        | 0.375°        |
| Left camber            | -0.25°        | 0.125°        | 0.375°        |
| Right caster           | 2.0°          | 2.75°         | 3.5°          |
| Left caster            | 2.0°          | 2.75°         | 3.5°          |
| Total toe              | 0.04°         | 0.06°         | 0.08°         |

| INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION |               |               |               |
|------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
|                              | Minimum value | Nominal value | Maximum value |
| Right camber                 | 0.0°          | 0.150°        | 0.30°         |
| Left camber                  | 0.0°          | 0.150°        | 0.30°         |
| Right caster                 | 2.35°         | 2.6°          | 2.85°         |
| Left caster                  | 2.35°         | 2.6°          | 2.85°         |
| Total toe                    | 0.04°         | 0.06°         | 0.08°         |

| DRIVE AXLE MERITOR |               |               |               |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
|                    | Minimum value | Nominal value | Maximum value |
| Thrust angle       | ±0.11°        |               |               |
| Total toe          | 0.18° toe-in  | 0°            | 0.18° toe-out |

| DRIVE AXLE ZF A-132 |               |               |               |
|---------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
|                     | Minimum value | Nominal value | Maximum value |
| Thrust angle        | ±0.11°        |               |               |
| Total toe           | 0.15° toe-in  | 0°            | 0.15° toe-out |

| TAG AXLE      |               |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
|               | Minimum value | Nominal value | Maximum value |
| Thrust angle* | -0.02°        | 0             | 0.02°         |
| Total toe     | 0.08° toe-in  | 0°            | 0.02° toe-out |

(\*) Use the drive axle as reference

### COOLING SYSTEM

- Extra capacity, Aluminum radiator and aluminum charge air cooler arranged side by side.
- 24V ECU controlled electrical cooling fans, total of eight, six over radiator side and two on charge air cooler.
- Rubber insulated from the body.
- Expansion tank above radiator and remote mounted.
- System pressure 14 psi.
- 185° F thermostat.
- Full system capacity 22.5 US gal (85 l).
- Coolant filter.

### FUEL SYSTEM

Polyethylene 208 US gallons/787 liters fuel tank centrally located.

Equipped with:

- Anti-spill device.
- Safety filler cap on right side of coach.
- Pressure relief valve.
- Electric fuel gauge.
- Low level signal at 26 US gallons/98.4 liters.
- Primary filter 25 microns (standard).
- Primary fuel filter with electrical water indicator (Volvo D13).
- Fuel pro 382 filter available as an option as a primary filter.
- Secondary filter 3 to 5 microns.
- Shut-off valve on fuel supply line.
- Provided with filling access on the right side of the coach.

## 9-10 Technical Information

### EXHAUST SYSTEM

One all stainless steel exhaust aftertreatment system including:

- Catalytic converter to reduce NOx.
- FleetGuard assembly made of a DOC (Diesel Oxidation Catalyst) and a DPF (Diesel Particulate Filter). Noise, vibration and heat insulated. This assembly is mounted to the bus structure and is accessible through an exterior access door.
- Tail pipe diffuser and rain deviation device.
- Exhaust pipe with Insulation and a flexible section.
- Exhaust to rear rooftop left hand corner.
- Diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) tank (60 liters) and injection system.

### HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING

Two air conditioning systems using the same compressor are available: the large capacity (central) A/C and an optional overhead compartment A/C. The large capacity A/C provides adequate capacity of conditioned and filtered air for all climatic conditions. Fresh air is drawn into the system from the left (driver's) side of the vehicle. Return air is taken from the middle of the vehicle. The driver's heater and defogger are controlled separately from the central unit. An air mixture selector enables air to be drawn into the system from outside the vehicle or recirculated.

The optional overhead compartment A/C is used to cool air delivered from registers in the passenger overhead compartments.

| CENTRAL A/C                          |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Air conditioning capacity            | 9 tons                               |
| Refrigerant type                     | 134A                                 |
| Heating capacity                     | 152 000 Btu/h                        |
| Air flow, main A/C                   | 2 600 cfm (73,6 m <sup>3</sup> /min) |
| Air flow, overhead compartment, opt. | 450 cfm (12,7 m <sup>3</sup> /min)   |

| COMPRESSOR (for central A/C) |                      |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| Number of cylinders          | 4                    |
| Operating speed              | 500 to 3500 rpm      |
| Oil capacity                 | 2.6 U.S. qts (2,5 l) |
| Approved oil                 | Bitzer BSE55 (POE)   |

#### NOTE

*The above oils are suitable for use with reciprocating compressors using refrigerant R-134a and with evaporator temperatures above -40°F (-40°C).*

### OIL SPECIFICATIONS

#### ENGINE

For the Volvo D13M engine, we recommend using SAE 10W-30 "Volvo Premium Motor Oil VDS-4.5" or other Volvo Approved VDS-4.5 oils.

Volvo VDS-4.5 oils exceed API service category CK-4 oils.

#### ALLISON TRANSMISSION

Allison Transmission recommends the following fluids:

- Castrol TranSynd™ or TES-295 specification equivalent fluid;
- TES-389 specification equivalent fluid.

#### DIFFERENTIAL

Multigrade gear oil meeting MIL-PRF-2105E: 85W-140 is recommended for use in the Meritor drive axle. This lubricant performs well over a broad temperature range, providing good gear and bearing protection in a variety of climates. If temperature drops below 10°F (-12°C), 80W-90 should be used, and below -15°F (-26°C), 75W-90 should be used. In extreme conditions or for better performance, full synthetic gear oil should be used. For vehicles equipped with the ZF A-132 drive axle, use Chevron Multigear oil

80W-90 (ZF lubricant class 12M) or refer to ZF List of lubricants TE-ML 12 for other approved lubricants.

**POWER STEERING RESERVOIR**

Use Automatic Transmission Fluid (ATF) Dexron-II-E or Dexron-III for this system.

**PRE-HEATING SYSTEM**

Depending on options chosen, a coolant heater may be installed on the coolant circuit. The heater can be used as a pre-heater or as an auxiliary heat source.

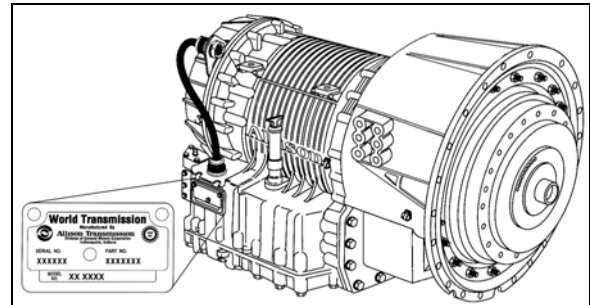
Only the Spheros 104,000 Btu preheater is available. The heater is controlled by a programmable timer. See Other Features chapter for information on how to use the timer.

| SPHEROS                                       |         |                             |
|---|---------|-----------------------------|
| Model   |         | Thermo 300                  |
| Heating output                                |         | 104,000 Btu/hr<br>(30 kW)   |
| Fuel type                                     |         | Same as engine              |
| Fuel consumption                              |         | 4.8 US qts/hr<br>(4.5 l/hr) |
| Rated voltage                                 |         | 24 V DC                     |
| Operating voltage                             |         | 20-28 V DC                  |
| Electric power consumption without water pump |         | 110 watts                   |
| Dimensions                                    | (L)     | 24.01 (610 mm)              |
| Inch (mm)                                     | (W)     | 9.69 (246 mm)               |
|   | (H)     | 8.66 (220 mm)               |
| Weight  | lb (kg) | 41.88 (19)                  |

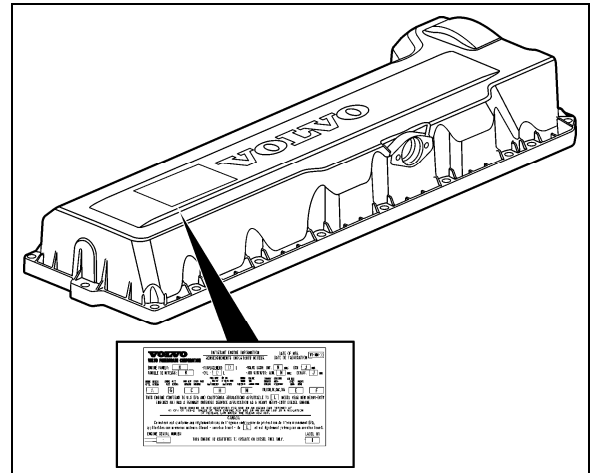
**PLATES AND CERTIFICATION**

The main components of the vehicle such as engine, transmission, axles and chassis are identified by different serial numbers. It may be necessary to locate these numbers for warranty purposes.

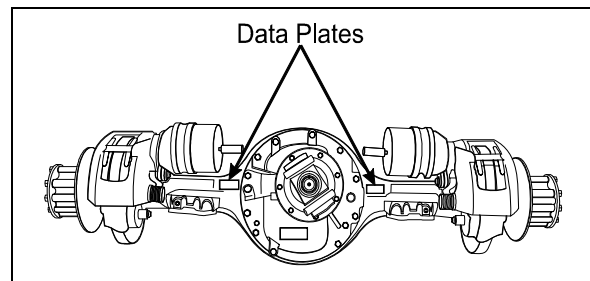
The engine data plate is located on the rocker cover. The engine serial and model number and a list of the optional engine equipment are written on this plate. Refer to this information when ordering replacement parts. Also the engine data plate certifies that the engine conforms to federal and any state exhaust emissions regulations.



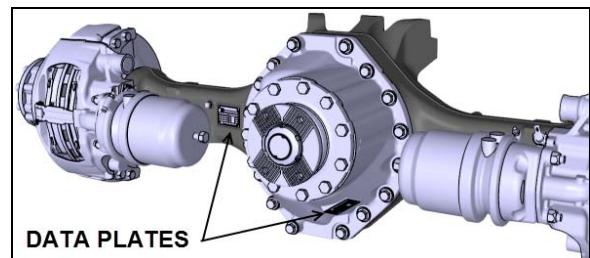
ALLISON TRANSMISSION 07076



VOLVO D13 ENGINE DATA PLATE 00052



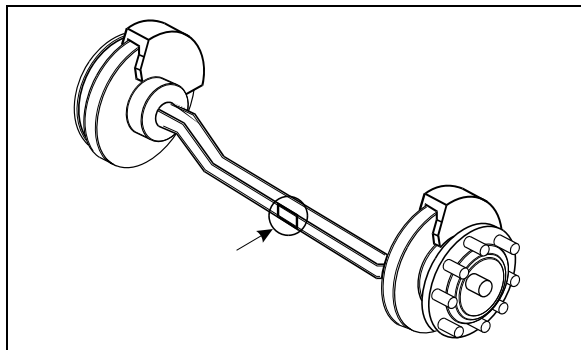
MERITOR DRIVE AXLE 00007



ZF A-132 DRIVE AXLE

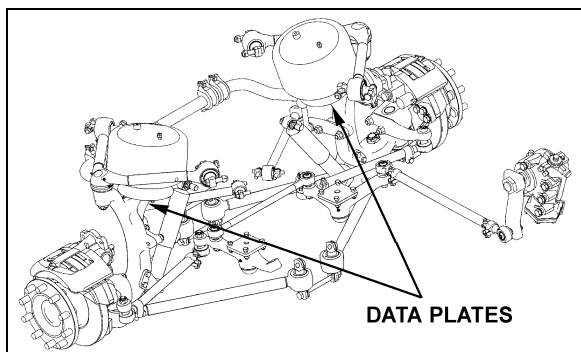


## 9-12 Technical Information



I-BEAM FRONT AXLE

00008



INDEPENDENT FRONT SUSPENSION

16136

### SAFETY CERTIFICATION

- Vehicle components meet specifications and standards as follows:
- Material and parts conform to ASTM and/or SAE standards in effect at the time of manufacture.
- All factory-installed interior materials meet FMVSS 302 for fire resistance.
- Certified according to Provincial, State and Federal Safety standards (Canadian and US) BMCSS, FMVSS and CMVSS.
- Other applicable certification labels are affixed to the component.

### DOT CERTIFICATION PLATE

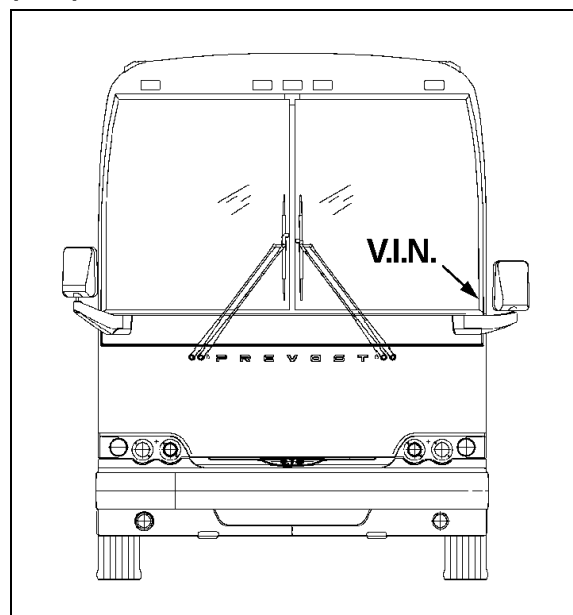
This certifies that vehicles manufactured by Prevost comply with all Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards at the time of manufacture. Information such as date of manufacture, model year, gross vehicle weight rating, tire types and inflation pressure is also etched on this plate. The DOT Certification plate is affixed to L.H. control panel.

|   |               |                 |        |           |           |
|---|---------------|-----------------|--------|-----------|-----------|
|   |               | <b>PREVOST</b>  |        |           |           |
| MANUFACTURED BY : GROUPE VOLVO CANADA INC.<br>FABRIQUE PAR : CIT CLAIR, QUB.  |               |                 |        |           |           |
| DATE DE MFG. : _____<br>DATE OF FAB. : _____  |               |                 |        |           |           |
| G.V.W.R. : 24040 KG. (53000 LBS).<br>P.N.O.V. : _____   |               |                 |        |           |           |
| AXIS/   | C.A.W.R./     | TIRES/          | RIMS/  | COIL      | SINGLE    |
| ESSIEUX   | P.N.B.E.      | PNEUS           | JANTES | INFLATION | OR DUAL   |
|   | KG (LBS)      |                 |        | PRESS. A  | OR DOUBLE |
|   |               |                 |        | FROID     |           |
|   |               |                 |        | KPA (PSI) |           |
| FRONT:  | 484 (1050)    | 315/80R22.5 (L) | 22.5X9 | 896 (130) | S         |
| INT. DIFF.:   | 10206 (22500) | 315/80R22.5 (L) | 22.5X9 | 724 (105) | D         |
| REAR:   | 6350 (14000)  | 315/80R22.5 (L) | 22.5X9 | 724 (105) | S         |
| TANDEM:   |               |                 |        |           |           |
| THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE U.S. FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE. |               |                 |        |           |           |
| VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NO. : _____<br>NO. IDENTIFICATION VEHICULE : _____   |               |                 |        |           |           |
| TYPE: BUS P/A   |               |                 |        |           |           |
| 406633  |               |                 |        |           |           |

DOT CERTIFICATION PLATE

00016

### VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (VIN)



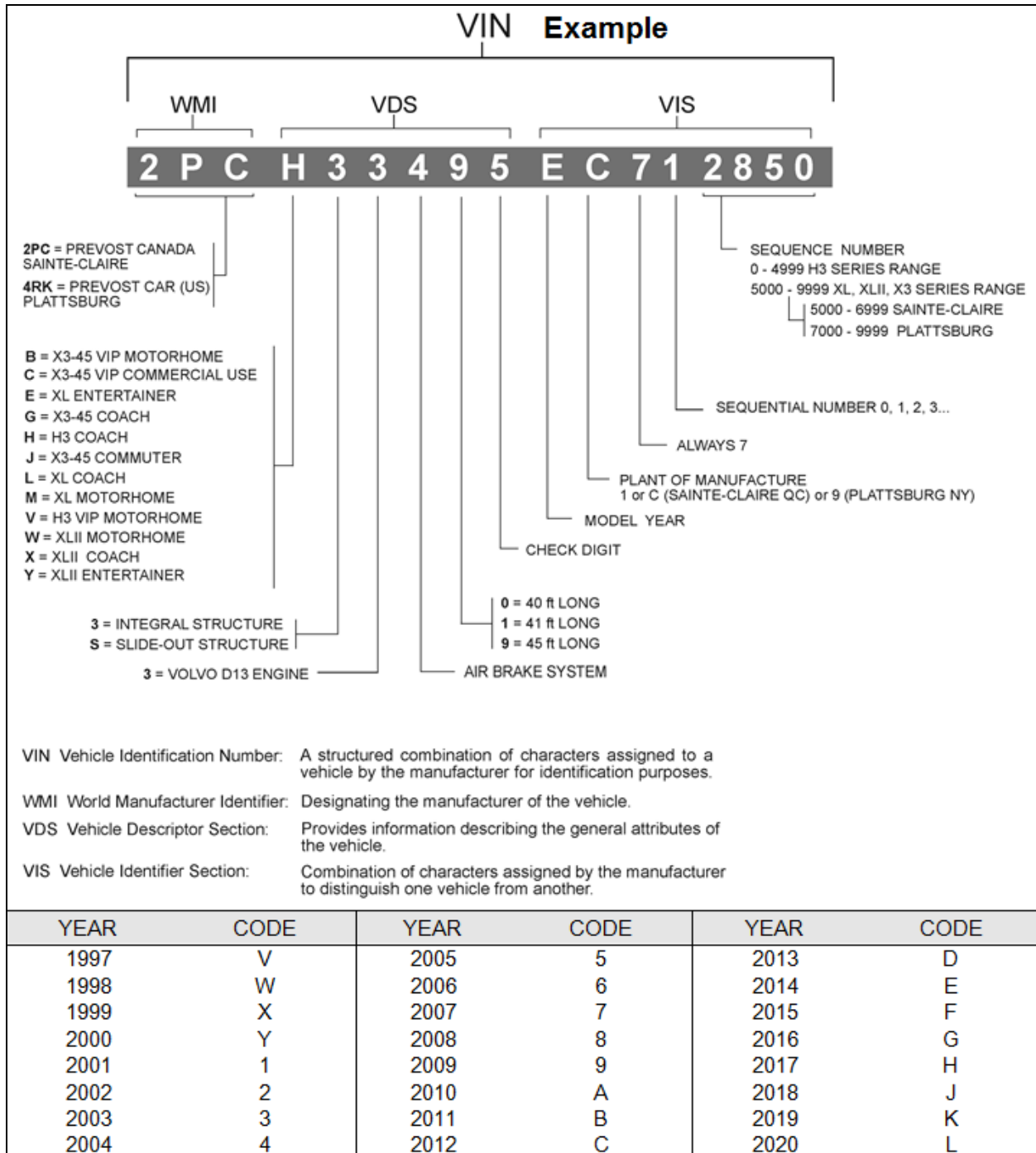
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

00044

The Vehicle Identification Number is stamped on a plate located on the windshield frame pillar (driver's side). The VIN is visible from the outside of the vehicle. Make sure the correct vehicle identification number is given when ordering replacement parts. Using the VIN when ordering parts will facilitate processing.

#### NOTE

Record the VIN in the vehicle documentation and keep with company records. The VIN will normally be used for vehicle registration, service reference needs and for obtaining vehicle insurance coverage.



### COACH FINAL RECORD

The Coach Final Record is a record of all data pertaining to the assembly of the vehicle. This record is shipped to the new customer via a courier company. Retain this record in the company records office for reference and safe-keeping.



| ABBREVIATION | DESCRIPTION  |
|--------------|--|
| ABS          | Antilock Brake System / Système de freinage antiblocage  |
| A/C          | Air Conditioning / Air climatisé   |
| AFSS         | Automatic Fire Suppression System / Système automatique de détection et d'extinction des incendies |
| ATC          | Automatic Traction Control (Bendix) / Système d'antidérapage automatique                           |
| CECM         | Chassis Electronic Control Module  |
| CVC          | Chauffage, Ventilation et Climatisation / heating, ventilation and air conditioning HVAC           |
| DCDL         | Driver Controlled Differential Lock / Verrouillage du différentiel                                 |
| DDR          | Diagnostic Data Reader   |
| DEF          | Diesel Exhaust Fluid / Fluide d'échappement diesel FED   |
| DEL          | Diode Électroluminescente / Light Emitting Diode LED   |
| DID          | Driver Information Display / Écran d'affichage du panneau des instruments                          |
| D-MIC        | Driver Microphone / Microphone du conducteur   |
| DPF          | Diesel Particulate Filter / Filtre à particules  |
| DTC          | Diagnostic Troubleshooting Code / Code d'anomalie  |
| DUFS         | Diesel Ultra Faible en Soufre / Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel ULSD                                       |
| ECM          | Electronic Control Module / Unité de commande électronique   |
| ECU          | Electronic Control Unit / Unité de commande électronique   |
| EECU         | Engine Electronic Control Unit / Unité de commande électronique du moteur                          |
| EGR          | Exhaust Gas Recirculation / Recirculation des gaz d'échappement                                    |
| ESC          | Electronic Stability Control / Dispositif électronique de contrôle de la stabilité                 |
| ESC          | Escape / Échap   |
| ESP          | Electronic Stability Program (Bendix) / Dispositif électronique de contrôle de la stabilité        |
| E+           | Eco-Roll   |
| FAP          | Filtre À Particules / Diesel Particulate Filter DPF  |
| FDA          | Following Distance Alert / Alerte de distance  |
| FED          | Fluide d'Échappement Diesel / Diesel exhaust fluid DEF   |
| GECU         | Gear selector Electronic Control Unit / Unité de commande électronique du sélecteur de vitesses    |
| G-MIC        | Guide Microphone / Microphone du guide   |
| HVAC         | Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning / Chauffage, Ventilation et Climatisation CVC            |
| IA           | Impact Alert / Alerte de collision   |
| IFS          | Independent Front Suspension / suspension avant indépendante                                       |
| LED          | Light Emitting Diode / diode électroluminescente DEL   |
| MPH          | Miles Per Hour / Milles à l'heure  |
| PPT          | Premium Tech Tool  |
| PTO          | Power Take Off / Prise de pouvoir  |
| PRIME        | Power Recovery by Intelligent Management of Energy   |
| SCR          | Selective Catalytic Reduction / Réduction catalytique sélective                                    |
| TCM          | Transmission Control Module / Module de commande de la transmission                                |
| TCS          | Traction Control System / Dispositif d'antipatinage  |
| TECU         | Transmission Electronic Control Unit / Unité de commande électronique de la transmission           |
| TPMS         | Tire Pressure Monitoring System / Système de surveillance de la pression des pneus                 |
| TWS          | Threshold Warning System / Système avertisseur du seuil de porte                                   |
| ULSD         | Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel / Diesel Ultra Faible en Soufre DUFS                                       |
| VCADS        | Outil informatisé de diagnostic  |
| VEB          | Volvo Engine Brake / Frein moteur Volvo  |
| VECF         | Vehicle Electrical Center Front  |
| VECR         | Vehicle Electrical Center Rear   |
| VECU         | Vehicle Electronic Control Unit / Unité de commande électronique du véhicule                       |
| VSS          | Video and Sound Selector / Sélecteur audio-vidéo   |
| WCL          | Wheelchair Lift / Système d'élévation de fauteuils roulants  |



# Appendix A 1

---

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| <b>SERVICE LITERATURE</b> .....  | <b>2</b> |
| <b>NOTICE</b> .....  | <b>3</b> |
| DECLARATION OF THE MANUFACTURING DEFECTS TO THE GOVERNMENT OF THE UNITED STATES..... | 3        |
| DECLARATION OF THE MANUFACTURING DEFECTS TO THE CANADIAN GOVERNMENT .....            | 3        |
| DECLARATION OF THE MANUFACTURING DEFECTS TO PREVOST.....                             | 3        |

## 2 Appendix A

---

### SERVICE LITERATURE

Visit our web site at **www.prevostcar.com** for on-line product information and technical publications!

Additional copies of the following service literature are available on request and at low cost. These can be helpful to mechanics and drivers alike.

- \* **Maintenance Manual**
- \* **Operator's Manual**
- \* **Parts Manual**
- \* **Service Center Directory**

You have three possibilities to order service literature:

1. By phone with this toll free number 1-800-463-8876
2. By email at:
  - a. [prevostparts.commandes@volvo.com](mailto:prevostparts.commandes@volvo.com) (Canada)
  - b. [function.prevostparts.orders@volvo.com](mailto:function.prevostparts.orders@volvo.com) (USA)
3. By mail at :

### PREVOST PARTS

2955-A Watt Street  
Sainte-Foy, (Quebec)  
Canada G1X 3W1

**Specify the complete vehicle serial number (VIN). Allow 30 days for delivery**

## **NOTICE**

### **DECLARATION OF THE MANUFACTURING DEFECTS TO THE GOVERNMENT OF THE UNITED STATES**

If you believe that your vehicle has defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Prevest.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Prevest Car Inc.

To contact NHTSA you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at **1-800-424-9393** (or **366-0123** in Washington, D.C. area) or write to:

**NHTSA  
U.S. Department of transportation  
Washington, D.C. 20590.**

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the Hotline.

### **DECLARATION OF THE MANUFACTURING DEFECTS TO THE CANADIAN GOVERNMENT**

If you live in Canada, and if you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should immediately inform Transport Canada and Prevest. You may write to:

**Transport Canada  
Box 8880  
Ottawa, Ontario, K1G 3J2**

### **DECLARATION OF THE MANUFACTURING DEFECTS TO PREVOST.**

In addition to notify the NHTSA (or Transport Canada), please contact Prevest at **1-418-831-2046**. Or you may write to:

**Prevest  
After-sales service department  
850 Olivier Road,  
Saint-Nicolas (Quebec)  
Canada, G7A 2N1**





## Troubleshooting

| Problem/Symptom  | Probable Causes   | Actions   |
|--|---|---|
| <p>Vehicle does not Start</p>  | <p>The Engine Stop pushbutton located on the rear start panel is depressed</p> <p>Main electrical shut-off switch is in the OFF position</p>                                  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Pull or twist the Engine Stop pushbutton to place it in normal operating position, check that the main electrical shut-off switch is in the ON position and retry cranking from the ignition switch</li> <li>2. Start the vehicle from the engine compartment using the rear start button</li> </ol>  |
|  | <p>CAN network problem (Multiplex)</p> <p>Module AE53 not powered or is defective</p> <p>Engine ECM does not receive the ignition signal</p> <p>Engine ECM is not powered</p> | <p>If the vehicle does not start from the rear:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Verify that module A53 is powered:                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Check the SYSTEM DIAGNOSTIC menu of Driver Information Display (DID). Select FAULT DIAGNOSTIC and ELECTRICAL SYSTEM. The message “No Response ModA53, Active”, indicates a power problem on the module or a CAN network problem.</li> <li>b) Check / reset circuit breaker CB5</li> <li>c) Check / replace fuse F65</li> <li>d) Probe gray connector on module to see if it is powered.</li> </ol> </li> <li>2. Verify that the engine ECM is powered and get the ignition signal                             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Check / reset circuit breaker CB8<br/>Check / replace fuse F74</li> <li>b) Check / reset circuit breaker CB2<br/>Check / replace fuse F78</li> </ol> </li> </ol> |
| <p>None of the Multiplexed functions are operating, including the basic limp-home functions (door opening, flashers, wipers in speed 1)</p> <p>“FLIP REAR BREAKER TO INITIATE I/O MODULES PROGRAMMING” pop-up message appears in the DID</p> <p><i>Note: The sunshades are still functioning since these are not multiplexed</i></p> | <p>The program version in the MCM is different than the program in the I/O modules and the MCM is forcing all I/O modules to stay inactive</p>                                | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Engage the auto-programming of the I/O modules: Turn the ignition key to the ON position, trip and reset circuit breaker CB6.</li> <li>2. The DID indicates "MUX AUTOPROGRAMMING I/O MODULE PLEASE WAIT" until the reprogramming is complete.</li> </ol>  |

## 2 Appendix B – Troubleshooting Guide for Multiplex Vehicles

| Problem/Symptom  | Probable Causes   | Actions   |
|--|---|---|
| <p>Many secondary functions (not essential for driving) not functioning (interior lighting, driver's area lighting, wiper speed 2 and intermittent).</p> <p>Marker lights and clearance lights are turned ON when setting ignition to the ON position.</p> | <p>The MCM module does not receive 24 V power.</p> <p>The CAN network is not working. It could be caused by a short on the network, an open circuit, a problem with the MCM or the MCM being disconnected from the network.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check / reset circuit breaker CB6. Check / replace fuse F1</li> <li>2. Operate in limp-home mode by starting the vehicle from the engine compartment (REAR START). All functions essential to drive are available</li> </ol> <p>To close and lock the door, pull the door manually up to its closed position and it will lock by itself. The door opening button is still functioning</p>   |
| <p>No temperature control in the passenger area</p> <p>Passenger temperature display indicates two dashes "--"</p>   | <p>Problem with the temperature sensor located in the evaporator compartment air intake or the sensor wiring</p>  | <p>Instruct the driver to manually control the temperature by playing with the passenger set point. Set above 22°C (72°F) to heat and below 22° C (72°F) to cool</p>  |
| <p>Entrance door does not open nor close using the control buttons</p> <p>Defroster fan not functioning</p> <p>Windshield wipers not functioning in speed 1 or intermittent</p>  | <p>Module AE47 is not powered or is faulty</p>  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the SYSTEM DIAGNOSTIC menu of Driver Information Display (DID). Select FAULT DIAGNOSTIC and ELECTRICAL SYSTEM. The message "No Response ModA47, Active" indicates a power problem on the module. (A CAN network problem would show the same message but doesn't produce these symptoms).</li> <li>2. Check / reset circuit breaker CB1</li> <li>3. Check / replace fuse F45</li> <li>4. Probe gray connector on module to see if it is powered.</li> <li>5. Use the air release valves near the entrance door and in the front service compartment to lock / unlock the door</li> </ol> |
| <p>Windshield wipers not functioning in speed 1 or intermittent</p>  | <p>No power on R27</p>  | <p>Check CB48 (VECF)</p>  |
| <p>HVAC condenser fans not functioning in speed 1</p>  | <p>Circuit breaker CB5 tripped</p>  | <p>Check / reset circuit breaker CB5</p>  |
| <p>HVAC condenser fans not functioning in speed 2</p>  | <p>Circuit breaker CB5 tripped</p>  | <p>Check / reset circuit breaker CB5</p> <p>Check / replace fuse F135</p>   |
| <p>Windshield washer not functioning</p> <p>Windshield upper section</p>   | <p>Module AE44 is not powered or is faulty</p>  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the SYSTEM DIAGNOSTIC menu of Driver Information Display (DID). Select FAULT DIAGNOSTIC</li> </ol>  |

| Problem/Symptom  | Probable Causes                         | Actions   |
|--|---|---|
| de-icing system not functioning  |   | <p>and ELECTRICAL SYSTEM. The message “No Response ModA44, Active” indicates a power problem on the module. (A CAN network problem would show the same message but doesn't produce these symptoms).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Check / reset circuit breaker CB1</li> <li>3. Check / replace fuse F44</li> <li>4. Probe gray connector on module to see if it is powered.</li> </ol>   |
| Defroster fan is functioning but no heat or cooling available in the driver area.                              | Module AE47 is not powered or is faulty | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the SYSTEM DIAGNOSTIC menu of Driver Information Display (DID). Select FAULT DIAGNOSTIC and ELECTRICAL SYSTEM. The message “No Response ModEA47, Active” indicates a power problem on the module. (A CAN network problem would show the same message but doesn't produce these symptoms).</li> <li>2. Check / reset circuit breaker CB1</li> <li>3. Check / replace fuse F45</li> <li>4. Probe gray connector on module to see if it is powered.</li> </ol> |
| <p>Low beam headlights and front flasher on left side not functioning</p> <p>Electric horn not functioning</p> | Module AE46 is not powered or is faulty | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the SYSTEM DIAGNOSTIC menu of Driver Information Display (DID). Select FAULT DIAGNOSTIC and ELECTRICAL SYSTEM. The message “No Response ModA46, Active” indicates a power problem on the module. (A CAN network problem would show the same message but doesn't produce these symptoms).</li> <li>2. Check / reset circuit breaker CB10</li> <li>3. Check / replace fuse F19</li> <li>4. Probe gray connector on module to see if it is powered.</li> </ol> |
| Low beam headlights and flasher on right side not functioning  | Module AE48 is not powered or is faulty | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the SYSTEM DIAGNOSTIC menu of Driver Information Display (DID). Select FAULT DIAGNOSTIC and ELECTRICAL SYSTEM. The message “No Response ModA48, Active” indicates a power problem on the module. (A CAN network problem would show the same message but doesn't produce these symptoms).</li> <li>2. Check / reset circuit breaker CB10</li> </ol>  |

## 4 Appendix B – Troubleshooting Guide for Multiplex Vehicles

| Problem/Symptom  | Probable Causes  | Actions   |
|--|--|---|
|  |  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Check / replace fuse F21</li> <li>4. Probe gray connector on module to see if it is powered.</li> </ol>   |
| <p>Rear flashers not functioning</p> <p>Stoplights and center stoplights not functioning</p> | <p>Module AE51 is not powered or is faulty</p>                       | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the SYSTEM DIAGNOSTIC menu of Driver Information Display (DID). Select FAULT DIAGNOSTIC and ELECTRICAL SYSTEM. The message “No Response ModA51, Active” indicates a power problem on the module. (A CAN network problem would show the same message but doesn't produce this symptom).</li> <li>2. Check / reset circuit breaker CB8</li> <li>3. Check / replace fuse F107</li> <li>4. Probe gray connector on module to see if it is powered.</li> </ol> |
| <p>Engine is overheating and radiator fans do not engage</p>                                 | <p>Module AE52 or AE49 is not powered or is faulty</p>               | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the SYSTEM DIAGNOSTIC menu of Driver Information Display (DID). Select FAULT DIAGNOSTIC and ELECTRICAL SYSTEM. The message “No Response ModA52/ ModA49, Active” indicates a power problem on the module. (A CAN network problem would show the same message but doesn't produce this symptom).</li> <li>2. Check circuit breaker CB5</li> <li>3. Check / replace fuse F133, F134</li> <li>4. CB201-CB208</li> </ol>                                       |
| <p>The A/C compressor clutch does not engage</p>   | <p>Module AE54 is not powered or is faulty</p>                       | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the SYSTEM DIAGNOSTIC menu of Driver Information Display (DID). Select FAULT DIAGNOSTIC and ELECTRICAL SYSTEM. The message “No Response ModA54, Active” indicates a power problem on the module. (A CAN network problem would show the same message but doesn't produce this symptom).</li> <li>2. Check / reset circuit breaker CB5</li> <li>3. Check / replace fuse F135</li> <li>4. Probe gray connector on module to see if it is powered.</li> </ol> |
| <p>Evaporator fan not functioning</p>  | <p>Circuit breaker CB3 tripped</p> <p>Module AE54 is not powered</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check circuit breaker CB3</li> <li>2. Check relay R12</li> </ol>  |

| Problem/Symptom  | Probable Causes  | Actions  |
|--|--|--|
|  | or is faulty   | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Check the SYSTEM DIAGNOSTIC menu of Driver Information Display (DID). Select FAULT DIAGNOSTIC and ELECTRICAL SYSTEM. The message "No Response ModA54, Active" indicates a power problem on the module. (A CAN network problem would show the same message but doesn't produce this symptom).</li> <li>4. Check / reset circuit breaker CB5</li> <li>5. Check / replace fuse F135</li> <li>6. Probe gray connector on module to see if it is powered.</li> </ol>  |
| HVAC condenser fans not functioning in speed 1   | Module AE54 is not powered or is faulty  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the SYSTEM DIAGNOSTIC menu of Driver Information Display (DID). Select FAULT DIAGNOSTIC and ELECTRICAL SYSTEM. The message "No Response ModA54, Active" indicates a power problem on the module. (A CAN network problem would show the same message but doesn't produce this symptom).</li> <li>2. Check / reset circuit breaker CB5</li> <li>3. Check / replace fuse F135</li> <li>4. Check / replace fuse F141-F144</li> <li>5. Probe gray connector on module to see if it is powered.</li> </ol> |
| Sound system not functioning   | Circuit breaker CB11 tripped   | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check CB11</li> <li>2. Check / replace fuse F148, F200</li> </ol>  |
| Fire alarm telltale light and audible alarm always ON and there is no fire or high temperature in the engine compartment     | Short-circuited fire sensor or defective sensor  | Prior to start the vehicle, cycle the ignition key to the ON position, OFF position and then ON position again and then start the vehicle. This will deactivate the fire alarm function. This has to be repeated each time the vehicle is re-started   |
| The vehicle is parked and the electrical horn is activated to indicate a fire in the engine compartment but there is no fire | Short-circuited fire sensor or defective sensor  | Cycle the ignition key between the ON and OFF position twice within 3 seconds. This will deactivate the fire alarm function. This has to be repeated each time the vehicle is parked   |
| A single light, a group of LED lights or another function of the vehicle is not functioning                                  | Multiplex outputs are protected in current by an internal "soft-fuse". When an output is shorted, it turns OFF and stays OFF until the | Turn the ignition key to the OFF position and turn to the ON position again. This resets all "soft -fuses"   |

## 6 Appendix B – Troubleshooting Guide for Multiplex Vehicles

| Problem/Symptom   | Probable Causes                                       | Actions   |
|---|---|---|
|   | "soft-fuse" is reset                                  |   |
| No backlighting in the instrument cluster                           | Circuit breaker CB10 is tripped or fuse F10/F29 blown | <p>Check circuit breaker CB2, CB10</p> <p>Check / replace fuse F10, F29</p> <p>Check / replace relay R22, R23</p>   |
| The radiator/CAC fans do not function and the engine is overheating |   | <p>You can manually engage the radiator/CAC fans half speed (50%) or full speed (100%).</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. On the Driver Information Display, select DIAGNOSTICS menu. Select VEHICLE TESTS submenu and then ACTIVATE RADIATOR FAN SPEED 50% or ACTIVATE RADIATOR FAN SPEED 100%.</li> <li>2. The DID status line will show TEST to confirm the forced activation of the radiator fans. To cancel, turn the ignition switch to the OFF position or press ESCAPE button, select STOP TEST submenu and then press ENTER button twice. TEST will disappear from the DID status line.</li> </ol> |

## APPENDIX C

|  |          |
|--|----------|
| <b>ALLISON TRANSMISSION 5TH GENERATION OIL LEVEL CHECK USING THE PUSHBUTTON SHIFT SELECTOR .....</b> | <b>2</b> |
| <b>CONTROL SYSTEM PROGNOSTICS.....</b>   | <b>2</b> |
| NORMAL PROGNOSTICS INDICATION AT ENGINE START .....  | 3        |
| OIL LIFE MONITOR .....   | 3        |
| FILTER LIFE MONITOR.....   | 4        |
| TRANSMISSION HEALTH MONITOR .....  | 5        |
| <b>DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLESHOOTING CODES (DTC) — ALLISON 5TH GENERATION CONTROLS .....</b>                | <b>7</b> |
| DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLESHOOTING CODES (DTC) OVERVIEW .....  | 7        |
| USING SHIFT SELECTOR FOR ACCESSING DIAGNOSTICS INFORMATION.....                                      | 7        |
| DIAGNOSTIC CODE DISPLAY AND CLEARING PROCEDURE .....   | 7        |
| DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLE CODE RESPONSE.....  | 8        |
| DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLESHOOTING CODES (DTC) LIST - ALLISON 5 <sup>TH</sup> GENERATION CONTROLS.....       | 9        |



## 2 APPENDIX C – Allison Transmission’s Other Features

### ALLISON TRANSMISSION 5TH GENERATION OIL LEVEL CHECK USING THE PUSHBUTTON SHIFT SELECTOR

The oil level sensor (OLS) is standard in your transmission. With the OLS and Allison 5<sup>th</sup> generation shift selector, you can get a more accurate electronic fluid level check than with a dipstick.

Oil level codes are obtained as follows:

1. Park vehicle on a level surface, select «N» (neutral) on the pushbutton shift selector and apply parking brake.
2. Wait for at least 2 minutes to allow the oil to settle;
3. Press simultaneously the ▲ (Upshift) and ▼ (Downshift) arrow buttons once.
4. Oil level codes are displayed once the following parameters are met :
  - **The vehicle has been stationary for approximately 2 minutes to allow the oil to settle;**
  - **Engine at idle;**
  - **Oil at normal operating temperature, between 104°F (40°C) and 220°F (104°C);**
  - **Transmission in «N» (Neutral);**
  - **Transmission output shaft stopped;**
  - **Oil level sensor present and working.**

5. Correct fluid level is displayed as shown.



6. Low fluid level is displayed as shown. The number indicates the number of quarts of fluid the transmission requires.



7. High fluid level condition with the number of quarts in excess is displayed as shown.



#### NOTE

Confirm a low fluid level condition by making a manual fluid level check.

8. To exit the Oil Level Display Mode, press any range button «R», «N» or «D» at any time.

#### NOTE

Note that the quantities LO 4 and HI 3 are the largest values displayed and that the actual variation in oil level may exceed these numbers.

If the fluid level check cannot be completed, an Invalid for Display fault is reported. Refer to table below to review the codes and conditions.

| CODE              | CAUSE OF FAULT CODE             |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| SETTLING OK       | Settling time too short         |
| ENG RPM TOO LOW   | Engine speed (rpm) too low      |
| ENG RPM TOO HIGH  | Engine speed (rpm) too high     |
| MUST BE IN NEU    | N (Neutral) must be selected    |
| OIL TEMP TOO LOW  | Sump fluid temperature too low  |
| OIL TEMP TOO HIGH | Sump fluid temperature too high |
| VEH SPD TOO HI    | Output shaft speed              |
| SENSOR FAILED     | Sensor failure                  |

### CONTROL SYSTEM PROGNOSTICS

The transmission control system includes the provision for the user to monitor various transmission operating parameters. Transmission operating parameters monitored by the prognostics feature are:

- Oil Life Monitor
- Filter Life Monitor
- Transmission Health Monitor

**NOTE**

*The prognostics package requires the use of **TranSynd™** or an Allison approved **TES295 or TES389 licensed fluid** in the transmission and **Allison High Capacity filters**. If any other fluids or filters are used, Prognostic mode **must be disabled**. Prognostic information will not be accurate with any other fluids or filters and could result in missed maintenance activities resulting in transmission damage.*

*Refer to TES 295 or TES389 Approved Fluids list, found under the Service/Fluids heading on the home page of the Allison Transmission web site.*

**[www.allisontransmission.com](http://www.allisontransmission.com)**

When a specified threshold is detected for any of the serviceable conditions, the TRANSMISSION SERVICE indicator **!** is illuminated to alert the operator. Failure to attend to the service condition and reset the TRANSMISSION SERVICE indicator within a defined operating period will result in illumination of the CHECK light with associated message in the DID, indicating the increased probability that the service condition will develop into a more serious condition.

To access the Prognostic Mode functions, simultaneously press the **▲** (Upshift) and **▼** (Downshift) arrow buttons repeatedly. See the reference table at the end of this section.

**NORMAL PROGNOSTICS INDICATION AT ENGINE START**

- A system bulb check illuminates the TRANSMISSION SERVICE indicator **!** approximately 0.5 seconds.
- If Prognostics features are enabled, the TRANSMISSION SERVICE indicator **!** illuminates again for 3 seconds after the bulb check. If Prognostics features are disabled, the TRANSMISSION SERVICE indicator **!** does not illuminate again after the bulb check.

**OIL LIFE MONITOR**

The display message denotes the calculated remaining life of the transmission fluid. This value is based on the established life for the required baseline fluid, and then is continuously adjusted for cumulative

effects of such operating parameters as operating time, retarder operation, output shaft revolutions and shift frequency.

**Display**

The display is a two-digit number, denoting percentage of the fluid life which remains. New fluid is displayed as 99%.

The TRANSMISSION SERVICE indicator **!** will be illuminated, denoting a required change of transmission fluid, when the remaining fluid life reaches approximately 1 %. The indicator will be lit steadily upon each initialization of the TCM, and will remain on steady for approximately 2 minutes after the first selection of “D” (drive) range each time, until service is performed and the indicator is reset.

Failure to perform maintenance and reset the TRANSMISSION SERVICE indicator within a defined period will result in the illumination of the CHECK light with associated message in the DID and diagnostic code P0897 Transmission Fluid Deteriorated.

**Reset**

The TRANSMISSION SERVICE indicator can be reset by a message over the SAE J1939 communication interface, with the Allison DOC™ for PC diagnostic program, or by depressing and holding the MODE button for ten (10) seconds while the Oil Life Monitor function is displayed. It may also be reset by selecting N-D-N-D-N-R-N on the shift selector, pausing briefly (less than 3 seconds) between each selector movement, with the ignition on and the engine not running. The TRANSMISSION SERVICE indicator illuminates briefly following a reset to acknowledge the reset was successful.

**Setting Fluid Type for Prognostics**

The fluid type can be programmed if the specific calibration allows it. The operator can do the following:

With the engine off and the ignition on, perform the following sequence on the selector, N-R-N-D-N-R-N-D-N-R-N-D-N.

The TRANSMISSION SERVICE indicator flashes if TES389 is the current setting and illuminates solidly if TES295 is the current setting. To change the transmission fluid type, wait 5 seconds after entering transmission fluid

## 4 APPENDIX C – Allison Transmission’s Other Features

type mode and perform the following sequences to select the proper transmission type:

N-R-N to select TES295

N-D-N to select TES389

The selector exits 30 seconds after entering transmission fluid type mode or the ignition may be turned off to exit earlier. Only one transmission fluid type selection may be made after entering transmission fluid type mode. All other attempt will be ignored. Transmission fluid type mode needs to be entered again if the wrong type of fluid is selected.



### CAUTION

*Verify prognostics fluid type setting matches transmission fluid type. Oil Life Monitor notifications will be inaccurate when mismatched. This could result in transmission damage from running a TES389 fluid too long or cause shortened TES295 fluid changes to occur.*




### CAUTION

Required calendar-based oil & filter change intervals (based on month) still apply because Oil Life Monitor function cannot measure time while ignition power is OFF.


If the Oil Life Monitor function has not indicated the need for a fluid change before 60 months have passed when using TES295 fluid type or before 24 months have passed when using TES389 fluid type, it will be necessary to change the fluid and filters per calendar requirements and reset the system.


### FILTER LIFE MONITOR

This feature provides an alert when the transmission’s fluid filters need to be replaced. It helps extend filter change intervals to reduce routine maintenance downtime while providing maximum protection for the transmission.

The filter life indicator pressure switch signals the transmission control module when fluid exiting the main filter drops below a predetermined pressure. Both the main and lube filters **must be** changed when the TRANSMISSION SERVICE indicator  shows the main filter should be changed.



### Filter Change Notification


The TRANSMISSION SERVICE indicator  will flash for 2 minutes after the first selection of “D” (drive) range. Once the Filter Monitor mode has been accessed via the shift selector, the "OIL FILTER OK" or "REPLACE FILTERS" message is displayed in the selector display window. An acceptable filter life status is displayed as "OIL FILTER OK". An unacceptable filter life status is displayed as "REPLACE FILTERS".

Once the programmed threshold for maximum filter pressure drop has been observed and verified, the diagnostic code P088A Transmission Filter Maintenance Alert will be recorded to indicate that the filter has reached the end of its designed life. At the next initialization of the TCM, the TRANSMISSION SERVICE indicator  will flash for 2 minutes after the first selection of “D” (drive) range. Thereafter, the indicator will illuminate and flash upon each TCM initialization, continuing to flash for 2 minutes after the first selection of a drive range each time, until service is performed and the indicator is reset.

Failure to perform maintenance and reset the monitor after a calibration-defined number of warnings will result in the illumination of the CHECK light with associated message in the DID and diagnostic code P088B will be recorded to indicate a highly deteriorated filter.

### Read and Reset Filter Life Monitor from Selector

**To enter** the filter life monitor, press simultaneously the  (Upshift) and  (Downshift) arrows three times. An acceptable filter life status is displayed as "OIL FILTER OK". An unacceptable filter life status is displayed as "REPLACE FILTERS".

The feature will **reset** automatically when the main fluid filter has been changed and the pressure drop across the filter no longer exceeds the threshold value. A manual reset can be performed by depressing and holding the MODE button for ten (10) seconds while the Filter Life Monitor function is displayed. It may also be reset by selecting N-R-N-R-N-D-N on the shift selector, pausing briefly (less than 3 seconds) between each selector movement, with the ignition on and the engine not running. The TRANSMISSION SERVICE indicator  illuminates briefly following a reset to acknowledge the reset was successful.

## **TRANSMISSION HEALTH MONITOR**

This prognostic feature determines clutch life status of the transmission’s clutches and alerts you when clutch maintenance is required. The clutch life status is determined by monitoring changes and the calculated running clearance of the transmission clutches.

### **Clutch Maintenance Notification**



The transmission health monitor feature determines when clutch maintenance is needed. If any of the clutches (except lockup) reaches a remaining life of approximately 10% or if any of the clutch running clearances exceeds a maximum value, then the TRANSMISSION SERVICE indicator is steadily illuminated from just after ignition on until ignition is turned off. Thereafter, the indicator will be lit upon each initialization of the TCM, and will remain on steady during all vehicle operation until service is performed and the indicator is reset. If the transmission health monitor mode has been accessed via the shift selector, a “TRANS HEALTH OK” or “TRANS HEALTH LO” is displayed. An acceptable clutch life status is displayed as “TRANS HEALTH OK”. An unacceptable clutch life status is displayed as “TRANS HEALTH LO”.

### **Read and Reset Transmission Health Monitor from Selector**

**To enter** the transmission health monitor, press simultaneously the ▲ (Upshift) and ▼ (Downshift) arrows four times. An acceptable clutch life status is displayed as “TRANS HEALTH OK”. An unacceptable filter life status is displayed as “TRANS HEALTH LO”.

The feature will **reset** automatically upon elimination of the clutch clearance condition which initiated it. The indicator can also be manually reset using the Allison DOC™ for PC diagnostics program if necessary.

## 6 APPENDIX C – Allison Transmission’s Other Features

|  (Upshift) &  (Downshift) arrow buttons pressed simultaneously * | Description   | Message                 |                         |
|--|---|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1 <sup>st</sup> press  | Allison transmission oil level check  |                         |                         |
| 2 <sup>nd</sup> press  | <b>Oil Life Monitor</b>   | " O "                   | " M "                   |
|  | Oil life remaining will range from 99% down to 00%  | Some number from 9 to 0 | Some number from 9 to 0 |
| 3 <sup>rd</sup> press  | <b>Filter Life Monitor</b>  | " F "                   | " M "                   |
|  | Present life of filter is acceptable  | OIL FILTER OK           |                         |
|  | Present life of filter is unacceptable  | REPLACE FILTERS         |                         |
| 4 <sup>th</sup> press  | <b>Transmission Health Monitor</b>  | " T "                   | " M "                   |
|  | Shows " TRANS HEALTH OK " until remaining life of one or more of the clutch(es) wear enough so that the programming changes | TRANS HEALTH OK         |                         |
| One or more of the clutches have worn enough to change the program   | TRANS HEALTH LO   |                         |                         |
| 5 <sup>th</sup> press  | <b>Display of diagnostic codes</b>  |                         |                         |

\* With the engine off and ignition on.

## DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLESHOOTING CODES (DTC) — ALLISON 5TH GENERATION CONTROLS

### DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLESHOOTING CODES (DTC) OVERVIEW

Diagnostic features are provided with the transmission control system to assist in troubleshooting of malfunctions and/or the monitoring of specific operating parameters. When a control system malfunction is detected, a series of Diagnostic Trouble Codes (DTCs) are used to identify and clarify the nature of the malfunction. These DTCs are each named by a 5 character alphanumeric string that refers to a diagnostic algorithm running pass/fail tests to help identify a malfunction in the transmission or vehicle operation. Most DTCs have some kind of diagnostic response that the operator notices, such as an illuminated CHECK light, selector display change, lock in range, or inhibit shifts condition.

DTCs are logged in the Transmission Control Module (TCM) memory by severity and by their active/inactive status with the most severe and active codes listed first. A maximum of five DTCs (numbered d1- d5) from most recent to oldest may be read from the shift selector. As DTCs are added, the oldest inactive DTC (historic) is dropped from the list. If all DTCs are active, the DTC with the lowest priority is dropped from the list.

An active code is any code that is current in the TCM decision-making process and has failed the DTC test(s) associated with that specific diagnostic algorithm. Historical codes, which are by definition inactive, are codes that are no longer failing their algorithm but are retained in the TCM in order to help the technician analyze possible causes and provide them direction if the vehicle is brought in before they are cleared from the queue.

DTCs can be cleared manually by the operator or they clear automatically from last (d5) to first (d1) in the queue after a number of engine starts, without becoming active again.

### USING SHIFT SELECTOR FOR ACCESSING DIAGNOSTICS INFORMATION

DTCs can be displayed on the display portion of the shift selector. A DTC is either active or historic. An active DTC is a DTC that is current in the TCM decision-making process. Historic DTCs are retained in the TCM memory and do not necessarily affect the TCM decision-making process.

#### Display Sequence

Up to five DTCs may be displayed one at a time from the selector once the diagnostic display mode has been initiated by the operator. Each DTC is 5 characters in length. The DTC status active or inactive is shown below the DTC.



Shows active DTC P0730

The operator presses the MODE button to read the next DTC in the queue (if any) or requests to exit diagnostics mode. The diagnostics mode times out and returns the selector to normal operating mode after approximately 10 minutes of operator inactivity.

### DIAGNOSTIC CODE DISPLAY AND CLEARING PROCEDURE

Diagnostic codes can be read and cleared by two methods:

- Using an Allison DOC™ diagnostic tool. For specific instructions on how to use an Allison DOC™ diagnostic tool, refer to the User Guide.
- Using the pushbutton shift selector.

## 8 Appendix C – Allison Diagnostic Troubleshooting Codes

---

To begin the diagnostic process:

1. Bring the vehicle to a stop at a safe location.
2. Apply the parking brake.

To display stored codes:

1. Simultaneously press the ▲ (Upshift) and ▼ (Downshift) arrow buttons five times (Prognostics enabled) to access the Diagnostic Display Mode. With Prognostics disabled, press the ▲ (Upshift) and ▼ (Downshift) arrow buttons twice.
2. Press the MODE button to read the next code in the queue, if any.

To clear all active stored codes:

While in Diagnostic Mode, clear all active codes by pressing and holding the MODE button for approximately three seconds until the MODE message flashes. Release the MODE button. The MODE message should not remain illuminated if the active DTC shown in the display has cleared.

While in Diagnostic Mode, press and hold the MODE button for 10 seconds to clear both active codes and inactive codes. The MODE message flashes a second time indicating all codes are cleared from the queue.

### Exiting Diagnostic Mode

Exit the diagnostic mode by one of the following methods:

1. Press simultaneously the ▲ (Upshift) and ▼ (Downshift) arrow buttons at the same time on the pushbutton shift selector.
2. Press any range button «D», «N» or «R» on the pushbutton shift selector.
3. After approximately 10 minutes of inactivity at the pushbutton shift selector, the diagnostic mode automatically exits and returns to normal operating mode.
4. Turn off power to the TCM (shut off the engine using the ignition key).

#### **NOTE**

*Be sure to record all codes displayed before they are cleared. This is essential for troubleshooting.*

#### **NOTE**

*If clearing a code while locked in a «D» (Drive) or «R» (Reverse) position (fail-to-range), the transmission will still be in «D» (Drive) or «R» (Reverse) when the clearing procedure is completed. «N» (Neutral) must be manually selected.*

### DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLE CODE RESPONSE

The electronic control system is programmed to inform the operator of a problem with the transmission system via the CHECK light and shift selector display while it automatically takes action to protect the operator, vehicle, and transmission. When the Transmission Control Module (TCM) flags a Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) as active, the TCM may take a combination of diagnostic responses as listed in the table below.

| CATEGORY OF RESPONSE           | ACTIONS TAKEN  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| DNS - <u>Do Not Shift</u>      | Release lock up (LU) clutch and inhibit lock up operation.<br>Inhibit shifts from the current attained range.<br>Turn on the CHECK light.<br>Display the current attained range in the MONITOR window of the shift selector.<br>Blank the SELECT window of the shift selector.<br>Ignore any range selection inputs from the shift selector. |
| SOL OFF - <u>SOLenoid OFF</u>  | All solenoids are commanded off, resulting in hydraulic default operation of the transmission – PCS1 & PCS2 are on hydraulically when off electrically.  |
| RPR - Return to Previous Range | When the speed sensor ratio or PS1 tests do not pass, the TCM commands the same range as commanded before the shift.   |
| NNC - Neutral No Clutches      | When certain speed sensor ratio or PS1 tests do not pass, the TCM a neutral condition with no clutches applied.  |
| DNA - <u>Do Not Adapt</u>      | The TCM stops adaptive shift control while the code is active.   |

**DIAGNOSTIC TROUBLESHOOTING CODES (DTC) LIST - ALLISON 5<sup>TH</sup> GENERATION CONTROLS**

| DTC   | Description                                    | CHECK Light | Inhibited Operation Description                              |
|-------|--|-------------|--|
| C1312 | Retarder Request Sensor Failed Low             | No          | May inhibit retarder operation if not using J1939 datalink   |
| C1313 | Retarder Request Sensor Failed High            | No          | May inhibit retarder operation if not using J1939 datalink   |
| P0122 | Pedal Position Sensor Circuit Low Voltage      | No          | Use default throttle values. Freezes shift adapts.           |
| P0123 | Pedal Position Sensor Circuit High Voltage     | No          | Use default throttle values. Freezes shift adapts.           |
| P0218 | Transmission Fluid Over Temperature            | Yes         | Use default sump temp  |
| P0562 | System Voltage Low                             | No          | Inhibit TCC Operation, DNA                                   |
| P0602 | TCM Not Programmed                             | Yes         | Lock in Neutral  |
| P0604 | Control module random access memory (RAM)      | Yes         | Lock in Neutral  |
| P0614 | Torque Control Data Mismatch - ECM/TCM         | Yes         | Allows operation only in reverse and second range.           |
| P0634 | TCM Internal Temperature Too High              | Yes         | SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                  |
| P0642 | Sensor Reference Voltage "A" Circuit Low       | Yes         | Default sensor data used                                     |
| P0643 | Sensor Reference Voltage "A" Circuit High      | Yes         | Default sensor data used                                     |
| P0657 | Actuator Supply Circuit Voltage 1 Open (HSD 1) | Yes         | SOL OFF, DNA, Inhibit TCC operation, Inhibit main modulation |
| P0658 | Actuator Supply Voltage 1 (HSD1) Low           | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                             |
| P0659 | Actuator Supply Voltage 1 (HSD1) High          | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                             |



## 10 Appendix C – Allison Diagnostic Troubleshooting Codes

| DTC   | Description  | CHECK Light | Inhibited Operation Description   |
|-------|--|-------------|---|
| P0703 | Brake Switch Circuit Malfunction                         | No          | No Neutral to Drive shifts for refuse packer. TCM inhibits retarder operation if a TPS code is also active. |
| P0708 | Transmission Range Sensor Circuit High Input             | Yes         | Ignore defective strip selector inputs  |
| P070C | Transmission Fluid Level Sensor Circuit – Low Input      | No          | None  |
| P070D | Transmission Fluid Level Sensor Circuit – High Input     | No          | None  |
| P0712 | Transmission Fluid Temperature Sensor Circuit Low Input  | Yes         | Use default sump temp   |
| P0713 | Transmission Fluid Temperature Sensor Circuit High Input | Yes         | Use default sump temp   |
| P0715 | Turbine Shaft Speed Sensor Circuit                       | Yes         | DNS, Lock in current range  |
| P0716 | Turbine Shaft Speed Sensor Circuit Performance           | Yes         | DNS, Lock in current range  |
| P0717 | Turbine Shaft Speed Sensor Circuit No Signal             | Yes         | DNS, Lock in current range  |
| P071A | RELS Input Failed On                                     | Yes         | Inhibit RELS operation  |
| P071D | General Purpose Input Fault                              | Yes         | None  |
| P0720 | Output Shaft Speed Sensor Circuit                        | Yes         | DNS, Lock in current range  |
| P0721 | Output Shaft Speed Sensor Circuit Performance            | Yes         | DNS, Lock in current range  |
| P0722 | Output Speed Sensor Circuit No Signal                    | Yes         | DNS, Lock in current range  |
| P0725 | Engine Speed Sensor Circuit                              | No          | Default to turbine speed  |
| P0726 | Engine Speed Sensor Circuit Performance                  | No          | Default to turbine speed  |
| P0727 | Engine Speed Sensor Circuit No Signal                    | No          | Default to turbine speed  |
| P0729 | Incorrect 6 <sup>th</sup> Gear Ratio                     | Yes         | DNS, Attempt 5 <sup>th</sup> , then 3 <sup>rd</sup>   |
| P0731 | Incorrect 1 <sup>st</sup> Gear ratio                     | Yes         | DNS, Attempt 2 <sup>nd</sup> , then 5 <sup>th</sup>   |
| P0732 | Incorrect 2 <sup>nd</sup> Gear ratio                     | Yes         | DNS, Attempt 3 <sup>rd</sup> , then 5 <sup>th</sup>   |
| P0733 | Incorrect 3 <sup>rd</sup> Gear ratio                     | Yes         | DNS, Attempt 4 <sup>th</sup> , then 6 <sup>th</sup>   |
| P0734 | Incorrect 4 <sup>th</sup> Gear ratio                     | Yes         | DNS, Attempt 5 <sup>th</sup> , then 3 <sup>rd</sup>   |
| P0735 | Incorrect 5 <sup>th</sup> Gear ratio                     | Yes         | DNS, Attempt 6 <sup>th</sup> , then 3 <sup>rd</sup> , then 2 <sup>nd</sup>                                  |
| P0736 | Incorrect Reverse Gear ratio                             | Yes         | DNS, Lock in Neutral  |
| P0741 | Torque Converter Clutch System Stuck Off                 | Yes         | None  |
| P0752 | Shift Solenoid 1 Valve Performance-Stuck On              | Yes         | DNS   |
| P0776 | Pressure Control Solenoid (PCS) 2 Stuck Off              | Yes         | DNS, RPR  |
| P0777 | Pressure Control Solenoid 2 Stuck On                     | Yes         | DNS, RPR  |
| P0796 | Pressure Control Solenoid 3 Stuck Off                    | Yes         | DNS, RPR  |
| P0797 | Pressure Control Solenoid 3 Stuck On                     | Yes         | DNS, RPR  |
| P0842 | Transmission Fluid Pressure Switch 1 Circuit Low         | Yes         | DNS, Lock in current range  |
| P0843 | Transmission Fluid Pressure Switch 1 Circuit High        | Yes         | DNS, Lock in current range  |
| P0847 | Transmission Fluid Pressure Switch 2 Circuit Low         | Yes         | None  |
| P0848 | Transmission Fluid Pressure Switch 2 Circuit High        | Yes         | None  |
| P088A | Transmission Fluid Filter Maintenance Alert              | No          | None  |
| P088B | Transmission Fluid Filter Maintenance Required           | No          | None  |
| P0880 | TCM Power Input Signal                                   | No          | None  |
| P0881 | TCM Power Input Signal Performance                       | No          | None  |
| P0882 | TCM Power Input Signal Low                               | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)  |
| P0883 | TCM Power Input Signal High                              | No          | None  |
| P0894 | Unexpected Mechanical Gear Disengagement                 | Yes         | DNS, Lock in first  |
| P0897 | Transmission Fluid Deteriorated                          | No          | None  |

| DTC   | Description   | CHECK Light | Inhibited Operation Description                                 |
|-------|---|-------------|---|
| P0960 | Main Pressure Modulator Solenoid Control Circuit Open   | Yes         | None  |
| P0962 | Main Pressure Modulator Solenoid Control Circuit Low    | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P0963 | Main Pressure Modulator Solenoid Control Circuit High   | Yes         | None  |
| P0964 | Pressure Control Solenoid 2 (PCS2) Control Circuit Open | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P0966 | Pressure Control Solenoid 2 (PCS2) Control Circuit Low  | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P0967 | Pressure Control Solenoid 2 (PCS2) Control Circuit High | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P0968 | Pressure Control Solenoid 3 (PCS3) Control Circuit Open | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P0970 | Pressure Control Solenoid 3 (PCS3) Control Circuit Low  | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P0971 | Pressure Control Solenoid 3 (PCS3) Control Circuit High | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P0973 | Shift Solenoid 1 (SS1) Control Circuit Low              | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P0974 | Shift Solenoid 1 (SS1) Control Circuit High             | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P0976 | Shift Solenoid 2 (SS2) Control Circuit Low              | Yes         | 7-speed: Allow 2 through 6, N, R<br>Inhibit TCC operation       |
| P0977 | Shift Solenoid 2 (SS2) Control Circuit High             | Yes         | 7-speed: Allow 2 through 6, N, R                                |
| P097A | Shift Solenoid 1 (SS1) Control Circuit Open             | Yes         | Lock in range   |
| P097B | Shift Solenoid 2 (SS2) Control Circuit Open             | Yes         | 7-speed: Allow 2 through 6, N, R                                |
| P0989 | Retarder Pressure Sensor Circuit Low                    | No          | None  |
| P0990 | Retarder Pressure Sensor Circuit High                   | No          | None  |
| P1739 | Incorrect Low Gear Ratio                                | Yes         | Command 2 <sup>nd</sup> and allow shifts 2 through 6, N, R      |
| P1790 | Gear Shift Module 1 Calibrated Invalid                  | Yes         | Shift selector language or units incorrect                      |
| P1791 | Gear Shift Module 2 Calibrated Invalid                  | Yes         | Shift selector language or units incorrect                      |
| P1891 | Throttle Position Sensor PWM Signal Low                 | No          | Use default throttle values                                     |
| P1892 | Throttle Position Sensor PWM Signal High                | No          | Use default throttle values                                     |
| P2184 | Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 2 Circuit Low Input   | No          | Use default engine coolant values                               |
| P2185 | Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 2 Circuit High Input  | No          | Use default engine coolant values                               |
| P2637 | Torque Management Feedback Signal (A)                   | Yes         | Inhibit SEM   |
| P2641 | Torque Management Feedback Signal (B)                   | Yes         | Inhibit L RTP   |
| P2669 | Actuator Supply Circuit Voltage 2 Open (HSD2)           | Yes         | SOL OFF, Inhibit TCC operation,<br>Inhibit Main modulation, ONA |
| P2670 | Actuator Supply Voltage 2 (HSD2) Low                    | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P2671 | Actuator Supply Voltage 2 (HSD2) High                   | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P2684 | Actuator Supply Circuit Voltage 3 Open (HSD3)           | Yes         | SOL OFF, Inhibit TCC operation,<br>Inhibit Main modulation, ONA |
| P2685 | Actuator Supply Voltage 3 (HSD3) Low                    | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P2686 | Actuator Supply Voltage 3 (HSD3) High                   | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P2714 | Pressure Control Solenoid 4 (PCS4) Stuck Off            | Yes         | DNS, RPR  |
| P2715 | Pressure Control Solenoid 4 (PCS4) Stuck On             | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P2718 | Pressure Control Solenoid 4 (PCS4) Control Circuit Open | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P2720 | Pressure Control Solenoid 4 (PCS4) Control Circuit Low  | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P2721 | Pressure Control Solenoid 4 (PCS4) Control Circuit High | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |
| P2723 | Pressure Control Solenoid 1 (PCS1) Stuck Off            | Yes         | DNS, RPR  |
| P2724 | Pressure Control Solenoid 1 (PCS1) Stuck On             | Yes         | DNS, RPR  |
| P2727 | Pressure Control Solenoid 1 (PCS1) Control Circuit Open | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                                |

## 12 Appendix C – Allison Diagnostic Troubleshooting Codes

| DTC   | Description  | CHECK Light | Inhibited Operation Description                               |
|-------|--|-------------|---|
| P2729 | Pressure Control Solenoid 1 (PCS1) Control Circuit Low               | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                              |
| P2730 | Pressure Control Solenoid 1 (PCS1) Control Circuit High              | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                              |
| P2736 | Pressure Control Solenoid 5 (PCS5) Control Circuit Open              | Yes         | Inhibit retarder operation                                    |
| P2738 | Pressure Control Solenoid 5 (PCS5) Control Circuit Low               | Yes         | Allow 2 through 6, N, R. Inhibit retarder and TCC operation   |
| P2739 | Pressure Control Solenoid 5 (PCS5) Control Circuit High              | Yes         | Inhibit retarder operation                                    |
| P273F | Retarder Oil Temperature Sensor Over Temperature Condition           | No          | None  |
| P2742 | Retarder Oil Temperature Sensor Circuit – Low                        | No          | Use default retarder temp values                              |
| P2743 | Retarder Oil Temperature Sensor Circuit – High                       | No          | Use default retarder temp values                              |
| P2761 | TCC PCS Control Circuit Open   | Yes         | Inhibit TCC operation   |
| P2763 | TCC PCS Control Circuit High   | Yes         | Inhibit TCC operation   |
| P2764 | TCC PCS Control Circuit Low  | Yes         | 7-speed: Allow 2 through 6, N, R. Inhibit TCC operation       |
| P2789 | Transmission Clutch Life Expired (Clutch Adaptive Learning at Limit) | No          | None  |
| P2793 | Gear Shift Direction Circuit   | Yes         | Ignores PWM input from shift selector                         |
| P2808 | Pressure Control Solenoid 6 (PCS6) Stuck Off                         | Yes         | DNS, RPR  |
| P2809 | Pressure Control Solenoid 6 (PCS6) Stuck On                          | Yes         | DNS, RPR  |
| P2812 | Pressure Control Solenoid 6 (PCS6) Control Circuit Open              | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                              |
| P2814 | Pressure Control Solenoid 6 (PCS6) Control Circuit Low               | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                              |
| P2815 | Pressure Control Solenoid 6 (PCS6) Control Circuit High              | Yes         | DNS, SOL OFF (hydraulic default)                              |
| U0073 | CAN Communication Bus 1 Off  | No          | Use default values  |
| U0074 | CAN Communication Bus 2 Off  | No          | Use default values  |
| U0100 | Lost Communications with ECM A                                       | Yes         | Use default values  |
| U0103 | Lost Communication with Gear Shift Module (Shift Selector) 1         | Yes         | Maintain range selected, observe gear shift direction circuit |
| U0291 | Lost Communication with Gear Shift Module (Shift Selector) 2         | Yes         | Maintain range selected, observe gear shift direction circuit |
| U0304 | Incompatible Gear Shift Module 1 (Shift Selector)                    | Yes         | Ignore shift selector inputs                                  |
| U0333 | Incompatible Gear Shift Module 2 (Shift Selector)                    | Yes         | Ignore shift selector inputs                                  |
| U0404 | Invalid Data Received From Gear Shift Module (Shift Selector) 1      | Yes         | Maintain range selected, observe gear shift direction circuit |
| U0592 | Invalid Data Received From Gear Shift Module (Shift Selector) 2      | Yes         | Maintain range selected, observe gear shift direction circuit |

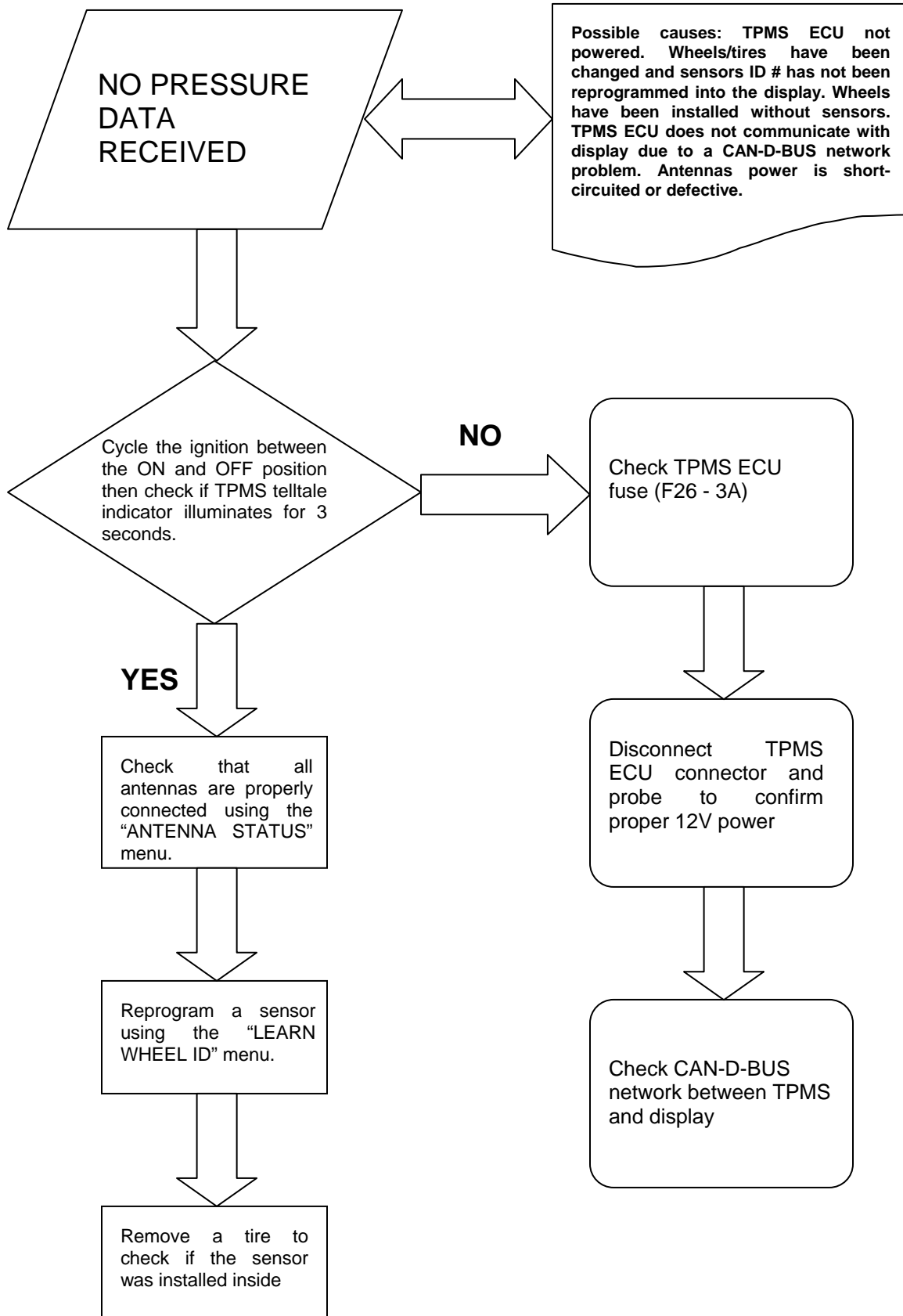
# Appendix D – Spheros Preheater Flash Codes 1

## OPERATIONAL FAILURE SYMPTOMS VIA FAULT/FLASH CODE

The following table lists the possible faults which can be read by flashing code off of an appropriate timer, the equipment-on indicator /operation indicator flashes.

| Failure Symptom  | Probable Cause  | Check and Correct   |
|--|---|---|
| <b>1X Flash (F 01)</b><br>No combustion after completion of start up sequence.                               | - Fuel system<br><br>- Combustion air<br>- Electronic ignition                                | - Fuel level<br>- Type of fuel being used<br>- Fuel filter<br>- Fuel line connections (air bubbles in fuel lines)<br>- Fuel nozzle plugged<br>- Air intake or exhaust, restricted or plugged<br>- Incorrect electrode gap |
| <b>2X Flashes (F 02)</b><br>Flame out during burner operation no restart possible                            | - Fuel supply (shortage of fuel)  | - Restriction in the fuel system<br>- Fuel filter<br>- Fuel line connections (air bubbles in fuel lines)<br>- Type of fuel being used   |
| <b>3X Flashes (F 03)</b><br>Low voltage for more than 20 seconds   | - Electrical system   | - Load test batteries<br>- Corrosion at connections<br>- Loose connections  |
| <b>4X Flashes (F 04)</b><br>Flame detector recognizes false flame signal during pre-start or shut-down cycle | - Defective flame detector  | - Replace flame detector  |
| <b>5X Flashes (F 05)</b><br>Flame detector   | - Wiring<br>- Defective flame detector  | - Damaged wiring, open or short circuit<br>- Replace flame detector   |
| <b>6X Flashes (F 06)</b><br>Temperature sensor   | - Wiring<br>- Defective temperature sensor  | - Damaged wiring, open or short circuit<br>- Replace temperature sensor   |
| <b>7X Flashes (F 07)</b><br>Fuel solenoid valve  | - Wiring<br><br>- Defective solenoid valve  | - Damaged or corroded wiring, open or short circuit<br>- Replace solenoid valve   |
| <b>8X Flashes (F 08)</b><br>Combustion air fan motor   | - Wiring<br>- Wrong RPM<br>- Defective combustion air fan motor                               | - Damaged wiring, open or short circuit<br>- Replace combustion air fan<br>- Replace combustion air fan   |
| <b>9X Flashes (F 09)</b><br>Circulation pump motor   | - Wiring<br>- Defective circulation pump motor  | - Damaged wiring, open or short circuit<br>- Replace circulation pump motor   |
| <b>10X Flashes (F 10)</b><br>Temperature limiter   | - Overheat condition<br>- Coolant flow<br><br>- Wiring<br><br>- Defective temperature limiter | - Reset temperature limiter<br>- Coolant level or flow restriction<br>- Air trapped in coolant circuit<br>- Damaged or corroded wiring, open or short circuit<br>- Replace temperature limiter                            |
| <b>11X Flashes (F 11)</b><br>Electronic ignition coil  | - Wiring<br>- Defective electronic ignition coil  | - Damaged wiring, open or short circuit<br>- Replace electronic ignition coil   |
| <b>12X Flashes (F 12)</b><br>Heater lock out   | - 3 repeated faults/flame-outs or<br>5 repeated start attempts                                | - Reinitialize control unit by switching heater on and disconnecting power.   |





## 2 Appendix E – TPMS Troubleshooting Guide

---

